

GeneTools

Reference

Although all possible care has been taken in the preparation of this publication, Synoptics Limited accepts no liability for any inaccuracies that may be found.

Synoptics Limited reserves the right to make changes without notice both to this publication and to the product that it describes.

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise without the prior permission of the copyright owner.

Version 08-3d.3.SynGene

© **Synoptics Limited 2000–2008**

Synoptics Ltd
Beacon House, Nuffield Road
Cambridge, CB4 1TF, UK
Tel: +44 (0)1223 727100
Fax: +44 (0)1223 727101
Email: info@synoptics.co.uk
Internet: www.synoptics.co.uk

Contents

Using GeneTools for Gel analysis	1
How to create and work with secure sample files	1-1
File formats	1-1
Opening a secure sample file	1-2
Creating a new secure sample file	1-11
Using the Browser	1-12
Acquiring an image to create a secure sample file	1-13
Importing settings from existing secure Gel sample files	1-14
Editing sample properties	1-20
Saving a secure sample file	1-20
How to place, position and work with tracks	1-22
Overview	1-22
Locating tracks automatically	1-24
Locking tracks	1-25
Placing individual tracks on a sample	1-26
Deleting tracks	1-30
Adjusting the overall position of the tracks on a sample	1-30
Adjusting the track splay	1-32
Moving and tilting a single track	1-35
Adjusting track width	1-40
Adjusting the Rf start and end lines	1-43
Enabling and disabling tracks	1-47
Adding a description for a track	1-47
Displaying track properties	1-49
How to set the background correction for tracks	1-51
Setting the integration parameters	1-51
Setting or changing a manual baseline	1-56
Deleting a manual baseline	1-59
How to locate and edit peaks on a track	1-59
Locating the peaks on a track automatically	1-60

Contents

Adding a peak semi-automatically	1-61
Adding a peak manually	1-63
Selecting peaks	1-64
Deleting peaks	1-67
Adjusting the position of a peak.	1-68
Adjusting the position of a peak's bounds	1-70
Displaying peak properties	1-71
How to determine molecular weights and quantities.	1-72
Setting the quantity calibration method	1-73
Specifying how molecular weights are calculated from standard tracks	1-75
Creating quantity calibrations without using standard tracks	1-76
Determining molecular weights/quantities using standard tracks.	1-79
Removing molecular weight and quantity assignments from peaks	1-84
Reassigning molecular weights/quantities in a standard track	1-85
Viewing molecular weight and quantity results	1-87
Working with molecular weight libraries	1-92
How to match peaks on different tracks.	1-105
Setting the method and parameters used for matching	1-107
Setting a matching standard	1-109
Editing matches	1-110
Viewing match results.	1-112
Dendrogram	1-115
How to compare peak profiles	1-117
Changing the scale in the Profile comparison window	1-123
Matching tracks in the Profile comparison window.	1-123
How to print and export Gel results	1-127
Printing a report showing Gel results	1-127
Printing reports – Profile comparisons.	1-129
Exporting results to Excel	1-130
Saving results in a comma separated values format file	1-131
Creating a report in Word.	1-132
Copying a picture of an image to the clipboard	1-133

Using GeneTools for High Throughput Gel analysis	2
Using GeneTools for Manual band quantification	3
Using GeneTools for Spot blot analysis	4
How to create and work with secure sample files.	4-1
Opening a secure sample file	4-2
Creating a new secure sample file	4-6
Using the Browser	4-7
Acquiring an image to create a secure sample file	4-8
Importing settings from existing secure Spot blot sample files	4-9
Importing settings from a saved sample file	4-14
Editing sample properties.	4-15
Saving a secure sample file	4-15
How to add and remove spot frames.	4-16
Adding spot frames automatically	4-16
Adding new spot frames	4-18
Removing spot frames	4-21
How to adjust the size and shape of spot frames	4-21
Setting the size of all spot frames to the same size and shape	4-21
Changing between circular and rectangular spot frames	4-22
Adjusting the size of circular spot frames	4-22
Adjusting the size and shape of rectangular spot frames	4-24
How to adjust the spot frame positions.	4-26
Adjusting the position of a single spot frame	4-26
Adjusting the positions of all the spot frames in a grid	4-26
How to lock the spot frames on a sample	4-32
How to show or hide identification labels on the spot frames.	4-32
How to set the quantity calibration method.	4-33
How to assign quantities to spot frames	4-34
How to apply background correction to results	4-35
How to view Spot blot results	4-37
How to define an incidence condition	4-39
How to print and export Spot blot results.	4-41
Printing Spot blot results	4-41
Exporting Spot blot results to Excel	4-42
Saving results in a comma separated values format file	4-43

Copying a picture of an image to the clipboard 4-44

Using GeneTools to count colonies 5

Windows 6

Gel windows	6-2
Adjusting the panes in a Gel window	6-3
Track label pane	6-3
Description pane	6-4
Image pane	6-4
Profile pane	6-6
Peak value pane	6-6
Graphics pane	6-7
Results pane	6-14
Molecular weight library window	6-17
Profile comparison window	6-18
Viewing tracks.	6-20
Selecting tracks for a comparison	6-20
Viewing profiles	6-21
Setting a reference track	6-22
Matching tracks in the Profile comparison window	6-23
Other Profile comparison window operations.	6-25
Colony counting window	6-26
Spot blot/Manual band quantification window	6-28
Image pane	6-29
Results/Incidence/Calibration graph pane.	6-31
Image controls	6-33
The Histogram viewer	6-34

Toolbars 7

The Standard toolbar	7-1
Open	7-1
Save.	7-1
Help	7-2
Sample properties	7-2
Report toolbar	7-2
Report setup	7-2

Preview	7-2
Print.	7-3
Export table to Excel	7-3
Save table to CSV file	7-3
Export to Word.	7-3
Save to clipboard.	7-3
Track toolbar	7-4
Locate tracks	7-4
Lock all	7-4
Position all	7-4
Splay all	7-5
Move/tilt.	7-5
Width	7-5
Rf start position.	7-5
Rf end position.	7-5
Zoom toolbar	7-6
Zoom in	7-6
Zoom out	7-6
Zoom reset	7-6
Calibrations toolbar	7-7
Integration parameters	7-7
Quantity calibration.	7-7
Assign quantity	7-7
Molecular weight calibration.	7-7
MW/quantity standard.	7-8
Profile comparison window	7-8
Database toolbar	7-8
Archive gel to database	7-8
Open GeneDirectory	7-9
Connect to database	7-9
Peak matching toolbar	7-9
Band matching	7-9
Matching standard	7-10
Spot blot toolbar	7-10
All spots same size.	7-10
Position control points	7-10
Locate	7-11
Position any spot	7-11

Contents

Background correction	7-11
Lock position	7-11
Spot incidence parameters	7-11
Circle	7-12
Rectangle	7-12
Free hand.	7-12
Quantity calibration parameters	7-12
Assign quantity	7-12

Menus

8

File (Sample and Profile comparison windows)	8-1
New (Import).	8-2
Open	8-8
Browse	8-9
Close.	8-11
Save	8-11
Save as	8-11
Select Source (Twain)	8-12
Acquire (Twain)	8-13
New library	8-13
Open library	8-14
Import method	8-15
Export table to Excel	8-16
Save table to CSV file	8-17
Export to Word	8-18
Save to clipboard	8-19
Printer setup	8-19
Report setup	8-20
Print preview	8-26
Print	8-27
Recently opened files	8-28
Sample properties	8-28
Exit	8-40
File (Molecular weight library window)	8-40
Unlock	8-41
Lock	8-41
Change password	8-42

Properties.	8-43
Edit (Gel window)	8-44
Integration parameters	8-45
Molecular weight calibration	8-50
Quantity calibration	8-52
Band matching	8-53
Edit (Spot blot/Manual band quantification window)	8-56
Quantity calibration	8-56
Edit (Colony counting window)	8-57
Edit (Molecular weight library window)	8-57
New standard	8-57
Edit standard	8-59
Delete standard	8-61
Rename standard	8-61
Edit (Profile comparison window)	8-62
View (Gel window).	8-63
Profile comparison.	8-63
Histogram	8-64
Zoom in	8-64
Zoom out.	8-64
Zoom reset	8-64
Align banks of tracks	8-65
Display corrected profiles.	8-65
Peak markers	8-65
Peak bounds	8-66
Tracks	8-66
Match lines	8-66
Peak numbers only	8-67
Molecular weight	8-67
Quantities	8-67
Matching	8-67
Maximize pane	8-68
Toolbars submenu	8-68
Toolbar buttons on menus	8-69
Status bar.	8-69
View (Spot blot/Manual band quantification window)	8-69
Spot numbers	8-70
View (Colony counting window)	8-70

Contents

View (Profile comparison window)	8-70
Plot mode submenu	8-71
View (Molecular weight library window)	8-71
Track	8-72
Locate tracks	8-73
Width individual.	8-73
Height individual	8-73
Lock all.	8-74
Position all	8-74
Splay all	8-76
Move/tilt	8-78
Width	8-84
Rf start position	8-86
Rf end position	8-86
Invert profile	8-90
Edit manual baseline.	8-90
Delete manual baseline	8-94
MW/quantity standard	8-94
Matching standard	8-95
Insert.	8-96
Delete	8-99
Enable	8-100
Disable	8-100
Copy to clipboard	8-100
Description	8-100
Properties	8-102
Peak.	8-104
Assign molecular weight.	8-104
Assign quantity	8-110
Unassign molecular weight	8-112
Unassign quantity	8-112
Locate submenu	8-113
Delete submenu	8-113
Match submenu	8-114
Properties	8-114
Profile	8-114
Reference	8-115
Show	8-115

Show all	8-116
Hide all	8-116
Include in matching	8-116
Export to Excel	8-117
Properties	8-117
Matching	8-117
Parameters	8-118
Include all	8-120
Exclude all from matching	8-120
Database menu	8-120
Archive gel to database	8-120
Open GeneDirectory	8-124
Connect to database	8-125
Spots	8-126
Circle	8-126
Rectangle	8-126
Free hand	8-127
All spots same size	8-129
Position control points	8-129
Locate	8-130
Position any spot	8-131
Background correction	8-132
Lock position	8-132
Spot incidence parameters	8-133
Delete	8-135
Delete all	8-135
Assign quantity	8-136
Unassign quantity	8-137
Extras	8-138
User name	8-138
Configuration	8-138
Save sample defaults	8-145
Load sample defaults	8-145
Window	8-145
New window	8-146
Cascade	8-146
Tile	8-146
Arrange icons	8-146

Contents

Windows open in GeneTools	8-146
Help.	8-147
Help topics	8-147
About GeneTools.	8-147
Image pane and Profile context menus	8-147
Track label context menu	8-148
Active matching standard	8-148
Peak value pane context menu	8-149
Delete	8-149
Graphics pane context menu.	8-149
Scale to fit.	8-149
Save to clipboard.	8-150
Gel window Results pane context menu.	8-150
Result table commands	8-150
Profile comparison window context menu	8-151
Spot blot/Manual band quantification window Image pane context menu.	8-151
Set radius	8-151
Spot blot/Manual band quantification window Results pane context menu	8-153
Result table commands	8-153
Table 1D/Table 2D	8-154
Spot blot/Manual band quantification window Quantity calibration context menu	8-154
Save to clipboard.	8-154
Molecular weight library context menu	8-155
Colony counting exclude region	8-155
.	8-156

Using GeneTools for Gel analysis

This chapter contains detailed instructions for using GeneTools for Gel analysis. It begins by describing how you can load sample files and images into GeneTools. It then shows you how to detect, place and edit tracks on the image, and then detect, place and edit peaks on the tracks.

This is followed by instructions for calibrating and determining the molecular weights and quantities represented by peaks on the gels, including how you can use libraries of molecular weight/quantity standards.

The chapter continues by showing you how to display a window comparing the profiles on different tracks, including how to compare the profiles of tracks on different gels.

The next section describes how to use GeneTools to match the peaks (bands) on different tracks to a standard track or to match the track profiles themselves.

The final section in the chapter tells you how to print and export result reports.

How to create and work with secure sample files

File formats

GeneTools stores data in a secure file format – a SynGene Gel document or .sgd file. These files are also created by compatible acquisition programs, such as GeneSnap.

The secure file format ensures that your data cannot be tampered with, and that your results are both traceable and reproducible in keeping with Good Laboratory Practice.

Secure sample files may be:

- analyzed files that have been previously saved in GeneTools – these will contain (for a gel) information about track positions, peaks, assigned standards, results for molecular weights, quantities and peak matching, and so on.
- unanalyzed files that have been saved in an acquisition program, but have not yet been loaded into and saved in GeneTools.

Opening a secure sample file below shows you how to open both unanalyzed and analyzed secure sample files.

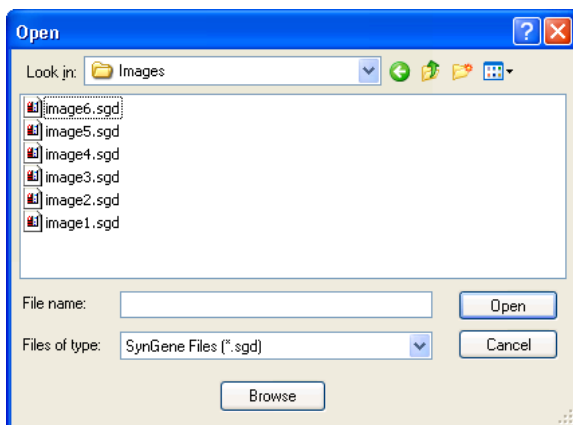
However, you can also load other image files created by non-secure sources (such as Tiff images generated by a scanner) into GeneTools for analysis. When you do this, GeneTools copies the original image and saves it in a secure file – any changes you then make to the original image will have no effect on the image in the secure file. Full details are given in *Creating a new secure sample file*, page 1-11.

Opening a secure sample file

To open a secure sample file:



- 1 Choose **Open** from the **File** menu to display a standard Windows **Open** dialog box:



- 2 Use the dialog box to select the required secure sample file.
- 3 Press **Open**.

What happens next depends on whether you are opening an analyzed or unanalyzed secure sample, and in the latter case on whether you have set **Auto import methods** in the **Configuration** dialog box.

- If you are opening an analyzed secure sample file:
 - The sample will be opened in a Gel window with all tracks and peaks displayed as they were when the file was last saved. All previously analyzed results will be shown in the Results tables.
- If you are opening an unanalyzed secure sample file and you have selected **Auto import methods** in the **Configuration** dialog box:
 - The **Import method** dialog box will open so that you can choose which settings to import – see *Opening or creating a secure sample file with automatic import*, page 1-16, for further details.

- If you are opening an unanalyzed secure sample file with **Auto import methods** deselected:
- The **Sample properties** dialog box will open with the image loaded:



The controls shown on the **General** page in the **Sample properties** dialog box depend on the type of sample (in the picture shown above, the sample is an ethidium bromide stained DNA gel).

To set the sample properties:

- 1 If required, select a different **Analysis type** from the drop-down list box – the default **Analysis type** is set to **Gel** when GeneTools is first installed, but you can change this using **Configuration** in the **Extras** menu (see page 8-139).
- 2 Click on one of the direction radio buttons to set the **Electrophoresis direction** (the default is **Down**).

- 3 GeneTools detects the **Image type** automatically, so you shouldn't need to change this setting. However, if you wish to change the setting:
 - a Click on the **Fluorescence** radio button for a fluorescence image (bright bands on a dark background).
 - b Click on the **Absorption** radio button for an absorption image (dark bands on a bright background).
- 4 The red rectangle on the image preview defines the area of interest – the area analyzed when GeneTools performs an automatic track location. If required (for example, if you are working with a multi-layer sample), you can define a grid of independent areas of interest.

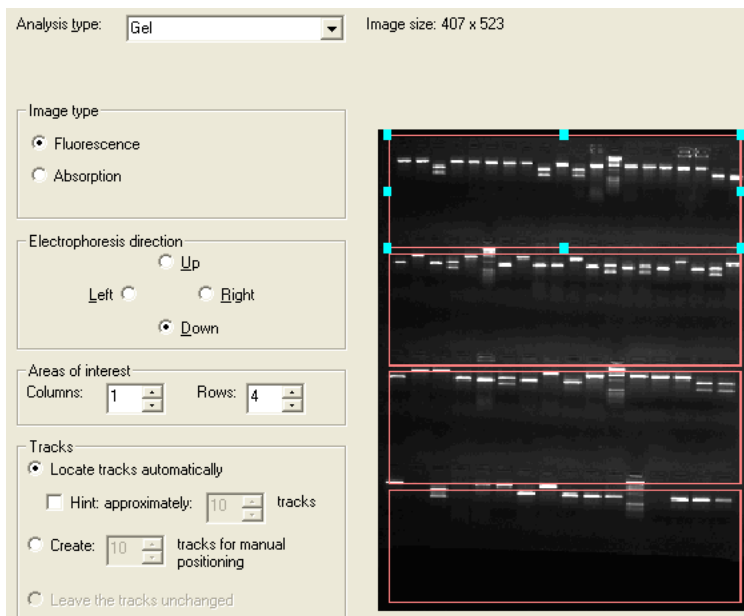
Note Each area of interest is (nearly) independent of all the other areas of interest defined on the gel. Molecular weight/quantity standard tracks must be assigned separately within each area, and matching is carried out between the tracks in the same area and not with any tracks in other areas. Separate quantity calibrations can be used for each area, though quantity calibrations can be shared between areas. A single set of integration parameters is used for all areas, but molecular weight calibration, quantity calibration and matching parameters can be chosen independently for each area of interest. Tracks can be located, adjusted and locked independently within each area of interest. Rf start and end lines can be adjusted independently for each area of interest. The Results and Graphics panes show details for the selected area of interest only.

To define a grid of independent areas of interest on the gel image:

- a Enter the number of **Columns** in the grid.
- b Enter the number of **Rows** in the grid.

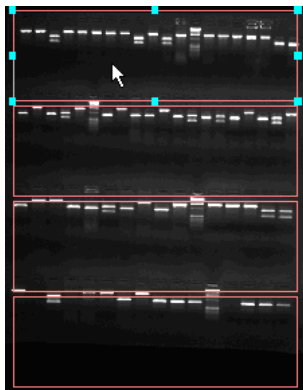
(Leave the numbers of **Columns** and **Rows** set to **1** if you just want a single area of interest.)

As you enter the numbers, a grid of red rectangles appears on the image. For example:

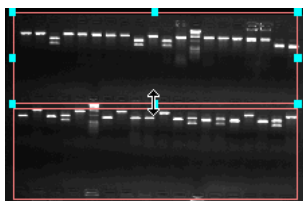


If required, as in this example, you can adjust the shape and position of the areas of interest – see the following steps.

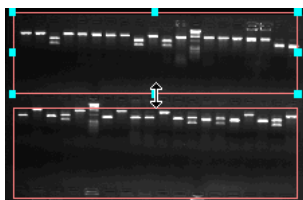
- 5 To adjust the shape of an area of interest:
- Click in the area of interest that you want to adjust to select it – blue drag handles appear at the corners and in the middle of the sides of the area of interest showing that it is selected:



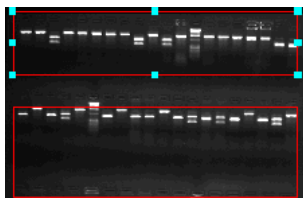
- Move the pointer over the drag handle for the corner or side that you want to adjust. The shape of the pointer will change to a two-headed arrow showing that you can drag the handle:



- Press and drag the corner or side as required. The outline of the area of interest will be redrawn as you drag the handle:

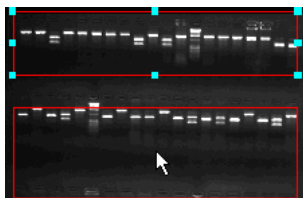


- d When the corner or side is in the required position, release the mouse button:

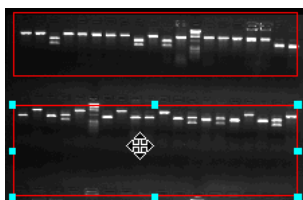


- 6 To move an area of interest:

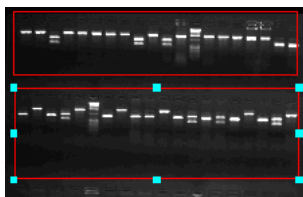
- a Move the pointer over the area of interest you want to move:



- b Press and drag the area of interest. The area of interest will become selected, the pointer will change to a four-headed arrow and the outline of the area of interest will be redrawn to show its new position as you drag it:



- c When the area of interest is in the required position, release the mouse button:



7 The next step is to choose between automatic and manual track detection.

Note Automatic track detection is the recommended way of working with GeneTools – you can use **Configuration** in the **Extras** menu (see page 8-139) to set GeneTools to detect the tracks automatically by default.

To choose automatic track detection for an area of interest (you can choose the setting separately for each area of interest):

- a Click in the area of interest to select it (this step is unnecessary if there is only one area of interest).
- b Press **Locate tracks automatically**.

Note Generally, this is all you have to do as in nearly all cases the GeneTools automatic track location will be able to locate the tracks on the gel correctly and position track markers over them accurately without further assistance. However, very occasionally you may have a gel that causes problems, and the following step allows you to help out the track detection software by giving an indication of the number of tracks. You will only need to use this step if the fully automatic track detection has failed.

- c If automatic track location has failed to identify the tracks correctly:
 - i Check **Hint**.
 - ii Enter the approximate number of **tracks** in the area of interest.

To choose manually how many tracks you want to place in each area of interest on the gel:

- a Click in the area of interest to select it (this step is unnecessary if there is only one area of interest.)
- b Press the **Create** radio button to enable the **tracks for manual positioning** spin box.
- c Enter the number of tracks you want to place in that area of interest. The tracks will be placed at default positions and you will need to position them manually later.

Note The **Leave the tracks unchanged** radio button is only enabled when the **Sample properties** dialog box is displayed for an existing analyzed sample (see the entry for **Sample properties** in the *File (Gel)* section in the *Menus* chapter (page 8-28)).

- 8 Click on the **Analysis notes** tab and enter any notes you want to save with the secure sample file.

(The other two pages give information saved with the file in the acquisition program – see the entry for **Sample properties** in the *File (Gel)* section in the *Menus* chapter (page 8-28) for details.)

- 9 Press **OK** to close the dialog box and display the sample in a Gel window.

If you have set automatic track location, the tracks will be shown on the image and locked. If you have also set automatic peak location, the peaks will be marked on the tracks.

Note The recommended way of working with GeneTools is to use automatic peak location – use **Configuration** in the **Extras** menu (see page 8-139) to set GeneTools to locate peaks automatically.

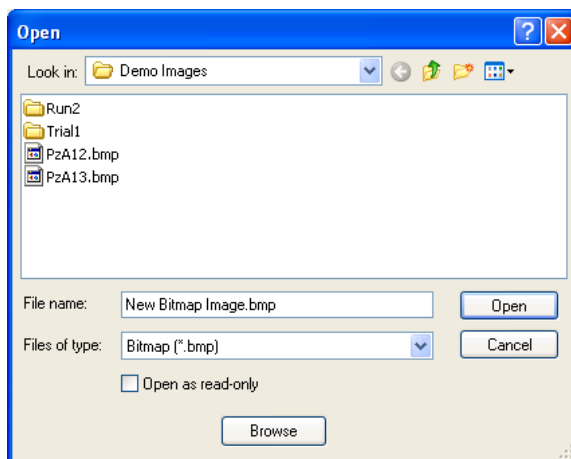
If you have not set automatic track location, and have specified a number of tracks, the tracks will be unlocked ready for you to position them accurately on the image – see *How to place, position and work with tracks*, page 1-22, for details.

Once you have opened an unanalyzed file, you should save it in order to save the track, peak and other settings – see *Saving a secure sample file*, page 1-20, for details.

Creating a new secure sample file

To create a new secure sample file (for example, from a .tif or .bmp image file):

- 1 Choose **New (Import)** from the **File** menu to display a standard Windows **Open** dialog box:



- 2 Choose the type of image file from the **Files of type** drop-down list box.
- 3 Use the **Look in** drop-down list box to select the folder containing the image file.
- 4 Click on the file in the list box to select it – the name of the file will appear in the **File name** box.
- 5 Press **Open** to close the dialog box.

What happens next depends on whether you have selected **Auto import methods** in the **Configuration** dialog box:

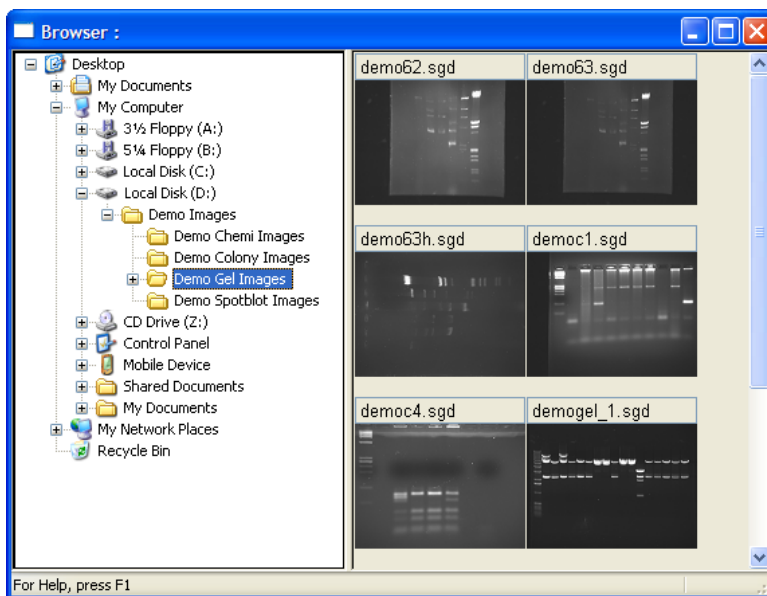
- If you have selected **Auto import methods** in the **Configuration** dialog box, the **Import method** dialog box will open so that you can choose which settings to import – see *Opening or creating a secure sample file with automatic import*, page 1-16, for further details.
- If **Auto import methods** is not selected, the **Sample properties** dialog box will open so that you can set the type of image and make other settings – see the picture on page 1-4 and the instructions following it.

Using the Browser

As an alternative to using the **Open** command to open an existing secure sample file (see Steps 1–3 in *Opening a secure sample file* page 1-2) or the **New (Import)** command to create a new secure sample file (for example, from a non-secure .tif or .bmp image file – see the previous section), you can use the GeneTools built-in Browser to preview and open image files.

To open an existing secure sample file or create a new secure sample file using the Browser:

- 1 Choose **Browse** from the **File** menu to display the Browser:



Note The picture shows the Browser in a non-maximized window; it can also be maximized to fill the document area covering any Image windows or minimized to an icon.

- 2 Use the left-hand pane in the Browser in exactly the same way as you use the left-hand pane in Windows Explorer to select the folder containing the required image.

The right-hand pane in the Browser will show a preview of all the images in the selected folder.

- 3 Double-click on the image that you want to open.

What happens next depends on whether you are opening an analyzed or unanalyzed secure sample or creating a new secure sample file.

If you are opening an analyzed secure sample file:

- The sample will be opened in a Gel window with all tracks and peaks displayed as they were when the file was last saved. All previously analyzed results will be shown in the Results tables.

If you are opening an unanalyzed secure sample file or creating a new secure sample file:

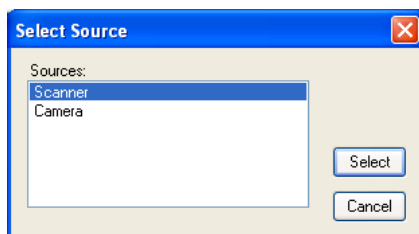
- If you have selected **Auto import methods** in the **Configuration** dialog box, the **Import method** dialog box will open so that you can choose which settings to import – see *Opening or creating a secure sample file with automatic import*, page 1-16, for further details.
- If **Auto import methods** is deselected, the **Sample properties** dialog box will open so that you can set the type of image and make other settings – see the picture on page 1-4 and the instructions following it.

Acquiring an image to create a secure sample file

GeneTools allows you to acquire an image from a Twain source, such as a scanner or a digital camera, and create a secure sample file from it.

To select a Twain source so that you can Acquire an image from it:

- 1 Choose **Select Source (Twain)** from the **File** menu to display the **Select Source** dialog box:



- 2 Click on the required source to select it.

- 3 Press **Select** to confirm the selection and close the dialog box.

To acquire an image from the selected Twain source and create a secure sample file:

- 1 Choose **Acquire (Twain)** from the **File** menu.

A dialog box will be displayed for the selected source so that you can select acquisition options and acquire the image.

- 2 Use the dialog box to acquire the image.

What happens next depends on whether you have selected **Auto import methods** in the **Configuration** dialog box:

- If you have selected **Auto import methods** in the **Configuration** dialog box, the **Import method** dialog box will open so that you can choose which settings to import – see *Opening or creating a secure sample file with automatic import*, page 1-16, for further details.
- If **Auto import methods** is not selected, the **Sample properties** dialog box will open so that you can set the type of image and make other settings – see the picture on page 1-4 and the instructions following it.

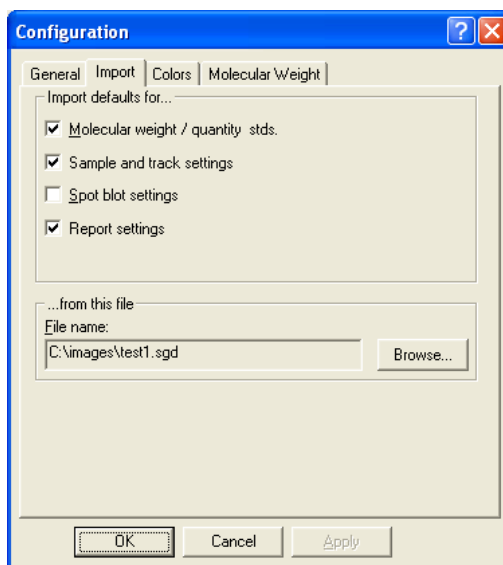
Importing settings from existing secure Gel sample files

Automatically importing settings

To set the program to import settings automatically from an existing secure Gel sample file:

- 1 Choose **Configuration** from the **Extras** menu to display the **General** page of the **Configuration** dialog box.
- 2 Check **Auto import methods**.

- 3 Click on the **Import** tab to display the **Import** page:



- 4 Press **Browse** to display a standard Windows **Open** dialog box if you want to select a different file from which to import the settings.
- a Select the file from which you want to import settings.
 - b Press **OK** to close the **Open** dialog box.
- The name of the selected file will appear in the **File name** box.
- 5 Check the boxes for the settings you want to import.

Note The check boxes are disabled if no file is selected.

- 6 Press **OK** to close the **Configuration** dialog box.

Note The settings you make will be stored as the defaults for the next time you want to import settings. The controls on this page are also displayed in a dialog box when you:

- open an unanalyzed image, or
- create a secure sample file from a non-secure image, or
- choose **Import method** from the **File** menu to import the settings from a saved file to an existing secure sample file in a Gel window.

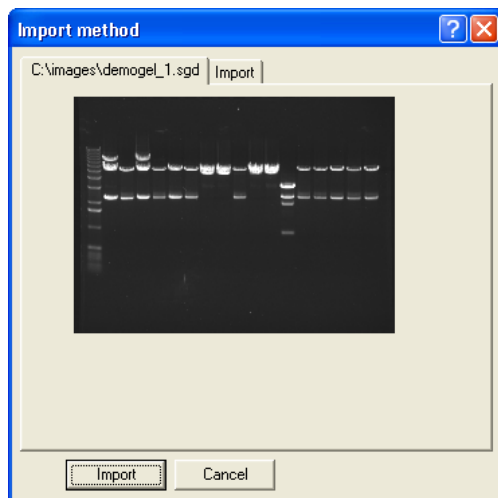
Changing the settings in any of these places changes the defaults.

Opening or creating a secure sample file with automatic import

If you have automatic import set when you:

- open an unanalyzed secure sample file – see *Opening a secure sample file*, page 1-2,
- create a new secure sample file – see *Creating a new secure sample file*, page 1-11,
- acquire an image from a Twain source – see *Acquiring an image to create a secure sample file*, page 1-13,

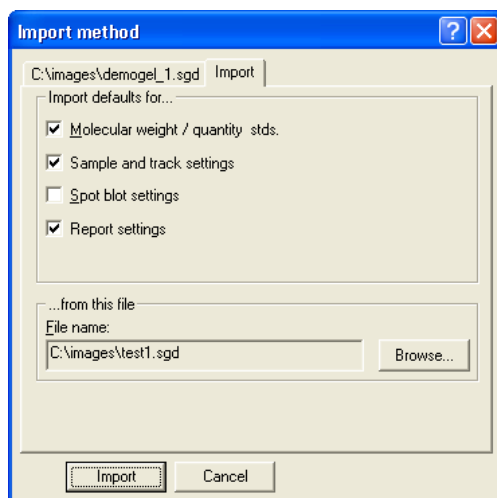
the **Import method** dialog box will open:



Note If you change your mind about using automatic import, press **Cancel** to close the **Import method** dialog box and display the **Sample properties** dialog box. Then continue as if you were opening or creating a secure sample file without automatic import.

To continue opening or creating a secure sample file with automatic import:

- 1 Click on the **Import** tab to display the **Import** page:



- 2 Press **Browse** to display a standard Windows **Open** dialog box if you want to select a different file from which to import the settings.

Note The check boxes are disabled if no file is selected.

- 3 Check or uncheck the boxes if you want to change the settings that are imported.

Note The settings you make will be stored as the defaults for the next time you want to import settings. You can also set the defaults using the **Import** page of the **Configuration** dialog box, or by importing settings to an existing secure sample file by choosing **Import method** from the **File** menu.

- 4 Press **Import** to close the **Import method** dialog box.

What happens next depends on whether you have chosen to import **Sample and track settings**:

- If you haven't imported **Sample and track settings**, the **Sample properties** dialog box will be displayed so that you can set the sample properties – see *Opening a secure sample file*, page 1-2.
- Otherwise (and after you have pressed **OK** in the **Sample properties** dialog box), a Gel window will open containing the new sample created from the image.

Note If you have set automatic track location and have not imported **Sample and track settings**, the tracks will be locked; otherwise they will be unlocked ready for you to position them accurately on the image.

You can now use all the program's analysis procedures to work with the sample.

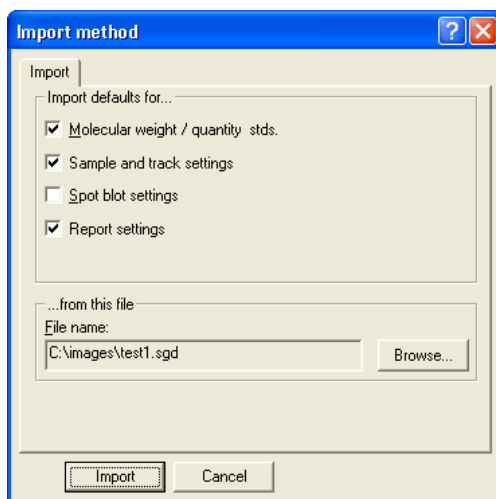
Note You can always change the automatically imported settings at a later time by choosing **Sample properties** from the **File** menu to change individual settings (the **Sample properties** dialog box also allows you to add notes about the sample to be saved with it).

See the next section for how to use **Import method** from the **File** menu to import settings from a different secure sample file – this also displays the **Import method** dialog box but without the page showing the image.

Importing settings from a saved sample file

To apply sample and track settings, molecular weight/quantity standards and/or report settings from a saved secure sample file to the sample in the selected Gel window:

- 1 Choose **Import method** from the **File** menu to display the **Import method** dialog box:



- 2 Press **Browse** to display a standard Windows **Open** dialog box if you want to select a different file from which to import the settings.

Note The check boxes are disabled if no file is selected.

- 3 Check **Molecular weight stds.** to import the molecular weight/quantity standard tracks and molecular weight/quantity assignments from a saved sample file.

For example, if tracks 1 and 5 in the saved file are molecular weight standards, any previous molecular weight assignments will be removed from the selected sample and tracks 1 and 5 will become molecular weight standards.

If peaks 3, 5 and 7 in track 1 of the saved file have assigned molecular weights/quantities, peaks 3, 5 and 7 in track 1 of the selected sample will be assigned the same molecular weights/quantities.

- 4 Check **Sample and track settings** to import the electrophoresis direction, image type, number of tracks and track positions from a saved sample file.
- 5 Check **Report settings** to import the report setup from a saved sample file.

Note This dialog box is also displayed if you create a new sample from a non-secure image with automatic import set (though it then has an additional page showing the image). You can also set the import methods in the **Import** page of the **Configuration** dialog box. The program displays the same import methods in all these places and changing the settings in any one of them changes the settings in all of them.

Editing sample properties

To view or edit the settings and notes for a sample:

- 1 Click in the window containing the sample to select it.
- 2 Choose **Sample properties** from the **File** menu to display the **General** page of the **Sample properties** dialog box – see the entry for **Sample properties** in the *Menus* chapter (page 8-28) for details.

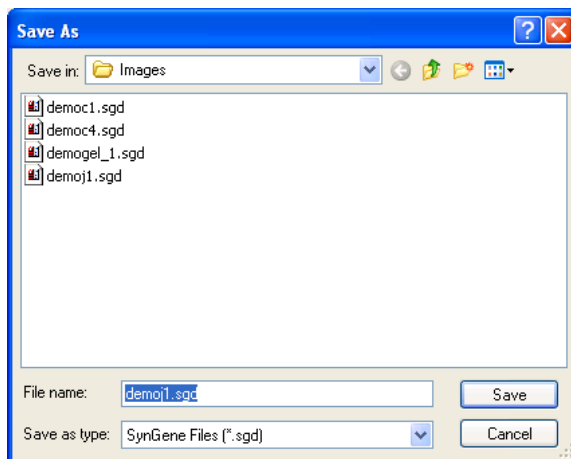


Saving a secure sample file

To save a secure sample with a new name:

- 1 Click in the Gel window containing the sample (or choose it from the list at the bottom of the **Window** menu).

- 2 Choose **Save as** from the **File** menu to display a standard Windows **Save As** dialog box:



- 3 Use the dialog box to select a folder in which to save the sample.
- 4 Enter a **File name** for the sample.
- 5 Press **Save** to save the sample in the file.

To save a previously saved secure sample file using the same name:

- 1 Click in the Gel window containing the sample (or choose it from the list at the bottom of the **Window** menu).



- 2 Choose **Save** from the **File** menu. If the secure sample file has not been saved previously, the **Save As** dialog box will be displayed so that you can enter a name: see above.

How to place, position and work with tracks

Overview

To enable the program to analyze the image, you must place and position a set of rectangles ('tracks') over the image to define the positions of the electrophoresis tracks.

Locating the tracks on an image automatically

The default way of working with GeneTools is to allow it to locate the tracks on the image automatically. This is the recommended way of working, unless you have specific requirements that are not handled appropriately by the automatic detection procedures. See *Locating tracks automatically*, page 1-24, for more details.

Placing tracks on an image manually

If required, you can place tracks on the image manually. There are several ways of doing this:

- A** You can place tracks on an image when you open an unanalyzed secure sample file or when you create a new secure sample file (for example, from a non-secure .tif or .bmp image file) by specifying the number of tracks using the **Sample properties** dialog box, which is automatically displayed as part of the procedure. You can also display this dialog box for an existing sample and then change the number of tracks specified there, to replace all the tracks on the sample with a new set of tracks – see the entry for **Sample properties** in the *Menus* chapter (page 8-28) for details. In any of these cases, the image will eventually be displayed in a Gel window, with the tracks unlocked so that you can adjust the position of the tracks accurately.
- B** You can add new tracks to the image in an existing analyzed secure sample file or delete or replace one or all of its tracks. See the following for more details:
 - *Placing individual tracks on the sample* – page 1-26
 - *Deleting tracks* – page 1-30.

Adjusting the position of the tracks on an image

The following sections show you how to adjust the position of the existing tracks on an image in a sample:

- *Adjusting the overall position of the tracks on a sample* – page 1-30
- *Adjusting the track splay* – page 1-32
- *Moving and tilting a single track* – page 1-35
- *Adjusting track width* – page 1-40
- *Adjusting the RF start and end positions* – page 1-43.

Other ways to work with tracks

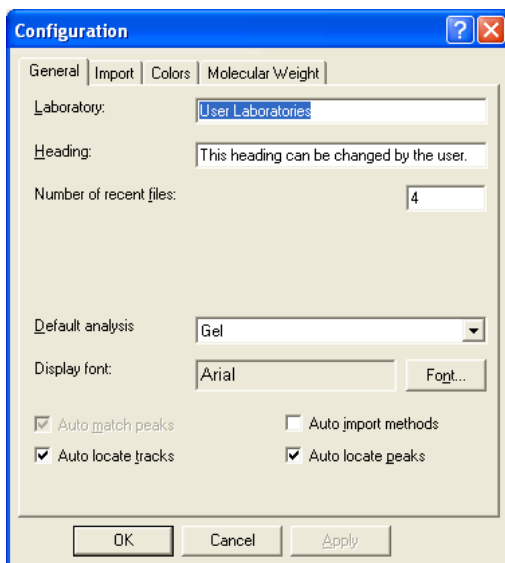
The following sections describe a number of other operations related to working with tracks:

- *Locking tracks* – page 1-25
- *Enabling and disabling tracks* – page 1-47
- *Adding a description for a track* – page 1-47
- *Displaying track properties* – page 1-49.

Locating tracks automatically

To set GeneTools so that it will locate the tracks on a gel image automatically:

- 1 Choose **Configuration** from the **Extras** menu to display the **Configuration** dialog box:



- 2 Check **Auto locate tracks**.

- 3 Press **OK**.

Now, when you open an unanalyzed secure sample file, or create a new secure sample file (for example, from a non-secure .tif or .bmp image file), the tracks will be located automatically, provided you leave the number of tracks set to 0 in the **Sample properties** dialog box.

You can also automatically locate the tracks on an existing gel image in a secure sample file, by choosing **Sample properties** from the **File** menu to display the **Sample properties** dialog box and setting the number of tracks to 0. However, the following procedure is rather quicker.

To locate the tracks on an existing gel image automatically:

- 1 Select the Gel window.
- 2 If there is more than one area of interest on the gel, click in the one in which you want to locate the tracks to select it (tracks in other areas of interest will not be affected).
- 3 Lock the tracks if they are not already locked (see the next section).
- 4 Choose **Locate tracks** from the **Track** menu.



Locking tracks

The tracks shown on the sample in the Image pane in the Gel window can be either locked or unlocked.

You need to lock the tracks before you can perform any of the functions that require the program to analyze the image along the tracks, such as locating the peaks, and assigning and calculating molecular weights and quantities.

To lock the tracks on a sample in the selected Gel window:

- 1 If there is more than one area of interest on the gel, click in the one in which you want to lock the tracks to select it (tracks in other areas of interest will not be locked).
- 2 Choose **Lock all** from the **Track** menu.



When the tracks are locked, **Lock all** is checked in the menu and the button is shown as depressed in the toolbar:



Using GeneTools for Gel analysis

To unlock the tracks in the selected area of interest on a sample in the selected Gel window (tracks in other areas of interest will not be affected):

Choose any of the following track editing commands from the **Track** menu:



Position All



Splay All



Move/tilt



Width



Rf start position



Rf end position.

Placing individual tracks on a sample

You can place tracks on a sample using:

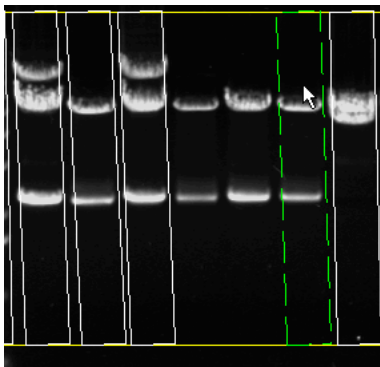
- a menu command
- by double-clicking
- by dragging out the track.

Each of these is described below.

Inserting a track with a menu command

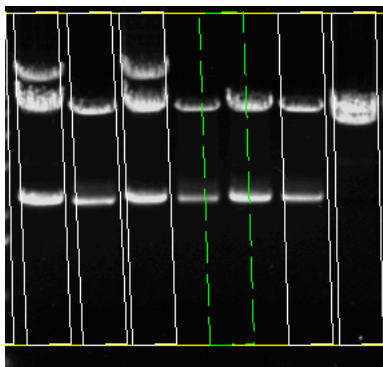
To place a track on a sample using a menu command:

- 1 Click in the Gel window containing the sample to select it.
- 2 If there is more than one area of interest, click in the one in which you want to add the track.
- 3 Unlock the tracks if they are locked.
- 4 Click in the track to the right of the space into which you want to insert the new track:



- 5 Choose **Insert** from the **Track** menu.

Provided there is enough space for the track (including inter-track space), the new track will be inserted. The new track will have the same size and shape as the selected track:



As in the example, you may need to adjust the position or the width of the track after it has been inserted – see *Moving and tilting a single track*, page 1-35, for details.

Inserting a track by double-clicking

To place a track on a sample by double-clicking:

- 1 Click in the Gel window containing the sample to select it.
- 2 If there is more than one area of interest, click in the one in which you want to add the track.
- 3 Choose:



Move/tilt

Or



Width

from the **Track** menu.

- 4 Click on a track with the size and shape required for the new track (you can always change these later).
- 5 Double-click at the point where you want the track to be.

The inserted track will be centered horizontally at the point you clicked, provided this would not cause the new track to overlap existing tracks. If there would be an overlap, the track is not inserted.

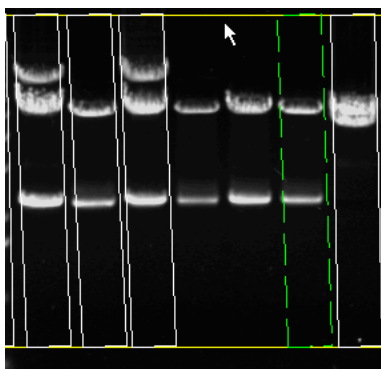
You may need to adjust the position or the width of the track after it has been inserted.

Inserting a track by dragging out the track

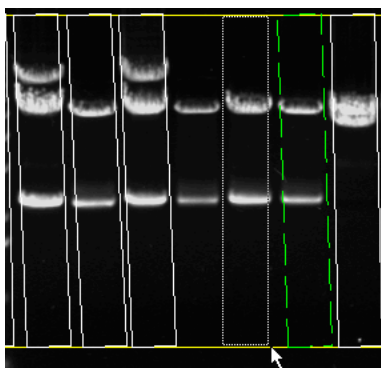
To place a track on a sample by dragging out the track:

- 1 Click in the Gel window containing the sample to select it.

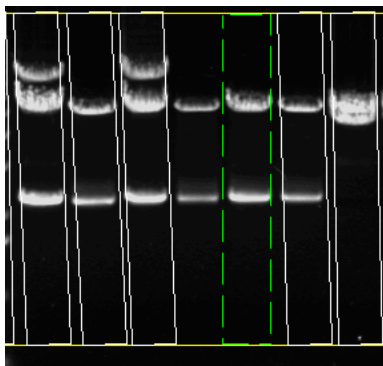
- 2 If there is more than one area of interest, click in the one in which you want to add the track.
- 3 If **Width individual** is unchecked in the **Track** menu, choose it to set individual width mode.
- 4 Move the pointer to the position where you want to place one of the corners of the track (it doesn't matter which corner):



- 5 Press and drag out to the opposite corner (a rectangle will be drawn on the image as you are dragging to show the position of the track):



- 6 Release to place the track on the sample:



As in this example, you may need to adjust the tilt of the track after it has been inserted.

Deleting tracks

To delete a track from a sample:

- 1 Click in the Gel window containing the sample to select it.
- 2 Click in the track in the Image pane to select it.
- 3 Unlock the tracks if they are locked.
- 4 Choose **Delete** from the **Track** menu or the menu displayed when you right-click in the Image pane, or press **DEL**.

Adjusting the overall position of the tracks on a sample

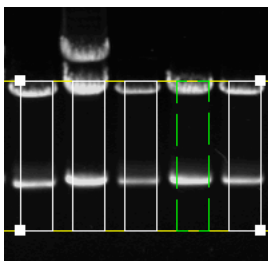
To adjust the overall positioning of all the tracks (in the selected area of interest) on a sample together (see *Adjusting the track splay* (page 1-32) for adjusting both the overall position and the amount of track splay):

- 1 Click in the Gel window containing the sample to select it.
- 2 If there is more than one area of interest, click in the one in which you want to adjust the tracks.

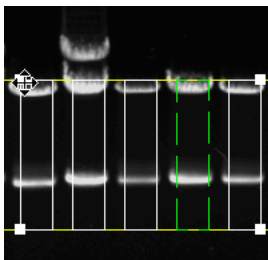


- 3 Choose **Position all** from the **Track** menu.

The tracks will be unlocked and drag boxes will appear at the outer corners of the two outside tracks:

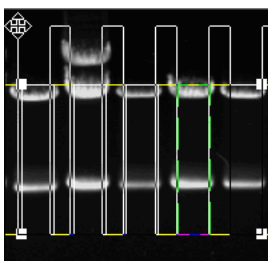


- 4 Move the pointer over the drag box at the first corner that you want to move. The pointer will change to a four-way arrow:

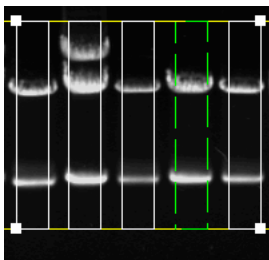


- 5 Press and drag the corner box to its new position.

The outlines of the tracks' new positions will be shown as you drag:



- 6 Drop the corner box in its new position:



- 7 Repeat Steps 4–6 for the diagonally opposite corner if required.

Adjusting the track splay

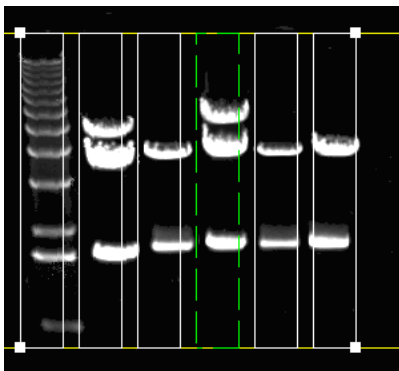
This topic describes how to adjust the amount by which the tracks (in the selected area of interest) on a sample are splayed apart. You can also adjust the overall position of the tracks at the same time, but see *Adjusting the overall position of the tracks on a sample* (page 1-30) if you want to adjust the overall position of the tracks without changing the amount of track splay.

To adjust the amount by which the tracks in an area of interest on a sample are splayed apart:

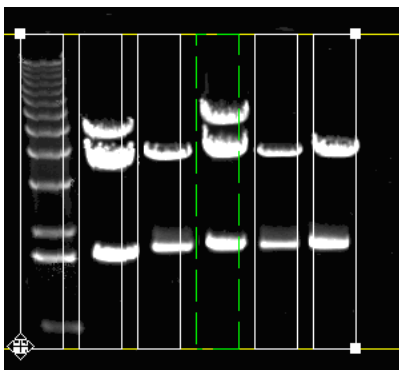
- 1 Click in the Gel window containing the sample to select it.
- 2 If there is more than one area of interest, click in the one in which you want to adjust the tracks.
- 3 Choose **Splay all** from the **Track** menu.



The tracks will be unlocked and drag boxes will appear at the outer corners of the two outside tracks:

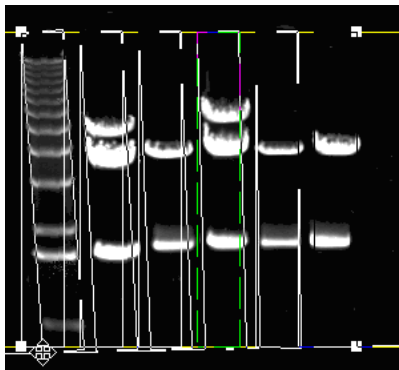


- 4 Move the pointer over the drag box at the first corner that you want to move. The pointer will change to a four-way arrow:



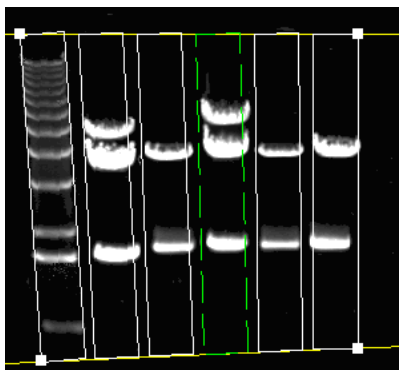
- 5 Press and drag the corner box to its new position.

The outlines of the tracks' new positions will be shown as you drag:



Note When you start to drag the box, the Rf start line (or end line if you are dragging a box at the end of the tracks) will snap to the drag boxes at the start (or end) of the tracks and any bends in the line will be removed. The start (or end if you are dragging a box at the end of the tracks) of all the tracks will then snap to the new Rf line and move with it as you drag it. If you want to adjust the position of the Rf lines, you should do so when you have finished adjusting the splay (and overall position) of the tracks (see *Adjusting the Rf start and end lines*, page 1-43).

- 6 Drop the corner box in its new position:



- 7 Repeat Steps 4–6 for the other corners if required.

Moving and tilting a single track

The first three steps in moving, tilting or bending a track are the same.

To move, tilt or bend a track, first:

- 1 If there is more than one area of interest in the image, click in the one containing the track you want to adjust.
- 2 Choose **Move/tilt** from the **Track** menu. The tracks will be unlocked.
- 3 Click in the track that you want to adjust to select it. The track will be highlighted and will have a drag box at each end.

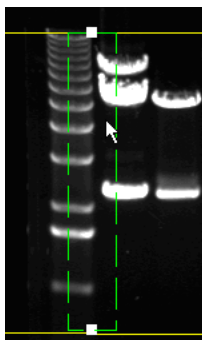


You can now move, tilt or bend the track.

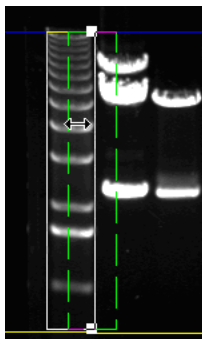
Moving a track

To move an individual track on a sample:

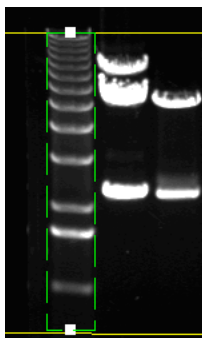
- 4 Perform Steps 1-3 as above.
- 5 Move the pointer to a point anywhere within the track (not on the drag boxes):



- 6 Press and drag the track to its new position:



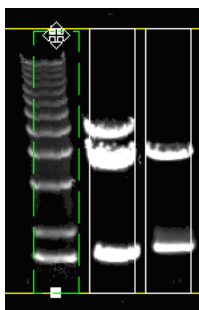
- 7 Drop the track in its new position:



Tilting a track

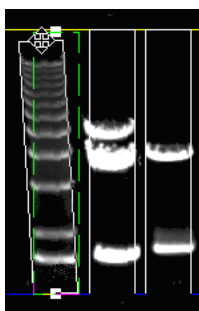
To tilt an individual track on a sample:

- 4 Perform Steps 1–3 as above.
- 5 Move the pointer over the drag box at the first end that you want to move. The pointer will change to a four-way arrow:

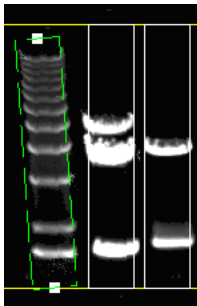


- 6 Press and drag the box to its new position. You can drag to any position provided you do not overlap other tracks or invert the electrophoresis direction.

The outline of the track's new position will be shown as you drag:



- 7 Drop the track in its new position:

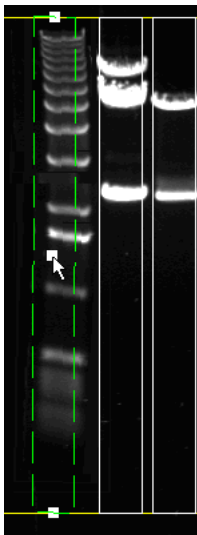


- 8 Repeat Steps 5–7 for the other end of the track if required.

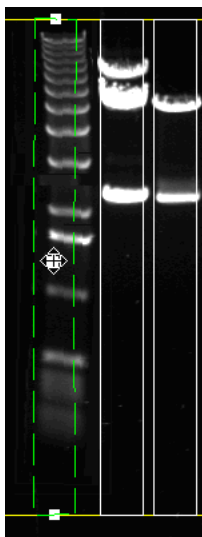
Bending a track

To bend an individual track on a sample:

- 4 Perform Steps 1–3 as above.
- 5 Double-click at the point on the track where you want to bend it. A new drag box will appear at that point:

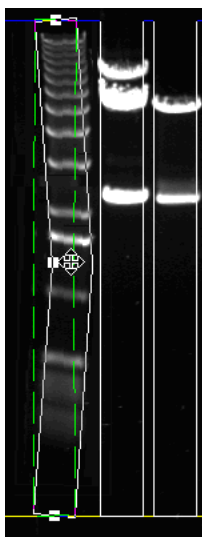


When you place the pointer over the drag box, it turns into a four-way arrow:

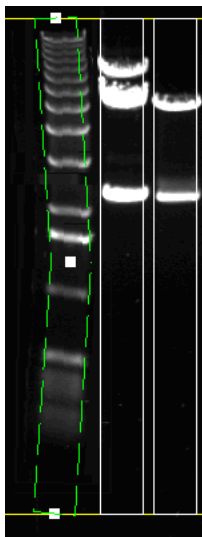


- 6 Press and drag the drag box. You can drag to any position provided you do not overlap other tracks or invert the electrophoresis direction.

The outline of the track's new shape will be shown as you drag:



- 7 Drop the drag box in its new position:



- 8 Repeat Steps 5–7 if you want to put any other bends in the track.

To remove a bend in an individual track on a sample:

- 4 Perform Steps 1–3 as above. Drag boxes will appear at the ends of the track and at any bend points.
- 5 Double-click on the drag box at the apex of the bend that you want to remove.

Adjusting track width

You can adjust the width of an individual track or the width of all tracks (in the selected area of interest) at the same time.

To adjust the width of all tracks (in the selected area of interest) at the same time:

- 1 Click in the Gel window containing the sample to select it.

If there is more than one area of interest, click in the one in which you want to adjust the tracks.

- 2 If **Width individual** is checked in the **Track** menu, choose it to leave individual width mode.

Note When you adjust the widths of all tracks at the same time, all tracks (in the selected area of interest) are set to the width of the track that you are using to adjust the track width.

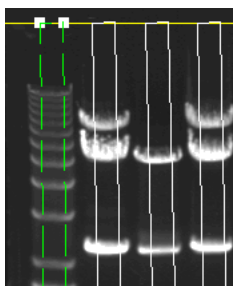
To adjust the width of individual tracks:

- 1 Click in the Gel window containing the sample to select it.
If there is more than one area of interest, click in the one in which you want to adjust the tracks.
- 2 If **Width individual** is unchecked in the **Track** menu, choose it to set individual width mode.

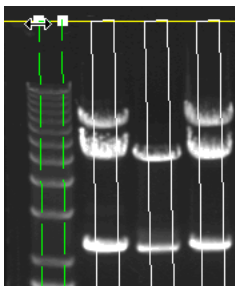
The following instructions apply whether you are adjusting the width of a single track or of all tracks.

To adjust track width on a sample:

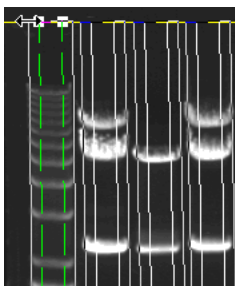
- 1 Click in the Gel window containing the sample to select it.
If there is more than one area of interest, click in the one in which you want to adjust the tracks.
- 2 Choose **Width** from the **Track** menu. The tracks will be unlocked.
- 3 Click in the track that you want to adjust to select it (any track if you are adjusting them all). The track will be highlighted and will have a drag box on each corner:



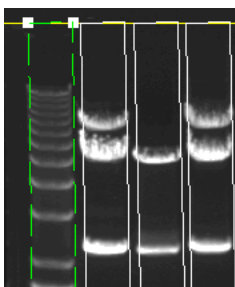
- 4 Move the pointer over one of the drag boxes (it doesn't matter which):



- 5 Press and drag at right angles to the electrophoresis direction (for example, sideways if the electrophoresis direction is up or down). As you are dragging, the new outline of the track(s) will be shown:



- 6 Release to set the new track width:



Adjusting the Rf start and end lines

When you compare profiles, the profiles (which may be taken from different secure sample files) are plotted on an Rf scale from 0 to 1 taken between the Rf start and end lines.

You can adjust the position of the Rf lines in the electrophoresis direction, the angle of the lines across the electrophoresis direction, or add bends to the lines.

The first two steps in all these procedures are the same.

Notes The **Rf start position** and **Rf end position** commands are permanently disabled for High Throughput Gel samples.

Adjusting the overall position or splay of the tracks on the sample also adjusts the position of the Rf lines, so you should make any adjustments to the track position and splay before adjusting the Rf lines.

To adjust the Rf start or end position (in the selected area of interest) on a sample:

- 1 Click in the Gel window containing the sample to select it.

If there is more than one area of interest, click in the one in which you want to adjust the Rf lines.



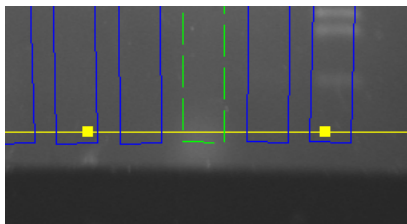
- 2 Choose **Rf start position** from the **Track** menu

or



Choose **Rf end position** from the **Track** menu.

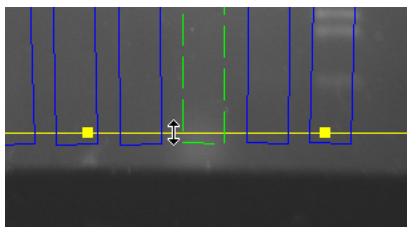
The tracks will be unlocked and two drag boxes will appear on the appropriate Rf line (the examples show the Rf end line, but the procedures are identical for both):



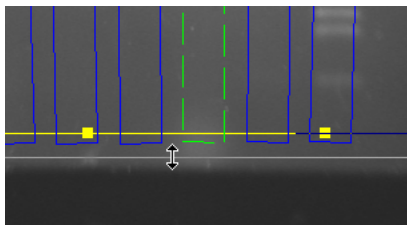
You can now either just move the whole line along the electrophoresis direction, adjust the angle of the line or add bends to the line.

To move an Rf line without changing its angle:

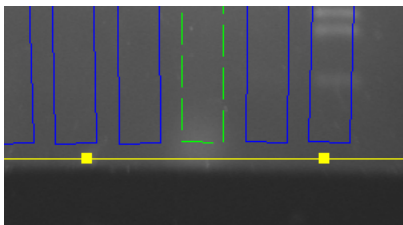
- 3 Follow Steps 1–2 above.
- 4 Move the pointer over the line, but not over either of the drag boxes. The pointer will change to a two-way arrow.



- 5 Press and drag the line to its new position.
The line's new position will be shown as you drag.

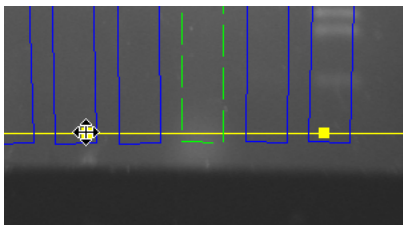


- 6 Drop the line in its new position.



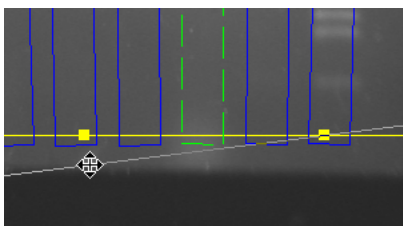
To adjust the angle of an Rf line:

- 3 Follow Steps 1-2 above.
- 4 Move the pointer over one of the drag boxes. The pointer will change to a four-way arrow:

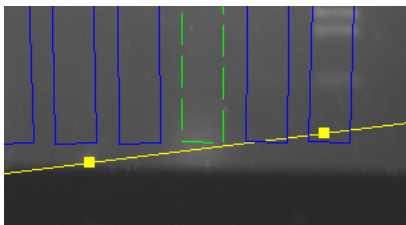


- 5 Press and drag the box to change the angle of the line.

As you drag, the line's new position will be shown on the sample (the line pivots about the other drag box):

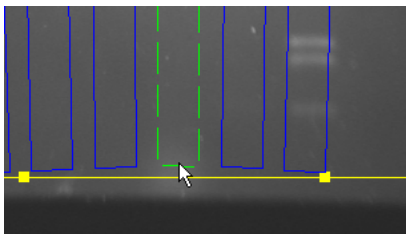


- 6 Drop the line in its new position:

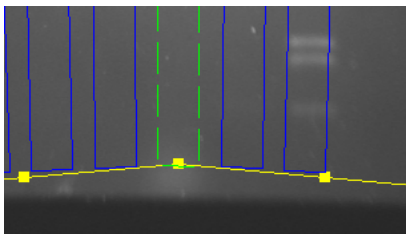


To add a bend to an Rf line:

- 3 Follow Steps 1–2 above.
- 4 Move the pointer to the point on the sample where you want the apex of the bend:



- 5 Double-click. The bend will be added to the line with a new drag box at its apex:



- 6 If you want to adjust the position of the bend, place the pointer over the drag box. The pointer will change to a four-way arrow and you can drag the box to a new position.
- 7 Repeat Steps 4–6 for any other bends you want to add.

To remove a bend from an Rf line:

- 3 Follow Steps 1–2 above.
- 4 Double-click on the drag box at the apex of the bend.

Enabling and disabling tracks

You can choose to exclude the results for individual tracks from printed reports by ‘disabling’ them.

To disable a track:



- 1 Lock the tracks if they are not already locked – all the tracks on the sample must be locked, not just those in the area of interest containing the track you want to disable.
- 2 Click on the track in the Image or Track label pane to select it.
- 3 Choose **Disable** from the **Track** menu or the pop-up menu displayed when you right-click in the Track label pane.

When a track is disabled, the label in the Track label pane, the profile in the Profile pane and values in the Peak value pane are grayed.

To enable a disabled track:



- 1 Lock the tracks if they are not already locked – all the tracks on the sample must be locked, not just those in the area of interest containing the track you want to enable.
- 2 Click on the track in the Image or Track label pane to select it.
- 3 Choose **Enable** from the **Track** menu or the pop-up menu displayed when you right-click in the Track label pane.

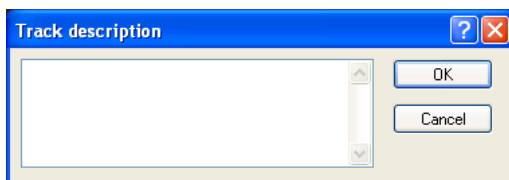
Adding a description for a track

To add a description for a track:



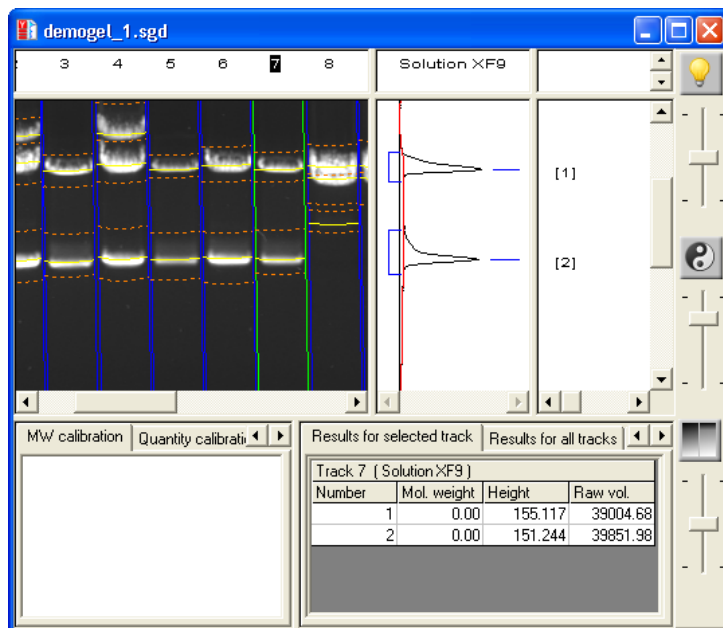
- 1 Lock the tracks if they are not already locked – all the tracks on the sample must be locked, not just those in the area of interest containing the track for which you want to add a description.

- 2 Click on the track in the Image or Track label pane to select it.
- 3 Choose **Description** from the **Track** menu or the pop-up menu displayed when you right click in the Track label pane to display the **Track description** dialog box:



- 4 Type the description in the edit box.
- 5 Press **OK** to confirm the description and close the dialog box.

The description will be shown in the track description pane in the Gel window – “Solution XF9” in the following example:

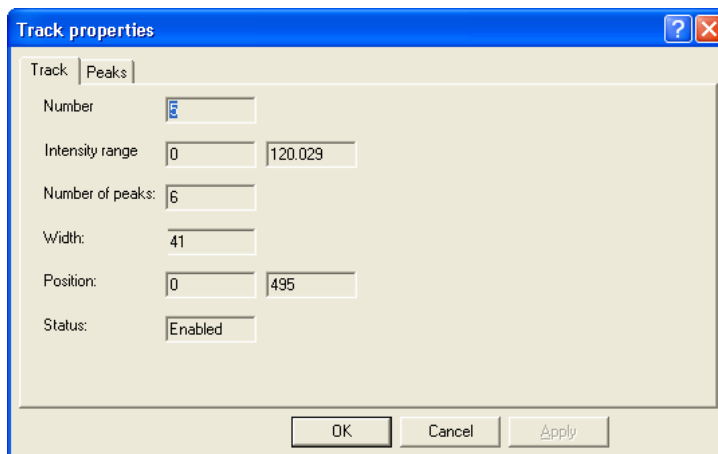


The description will also be shown with the results for individual tracks if they are included in Gel reports.

Displaying track properties

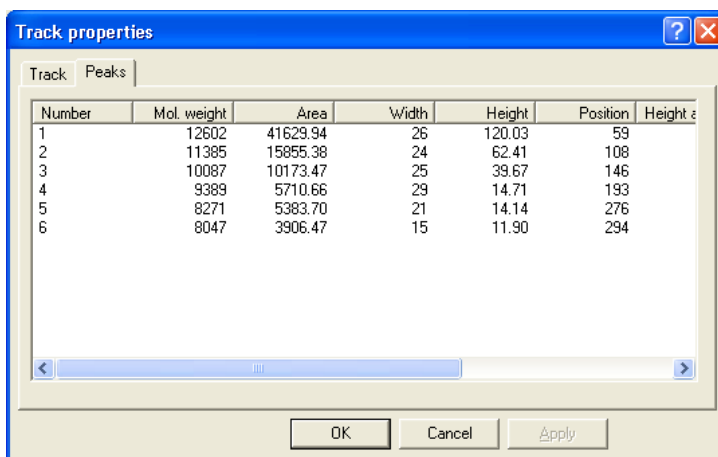
To display information about a track in a Gel window or the **Profile comparison** window:

- 1 Click on the track to select it either
in the Image or Track label pane of a Gel window,
or
in the left-hand pane of the **Profile comparison** window.
- 2 Choose **Properties** from the **Track** or **Profile** menu to display the **Track properties** dialog box:



- Tracks are numbered left to right (electrophoresis direction up or down), top to bottom (electrophoresis direction left) or bottom to top (electrophoresis direction right).
- The **Intensity range** boxes show the minimum and maximum signals along the length of the track. The signal is the sum of the (spatially filtered) pixel values (after baseline corrections) across the width of the track divided by the width of the track.
- The **Width** box shows the width of the track in pixels.
- The **Position** boxes show the start and end of the track.

- The start is given as the number of pixels between the start of the track and the Rf start line (a positive position means that the Rf start line crosses the track).
 - The end is given as the number of pixels between the start of the track and the end of the track.
 - The **Status** box shows whether the track is enabled or disabled.
- 3 Click on the **Peaks** tab to display a table of information about the peaks in the track:



The screenshot shows a 'Track properties' dialog box with the 'Peaks' tab selected. The table below contains the data displayed in the dialog.

Number	Mol. weight	Area	Width	Height	Position	Height z
1	12602	41629.94	26	120.03	59	
2	11385	15855.38	24	62.41	108	
3	10087	10173.47	25	39.67	146	
4	9389	5710.66	29	14.71	193	
5	8271	5383.70	21	14.14	276	
6	8047	3906.47	15	11.90	294	

How to set the background correction for tracks

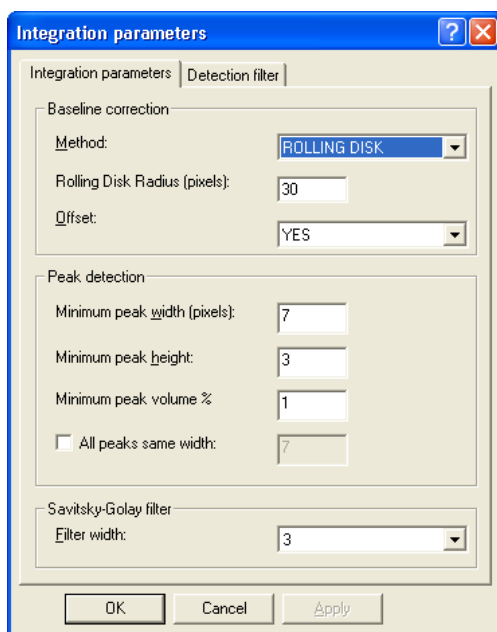
Setting the integration parameters

Note The same set of integration parameters is used for all areas of interest on the sample.

To set the parameters used for profile generation and automatic peak location:



- 1 Choose **Integration parameters** from the **Edit** menu to display the **Integration parameters** dialog box:



- 2 Choose how to draw the baseline from which the signal is measured to give the profile. The signal is the sum of the (spatially filtered) pixel values across the width of the track.

You can use:

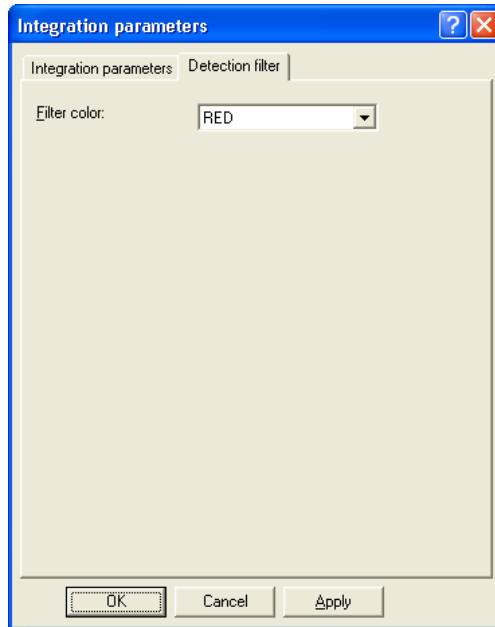
- **None** – no baseline correction
- **Track borders**
- **Lowest slope**

- **Track borders & slope** – a combination of the last two: the signal is corrected for the track borders and then the lowest slope correction is used
- **Rolling disk.**

(See the *Baseline correction* subsections after these instructions (page 1-53) for details.)

- 3 If you have chosen to use **Rolling disk** background correction, enter or edit the radius of the disk to be used. Some experimentation may be required to find the best size of disk to use for each image – press **Apply** to see the effect of the correction without closing the dialog box.
- 4 Choose whether to use a baseline offset or not. See *Baseline correction* after these instructions for details.
- 5 Specify the **Minimum peak width** in image pixels for a peak to be detected.
- 6 Specify the **Minimum peak height** in image pixels that a peak must have if it is to be detected.
- 7 Specify the **Minimum peak volume** as a percentage of the total quantity on the track that a peak must have if it is to be detected.
- 8 Check **All peaks same width** to make the detected peaks all have the same width, and enter the required width in the associated edit box.
- 9 Specify the width of the Savitsky-Golay filter used in integrating the image – the greater the width the greater the smoothing effect of the filter. See *Savitsky-Golay filter* (page 1-56) for examples.

- 10 Click on the **Detection filter** tab to display the **Detection filter** page so that you can choose a filter for filtering color images:



- 11 Choose the required filter from the drop-down list box.
- 12 Press **Apply** to see the effect of any changes without closing the dialog box; press **OK** to save the new settings and close the dialog box.

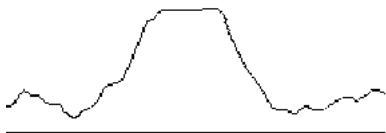
Baseline correction – track borders

For track borders baseline correction the signal is calculated relative to the signal at the borders.

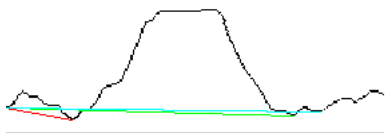
Baseline correction – lowest slope

To understand how this method works, consider the following example, which goes through the process as if you had to do it by hand (naturally all this is done

automatically by the program – all you would see is the profile in the first picture change into the profile in the last picture):

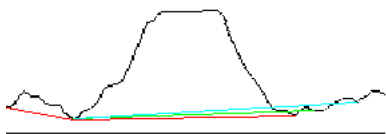


To find the first segment of the baseline, the program starts at one end of the profile and draws imaginary lines from the start point to all other points on the profile. The following example just shows three of these lines:

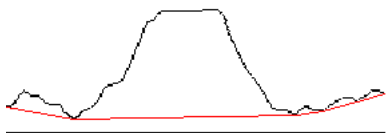


The program then chooses the line of lowest slope. This is the shortest line in this example as the other lines have larger (less negative) slopes (lines to all other points on the profile have even larger slopes).

To find the second segment of the baseline, the program moves to the end of the first segment and again draws imaginary lines from there to the remaining points on the profile. Again the following example only draws three of these lines:



The program again chooses the line of lowest slope (the shortest line again in this example) and repeats this process until it gets to the other end of the profile:



The corrected signal is then measured as the height above this baseline:



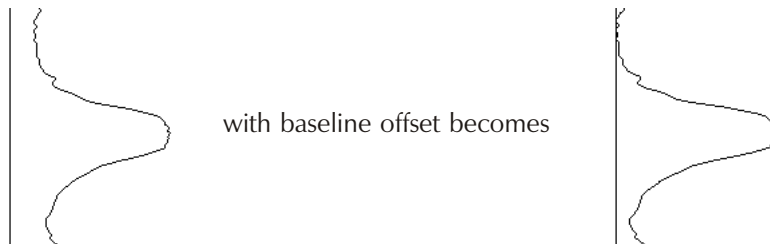
Baseline correction – rolling disk

For this method the program first calculates the position of the line formed by the center of a disk with the set radius rolled along below the profile. The baseline is then one radius length above this line, and the corrected signal is measured as the height above this baseline.

Baseline correction – offset

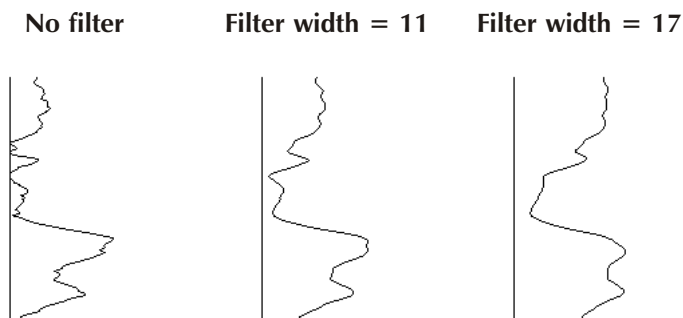
Choose whether to use a baseline offset or not. The baseline offset moves the baseline up to the lowest point in the profile.

For example:



Savitsky-Golay filter

The pictures below are examples of the effects of different degrees of spatial filtering.

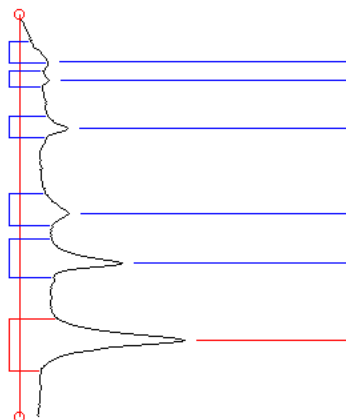


Setting or changing a manual baseline

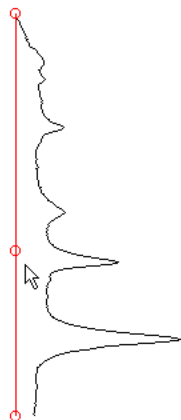
To set a manual baseline for a track's profile:

- 1 Click on the track in the Image pane to select it.
- 2 Choose **Edit manual baseline** from the **Track** menu or the context menu displayed when you right-click in the Image or Profile pane.

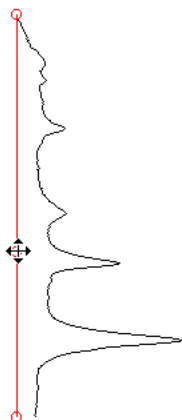
The baseline will be displayed with circular drag handles at its ends and in the color selected (using **Configuration** in the **Extras** menu – see page 8-143) for the manual baseline.



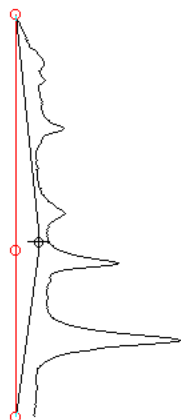
- 3 If required, double-click on the baseline to add additional drag handles so that you can bend the line (any peak markers and boundaries will be removed from the profile):



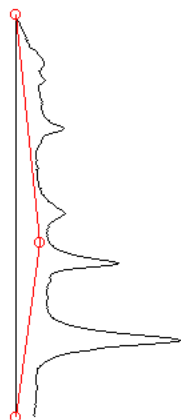
- 4 To reshape the baseline:
 - a Position the pointer over the drag handle you want to move. The pointer will change to a four-way arrow.



- b Drag the handle to reshape the baseline.

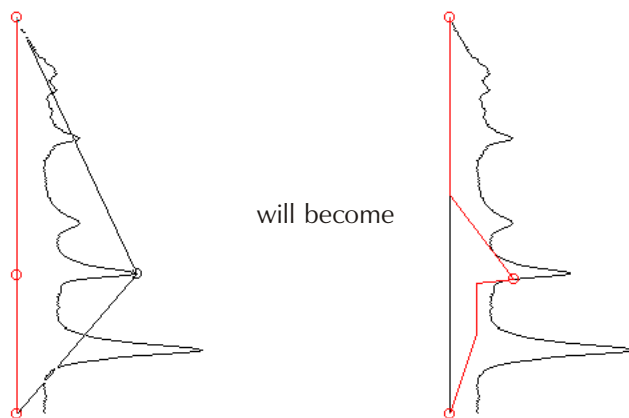


- c Drop the handle in its new position.



Note You cannot drag a handle above the profile line. While you are dragging a handle, the new baseline may be drawn above the profile, but when you release the mouse button it will be reshaped so that it always lies below it.

For example, when you release the mouse button,



Deleting a manual baseline

To delete a manual baseline for a track:

- 1 Click on the track in the Image pane to select it.
- 2 Right-click in the Image pane (or Profile pane) to display a context menu.
- 3 Choose **Delete manual baseline**.

How to locate and edit peaks on a track

In order to calculate the molecular weights or quantities for a track, the program must be able to identify the peaks and peak bounds in the profile. You can do this:

- automatically – this is the default and is the recommended way of working unless you have some specific need to use one of the other methods,
- semi-automatically, or
- manually.

Each of these is described separately in the first three subsections.

After peaks have been located/added you can edit them at any time. See the following for details:

- *Selecting peaks* – page 1-64
- *Deleting peaks* – page 1-67
- *Adjusting the position of a peak* – page 1-68
- *Adjusting the position of a peak's bounds* – page 1-70.

See also:

- *Displaying peak properties* – page 1-71.

Locating the peaks on a track automatically

The program uses a number of criteria, such as the minimum height and width, to decide whether the local maxima on a profile should be counted as a peak. You can change these criteria, together with the method used for background correction, by choosing **Integration parameters** from the **Edit** menu – see *Setting the integration parameters*, page 1-51.

You can set the program to detect peaks automatically whenever the track positions are changed or the background correction method is changed.

To set automatic peak detection On or Off:

- 1 Choose **Configuration** from the **Extras** menu to display the **General** page of the **Configuration** dialog box.
- 2 Check **Auto locate peaks** to turn automatic peak detection on; uncheck it to turn it off – see the entry for **Configuration** from the **Extras** menu in the *Menus* chapter (page 8-139) for details.

Automatic peak detection is the program's default and the recommended way of working.

Locating peaks automatically when automatic peak detection is turned off

Even if you have set automatic peak detection off, you can still use automatic peak detection to locate the peaks either on a selected track or on all tracks.

Note You can only locate peaks when the tracks are locked.

To locate the peaks on an individual track:

- 1 Click on the track in the Image pane to select it.
- 2 Choose **On selected track** from the **Peak Locate** submenu.

To locate the peaks on all tracks (in the selected area of interest) automatically:

Choose **On all tracks** from the **Peak Locate** submenu.

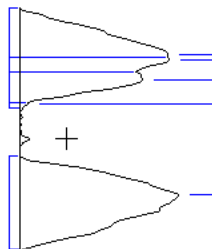
Adding a peak semi-automatically

Note You can only add peaks when the tracks are locked.

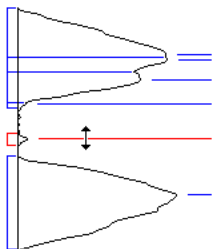
You can add a peak semi-automatically by specifying its position in the Profile pane or the Image pane.

To add a peak by specifying its position in the Profile pane:

- 1 Select the track by clicking on it in the Gel window's Image pane.
- 2 In the Profile pane, move the pointer over the position where you want to add the peak (it may help to magnify the display first):



3 Double-click:



A peak will be added with bounds set to the neighboring local minima.

- 4 If necessary, adjust the position of the peak and its bounds – see *Adjusting the position of a peak*, page 1-68, and *Adjusting the position of a peak's bounds*, page 1-70.

To add a peak by specifying its position in the Image pane:

- 1 Double-click in the Gel window's Image pane at the position you want to insert the peak. A peak will be added with bounds set to the neighboring local minima.
- 2 If necessary, adjust the position of the peak and its bounds – see *Adjusting the position of a peak* (page 1-68) and *Adjusting the position of a peak's bounds*, page 1-70.

Notes You cannot add a peak within the bounds of another peak. Double-clicking inside an existing peak has the effect of deleting the existing peak and placing a new peak at the position clicked, with the bounds again set to the neighboring local minima.

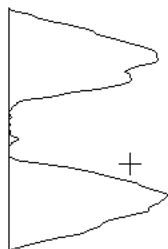
If the track has been defined as a molecular weight standard and has already had molecular weights assigned to the peaks, any assignments to peaks with higher peak numbers will be reassigned. This will probably affect the molecular weight calculations for other tracks. Molecular weight assignments are to the peak number, so when you add a peak, the peak numbers of all later peaks will be increased by one, so, in effect, all assignments beyond the added peak will be moved back to the previous peak (see *Reassigning molecular weights in a standard track*, page 1-85, if you want to move the assignments back to the original peaks).

Adding a peak manually

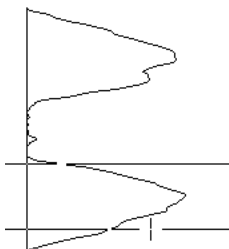
Note You can only add peaks when the tracks are locked.

To add a peak manually by specifying the position of its bounds:

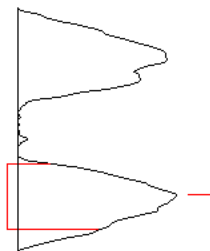
- 1 In the Image pane, click on the track to select it.
- 2 In the Profile pane, move the pointer over the position where you want to place the first peak bound (it may help to magnify the display first):



- 3 Drag to the position you want to place the other peak bound:



- 4 Drop the bound in position:



The peak bounds will be added with the peak shown in the position detected by the program.

- 5 If necessary, adjust the position of the peak and its bounds.

Notes You cannot add a peak within the bounds of another peak. Double-clicking inside an existing peak has the effect of deleting the existing peak and placing a new peak at the position clicked, with the bounds again set to the neighboring local minima.

If the track has been defined as a molecular weight standard and has already had molecular weights assigned to the peaks, any assignments to peaks with higher peak numbers will be reassigned. This will probably affect the molecular weight calculations for other tracks. Molecular weight assignments are to the peak number, so when you add a peak, the peak numbers of all later peaks will be increased by one, so, in effect, all assignments beyond the added peak will be moved back to the previous peak (see *Reassigning molecular weights/quantities in a standard track*, page 1-85, if you want to move the assignments back to the original peaks).

Selecting peaks

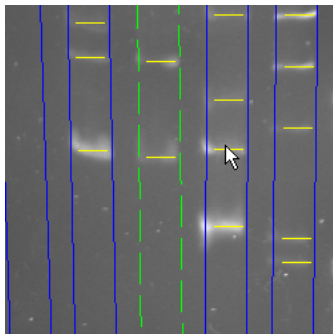
You can select peaks using:

- The Image pane in the Gel window (this allows you to select a single peak only)
- or
- The Profile pane in the Gel window (this allows you to select a single peak or several neighboring peaks).

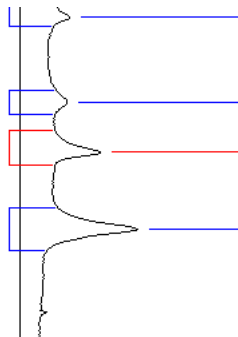
Note You can only select peaks when the tracks are locked.

To select a peak in the Image pane:

- 1 If peak markers are not already displayed on the tracks, choose **Peak markers** from the **View** menu – the command is checked in the menu when peak markers are displayed.
- 2 Click near the peak in the track (if the peaks are close together, it may help to magnify the display before trying to select the peak):



The peak and bounds will appear in the Profile pane in the colors chosen (using **Configuration** in the **Extras** menu – see page 8-143) for selected bounds and peaks:



Note If you right-click, you will select the peak and display a pop-up menu for carrying out operations on the peak with one action.

The peak whose boundary is closest to the point you clicked will be selected – note that since the peak markers on the track show the positions of the peaks and not the

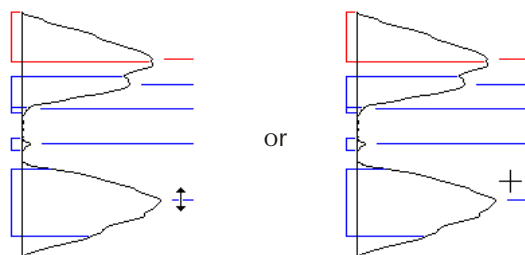
Using GeneTools for Gel analysis

boundaries this does not necessarily mean the peak whose marker is closest to the point you clicked.

Note Selecting the peak also selects the track if it was not already selected.

To select a peak in the Profile pane:

- 1 In the Gel window's Image pane, click in the track containing the peak to select it.
- 2 In the Profile pane, click on the peak itself, or anywhere within the peak bounds (if the peaks are close together, it may help to magnify the display before trying to select the peak):



Note You can right-click on a peak to select it and display a pop-up menu for carrying out operations on the peak with one action.

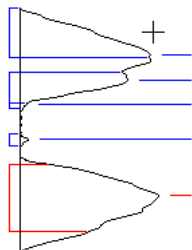
When the peak is selected the peak bounds and peak marker will appear in the colors chosen for selected bounds and peaks.

Note If you click outside the bounds of any peak, no peak will be selected and any previously selected peak will be deselected.

To select several neighboring peaks:

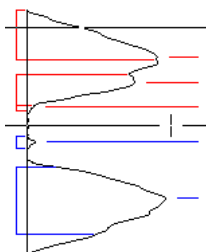
- 1 In the Image pane, click in the track containing the peak to select it.

- 2 In the Profile pane, click anywhere within the peak bounds of the peak at one end of the range of peaks that you want to select:



Note: If you click outside the bounds of any peaks you will drag out a new peak instead of selecting peaks.

- 3 Drag down to the peak at one end of the range of peaks that you want to select. As you drag through the peaks they will change color to show that they will be selected.



Deleting peaks

Note You can only delete peaks when the tracks are locked.

To delete all the peaks from all tracks (in the selected area of interest):

Choose **All peaks on all tracks** from the **Peak Delete** submenu.

To delete all the peaks from a track:

- 1 Click in the track from which you want to delete the peaks to select it.
- 2 Choose **All peaks on selected track** from the **Peak Delete** submenu.

To delete one or more selected peaks from a track:

- 1 Select the peak(s) that you want to delete.
- 2 Choose **Selected peak(s)** from the **Peak Delete** submenu.
or, if you used right-click to select the peak, choose **Delete** from the pop-up menu.

Note If the track has been defined as a molecular weight standard and has already had molecular weights assigned to the peaks, any assignments to peaks with higher peak numbers will be reassigned and will have an effect on molecular weight calculations for other tracks. Molecular weight assignments are to the peak number, so when you delete a peak, the peak numbers of all later peaks will be reduced by one, so, in effect, all assignments beyond the deleted peak will be moved on to the next peak (see *Reassigning molecular weights/quantities in a standard track*, page 1-85, if you want to move the assignments back to the original peaks).

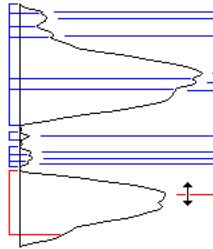
Adjusting the position of a peak

Note You can only move peaks when the tracks are locked.

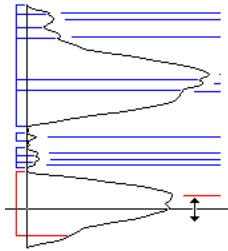
To adjust the position of a peak:

- 1 If necessary, adjust the peak bounds – see page 1-70 (you can only adjust the peak position within the peak bounds).

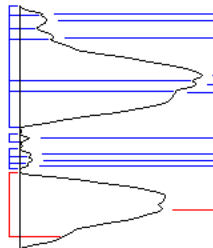
- 2 In the Profile pane, move the pointer over the peak (it may help to magnify the display first) – the pointer will change to a double-headed arrow:



- 3 Drag the peak to the new position:



- 4 Drop the peak in the new position:



Using GeneTools for Gel analysis

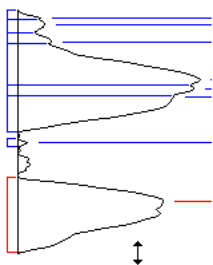
Note If you have two adjacent peaks with abutting bounds, and move both peaks to the common bound, the peaks will be merged into a single peak with the outer bounds from the merged peaks. If the track is a molecular weight standard track, this may have an effect on molecular weight assignments – see the notes in *Deleting peaks* (page 1-67) for more details.

Adjusting the position of a peak's bounds

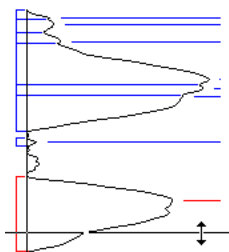
Note You can only move peak bounds when the tracks are locked.

To adjust a peak's bounds:

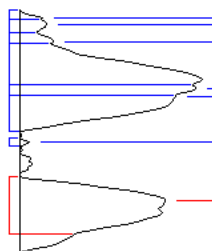
- 1 In the Profile pane, move the pointer over the bound you want to move (it may help to magnify the display first) – the pointer will change to a double-headed arrow:



- 2 Drag the bound to its new position:



- 3 Drop the bound in its new position:



Displaying peak properties

To display properties of the selected peak:

- 1 Choose **Properties** from the **Peak** menu to display the **Peak properties** dialog box:

A screenshot of the 'Peak properties' dialog box. It contains several input fields for peak data. The 'Peak number' field is at the top. Below it are fields for 'Rf', 'MW', 'Raw vol.', and 'Width'. A section with two columns, 'Index' and 'Height', contains fields for 'Start', 'Maximum', 'End', and 'Quantity'. An 'OK' button is at the bottom right.

Peak properties	
Peak number:	<input type="text" value="5"/>
Rf:	<input type="text" value="0.5383"/>
MW:	<input type="text"/>
Raw vol.	<input type="text" value="86111"/>
Width:	<input type="text" value="46"/>
Index	Height
Start:	<input type="text" value="245"/>
	<input type="text" value="26.5135"/>
Maximum:	<input type="text" value="267"/>
	<input type="text" value="100.884"/>
End:	<input type="text" value="290"/>
	<input type="text" value="19.5707"/>
Quantity:	<input type="text" value="0"/>
<input type="button" value="OK"/>	

This dialog box is read-only.

- Peaks are numbered in the electrophoresis direction.

- The Rf position of the peak is given by:

$$\frac{\text{Distance along the track from Rf start line}}{\text{Distance along the track between the Rf start and End lines}} .$$

- 2 Press **OK** to close the dialog box.

How to determine molecular weights and quantities

There are three main steps in determining the molecular weights and/or quantities represented by the peaks on a gel:

- A Set the molecular weight and/or quantity calibration methods. For details, see:

- *Setting the quantity calibration method*, next section
- *Specifying how molecular weights are calculated from standard tracks*, page 1-75.

- B Calibrate the sample by assigning molecular weight and/or quantity values to known peaks on the gel.

For quantities, you do this:

- by assigning quantities to individual peaks on tracks – see *Creating quantity calibrations without using standard tracks*, page 1-76
- and/or
- by defining quantity standard tracks – see *Determining molecular weights/quantities using standard tracks*, page 1-79.

For molecular weights, you do this:

- by defining molecular weight standard tracks – see *Determining molecular weights/quantities using standard tracks*, page 1-79.

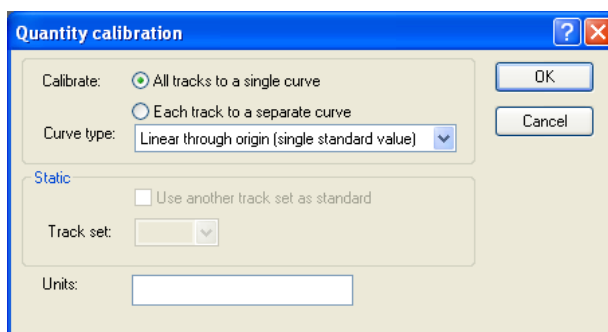
- C Display the results. For details, see:

- *Viewing molecular weight and quantity results*, page 1-87.

Setting the quantity calibration method

To set or view the calibration method and units for quantity determinations:

- 1 If more than one area of interest has been defined on the sample, click in the area for which you want to set the quantity calibration method – you can set independent quantity calibration methods for each area of interest.
- 2 Choose **Quantity calibration** from the **Edit** menu to display the **Quantity calibration** dialog box:



(You can also display this dialog box by pressing **Edit quantity calibration** in the **Assign molecular weight/quantity** dialog box – see *Assigning molecular weights/quantities to a standard track*, page 1-79.)

- If there is only one area of interest defined on the sample, or you want to set the calibration for the selected area of interest independently, go to Step 3.
 - If more than one area of interest has been defined on the sample and you want to use the calibration defined in one of the other areas for the selected area of interest, go to Step 6.
- 3 Click on a radio button to decide whether:
 - the same calibration curve should be used for **All tracks**
 - **Each track** should have its own calibration curve.

- 4 Choose the shape of calibration curve(s) from the drop-down list box. You can choose:
- **Linear through origin (single standard value)**
 - **Linear (multiple standard values)**
 - **Linear through origin (multiple standard values)**
 - **Quadratic**
 - **Quadratic through origin.**

Note If you select **Linear through origin (single standard value)** the calibration curve is drawn through the origin and the *last* calibration point you have added – in other words, since this is a single point calibration, adding a new calibration point replaces the previous one. For the other types of curve, the calibration curve is drawn as the best fit for all the (relevant) calibration points – adding a new calibration point contributes to (and does not replace) the calibration from any previous points.

Once you have assigned quantities to peaks, the calibration curve will be shown in the **Quantity calibration** tab in the Gel window's Graphics pane – see *The quantity calibration graph*, page 1-89, for more details.

- 5 Enter your own quantity units in the **Units** box.
- Go to Step 7.
- 6 If more than one area of interest has been defined on the sample and you want to use the calibration defined in one of the other areas for the selected area of interest:
- a Check **Use another track set as standard**.
 - b Choose the area of interest whose calibration you want to use from the **Track set** drop-down list box.
- 7 Press **OK** to confirm your selections and close the dialog box.

See *Creating quantity calibrations without using standard tracks*, page 1-76, and *Determining molecular weights/quantities using standard tracks*, page 1-79, for how to calibrate a gel for quantity measurements.

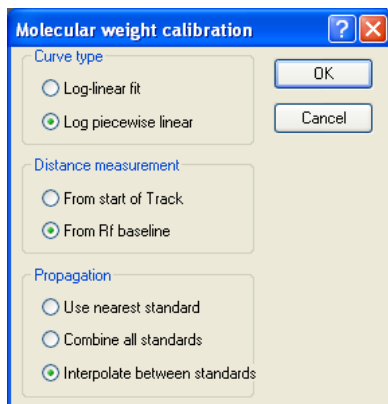
Specifying how molecular weights are calculated from standard tracks

Note You cannot apply a molecular weight calibration outside its area of interest, or combine molecular weight calibrations from different areas of interest. If you have defined more than one area of interest on the sample, you will need to use separate molecular weight standard tracks and create a separate molecular weight calibration for each area. You will also need to specify how molecular weights are calculated in each area of interest.

To specify how molecular weights are calculated from standard tracks (in the selected area of interest):



- 1 Choose **Molecular weight calibration** from the **Edit** menu to display the **Molecular weight calibration** dialog box:



(You can also display this dialog box by pressing **Edit calibration** in the **Assign molecular weight/quantity** dialog box – see *Assigning molecular weights/quantities to a standard track*, page 1-79.)

- 2 Click on a radio button to choose the shape of calibration curve to use for calculating molecular weights.
 - **Log-linear fit** means the best logarithmic curve fit for all points – the curve may not pass through all the calibration points.
 - **Log piecewise linear** means a logarithmic curve is drawn between adjacent points – the curve will pass through all the calibration points but may not be smooth at those points.

Once you have assigned molecular weights to peaks, the calibration curve will be shown in the **MW Calibration** tab in the Gel window's Graphics pane – see *The molecular weight calibration graph*, page 1-88, for more details.

- 3 Click on a radio button to choose whether distance along the track should be measured **From start of track** or **From Rf baseline**.
- 4 Choose how to calculate molecular weights on a track if there is more than one standard track.

In the **Propagation** box you can choose:

- **Use nearest standard**, to use the standard track nearest to the track
- **Combine all standards**, to calculate a molecular weight from all the standards and then take the average
- **Interpolate between standards**, to interpolate the calibrations from the two adjacent tracks.

- 5 Press **OK** to save the new settings and close the dialog box.

See *Determining molecular weights/quantities using standard tracks*, page 1-79, for how to calibrate a gel for molecular weight measurements.

Creating quantity calibrations without using standard tracks

In order to determine quantities from the tracks on a sample, you must first calibrate the sample by assigning quantities to peaks in the sample to create one or more calibration curves.

This section describes how to calibrate the quantities on a gel without defining standard tracks; see *Determining molecular weights/quantities using standard tracks*, page 1-79, for how to create a molecular weight/quantity calibration by defining one or more standard tracks.

The quantity calibration method determines how the quantities for other peaks are calculated from the quantities you assign to known peaks – see *Setting the quantity calibration method*, page 1-73, for details.

Assigning quantities to peaks

Note You can only assign quantities to peaks when the tracks are locked – see *Locking tracks*, page 1-25).

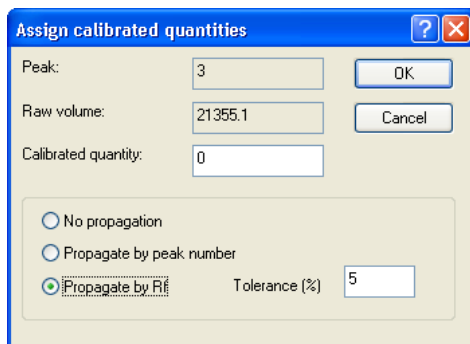
To assign a quantity to a peak in a track:

- 1 Select the peak to which you want to assign a quantity.

Note For **Linear through origin (single standard value)**, the calibration uses a single peak assignment (the most recent). For the other types of curve, the calibration curve is drawn as the best fit for all the (relevant) calibration points – adding a new calibration point contributes to (and does not replace) the calibration from any previous points – see *Setting the quantity calibration method*, page 1-73, for how to choose the type of calibration curve.



- 2 Choose **Assign quantity** from the **Peak** menu (or the pop-up menu displayed when you right-click on the peak) to display the **Assign calibrated quantities** dialog box:



The dialog box titled "Assign calibrated quantities" has a blue header bar with a question mark icon and a close button. It contains the following fields and controls:

- Peak:** A text box containing the value "3".
- Raw volume:** A text box containing the value "21355.1".
- Calibrated quantity:** A text box containing the value "0".
- Buttons:** "OK" and "Cancel" buttons are located to the right of the "Peak" and "Raw volume" fields respectively.
- Propagation options:** Three radio buttons are listed: "No propagation", "Propagate by peak number", and "Propagate by Rf". The "Propagate by Rf" option is selected.
- Tolerance (%):** A text box containing the value "5" is located to the right of the "Propagate by Rf" option.

Note You can also display this dialog box by pressing **Assign quantity to peak** in the **Manual** page of the **Assign molecular weight/quantity** dialog box – see *Assigning quantities to individual peaks on a standard track*, page 1-83.

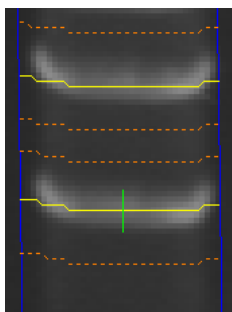
- The **Peak** box is read-only: it shows which peak was selected when you opened the dialog box.
- The **Raw volume** box is read-only: it shows the uncalibrated volume calculated from the area of the peak.

- The **Calibrated quantity** box shows the quantity calculated using the existing calibration, if there is one, and 0 if there isn't.
 - The radio buttons are disabled if you have chosen to use a single calibration curve for all tracks – see *Setting the quantity calibration method*, page 1-73.
- 3 Enter a quantity in the **Calibrated quantity** box to add a new calibration point to the calibration curve for the selected peak.
 - 4 If you have chosen to use a single calibration curve for all tracks, click on:
 - **No propagation** if you do not want this quantity assignment applied to any other tracks.
 - Click on **Propagate by peak number** to apply this quantity assignment to the same peak number on all other tracks.
 - Click on **Propagate by Rf** to apply this quantity assignment to peaks with the same Rf (within the given **Tolerance**) on all other tracks.

And:

Enter a figure in the **Tolerance** box to specify how close the Rf of a peak on another track has to be to the Rf of the selected peak for it to be assigned the quantity calibration.

When you have assigned quantities to peaks, the peak markers on the track in the Image pane will have a mark on them to show that they have been assigned a quantity (and/or molecular weight):



Determining molecular weights/quantities using standard tracks

You can use molecular weight/quantity standard tracks to calibrate gels to determine the molecular weights and quantities represented by the peaks on other tracks on the gel. Having defined one or more tracks as a molecular weight and/or quantity standard, you then assign molecular weights and/or quantities to peaks in these tracks to create molecular weight and/or quantity calibration curves.

Note This is the only way to calibrate the molecular weight measurements, but for quantities you can also calibrate the measurements on the gel by assigning known quantities to individual peaks without defining any quantity standard tracks – see *Creating quantity calibrations without using standard tracks*, page 1-76.

Assigning molecular weights/quantities to a standard track

Note If you have defined more than one area of interest on the gel, you will need to use separate molecular weight standard tracks and create a separate molecular weight calibration for each area. You cannot apply a molecular weight calibration outside its area of interest, or combine molecular weight calibrations from different areas of interest. For quantities, however, you can set an independent calibration for each area of interest or choose to use the quantity calibration from a different area of interest – see *Setting the quantity calibration method*, page 1-73.

To assign molecular weights and/or quantities to the peaks in a standard track:

- 1 If you want to assign molecular weights and/or quantities from a molecular weight standard in a molecular weight library, and the library is not currently open, choose **Open library** from the **File** menu to open it.

- 2 Click in the required track to select it.

- 3 Locate the peaks on the track if they haven't already been located.

- 4 If necessary, edit the peaks.

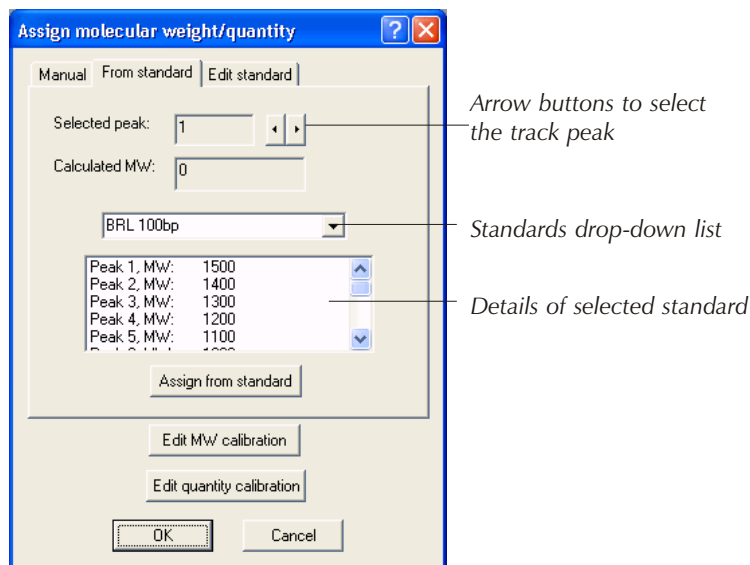
(In particular, if you want to assign a set of molecular weights and/or quantities from a standard, you should remove any spurious peaks to avoid any values being assigned to them from the standard.)



- 5 Choose **MW/quantity standard** from the **Track** menu (or the pop-up menu displayed by right-clicking in the track label) to define the track as a molecular weight standard.

The command is checked in the menus and the track is labeled **MwS** when the track has been defined as a molecular weight standard (this will change to **QuS** if you assign quantities but not molecular weights from a standard or **MQS** if you assign molecular weights and quantities).

The **Assign molecular weight/quantity** dialog box will be displayed open at the **From standard** page:



Note This section is concerned with using the **Assign molecular weight/quantity** dialog box to assign molecular weights and/or quantities to peaks on standard tracks. However, it also allows you to change the way molecular weights and/or quantities are calculated from molecular weight/quantity standard tracks (see *Specifying how molecular weights are calculated from standard tracks*, page 1-75, and *Setting the quantity calibration method*, page 1-73, for details). The **Edit standard page** also allows you to create or edit a molecular weight standard in a library (see *Creating a new molecular weight/quantity standard*, page 1-100, and *Editing a molecular weight/quantity standard in a library*, page 1-102).

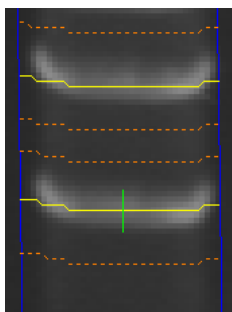
The **Selected peak** box is read-only and shows the number of the selected peak (you can select another peak using the arrow buttons). The **Calculated MW** box is also read-only and will show the molecular weight of the selected peak calculated using any other molecular weights you have entered and the peak position – it will show 0 if you have not entered enough data to calculate a molecular weight.

The list box shows the contents of the standard selected in the Standards drop-down list box above it. Standards may contain molecular weight assignments, quantity assignments or molecular weight and quantity assignments for each peak (there are no quantity assignments in the standard selected in the example picture).

This dialog box allows you to assign molecular weights and/or quantities from a standard, or, using the **Manual** page, assign molecular weights and/or quantities to individual peaks manually (see the following sections for instructions).

Note Molecular weight calculations are more accurate for peaks lying within the range of the calibration standard, where they are calculated by interpolation, rather than outside, where they are calculated by extrapolation.

When you have assigned molecular weights/quantities to peaks, the peak markers on the track in the Image pane will have a mark on them to show that they have been assigned a molecular weight and/or quantity:



Assigning molecular weights/quantities from a molecular weight standard

To assign molecular weights and/or quantities from a molecular weight standard library (see *Working with molecular weight libraries*, page 1-92, for more information about creating and editing molecular weight libraries):

- 1 If the **Selected peak** box does not show the peak corresponding to the first molecular weight/quantity in the standard, use the arrow buttons to select that peak.
- 2 Choose the required standard from the Standards drop-down list.

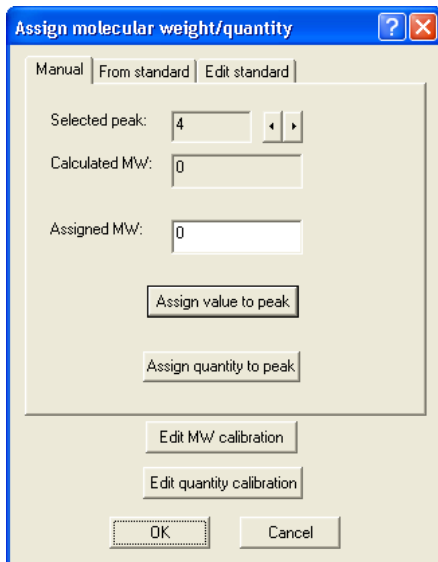
The list box below the Standards drop-down list will show the peak number and the molecular weights and/or quantities for the standard.

- 3 Press **Assign from standard**.

Assigning molecular weights to individual peaks on a standard track

To assign molecular weights to individual peaks manually:

- 1 Click on the **Manual** tab to display the **Manual** page:



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Assign molecular weight/quantity" with a blue border and standard Windows window controls (minimize, maximize, close). It has three tabs: "Manual" (selected), "From standard", and "Edit standard". The "Manual" tab contains the following elements:

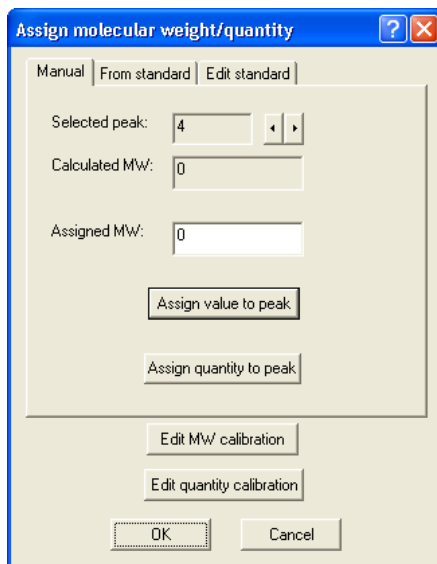
- Selected peak:** A text box containing the number "4" with left and right arrow buttons.
- Calculated MW:** A text box containing the number "0".
- Assigned MW:** A text box containing the number "0".
- Buttons:** "Assign value to peak", "Assign quantity to peak", "Edit MW calibration", "Edit quantity calibration", "OK", and "Cancel".

- 2 If the **Selected peak** box does not show the peak to which you want to assign a molecular weight, use the arrow buttons to select it.
- 3 Enter the molecular weight that you want to assign in the **Assigned MW** box.
- 4 Press **Assign value to peak**.
The **Selected peak** box will show the next peak, ready for you to assign the next molecular weight.
- 5 Repeat Steps 2–4 for any other molecular weights that you want to assign.

Assigning quantities to individual peaks on a standard track

To assign quantities to individual peaks on a standard track manually:

- 1 Click on the **Manual** tab to display the **Manual** page:



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Assign molecular weight/quantity" with a blue title bar containing a question mark and a close button. The dialog has three tabs: "Manual" (selected), "From standard", and "Edit standard". The "Manual" tab contains the following elements:

- "Selected peak:" with a text box containing "4" and arrow buttons to the left and right.
- "Calculated MW:" with a text box containing "0".
- "Assigned MW:" with a text box containing "0".
- A button labeled "Assign value to peak".
- A button labeled "Assign quantity to peak".
- A button labeled "Edit MW calibration".
- A button labeled "Edit quantity calibration".
- At the bottom, "OK" and "Cancel" buttons.

- 2 If the **Selected peak** box does not show the peak to which you want to assign a quantity, use the arrow buttons to select it.
- 3 Press **Assign quantity to peak** to display the **Assign calibrated quantities** dialog box so that you can assign a quantity to the selected peak. This dialog box is also displayed when you assign a quantity to a peak on a non-standard track – see *Assigning quantities to peaks*, page 1-77, for how to use the dialog box.
- 4 Repeat Steps 2 and 3 for any other peaks.

Removing molecular weight and quantity assignments from peaks

Note You can only remove molecular weight and quantity assignments when the tracks are locked.

To remove a single molecular weight assignment from a peak in a standard track:

- 1 Select the peak for which you want to unassign a molecular weight.
- 2 Choose **Unassign molecular weight** from the **Peak** menu (or, if you right-click to select the peak, choose the same command from the pop-up menu).

Or

- 1 Choose **Molecular weight** from the **View** menu or click on the **MW Calibration** tab in the Graphics pane to display molecular weights in the Peak value pane.
- 2 Right-click on the molecular weight assignment in the Peak value pane to select it and pop up a menu.
- 3 Choose **Delete** from the pop-up menu.

To remove a single quantity assignment from a peak in any track:

- 1 Select the peak for which you want to remove the quantity assignment.
- 2 Choose **Unassign quantity** from the **Peak** menu (or, if you right-click to select the peak, choose the same command from the pop-up menu).

To remove all molecular weight and quantity assignments from the peaks in a standard track:

- 1 Click in the required track to select it.
- 2 Choose **MW/quantity standard** from the **Track** menu (or the pop-up menu displayed by right-clicking in the track label) so that the track is no longer defined as a molecular weight/quantity standard.
- 3 If required, choose **MW/quantity standard** again to redefine the track as a molecular weight/quantity standard with different assignments.



Note When you assign all the molecular weights from a standard in a molecular weight library, any previous assignments are removed: see *Assigning molecular weights/quantities to a standard track* (page 1-79) for details.

Reassigning molecular weights/quantities in a standard track

In order to determine molecular weights and quantities on gels, you can define one or more tracks as molecular weight/quantity standards and assign molecular weights/quantities to peaks in each of those tracks: see *Determining molecular weights/quantities using standard tracks* (page 1-79) for details.

GeneTools allows you to reassign the assigned molecular weights or quantities to other peaks in the track at a later time. This may be necessary, for example, if you add or delete peaks in the standard track, or if you forget to delete a spurious peak before assigning all of the molecular weights/quantities in a molecular weight library standard.

Note For quantities, you can only reassign values assigned from standards – you cannot reassign quantities assigned manually to peaks on standard tracks or to peaks on non-standard tracks. For these cases you would need to unassign the quantity assigned to the existing peak and then assign it to the new peak.

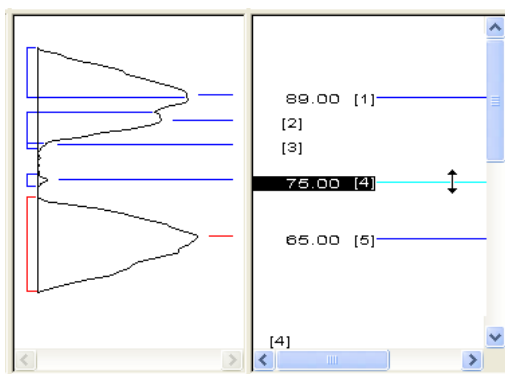
To reassign molecular weights/quantities in a molecular weight standard track:

- 1 In the Image pane, click in the required track to select it.

Note You can only reassign molecular weights/quantities when the tracks are locked.

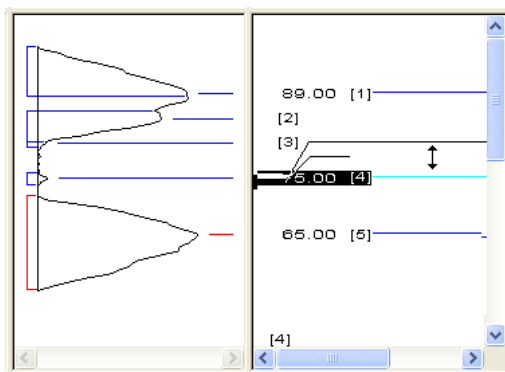
- 2 In the Gel window's Graphics pane, click the **MW calibration** tab to reassign molecular weights; click the **Quantity calibration** tab to reassign quantities.

- 3 In the Peak value pane, click on the molecular weight/quantity that you want to reassign to select it:

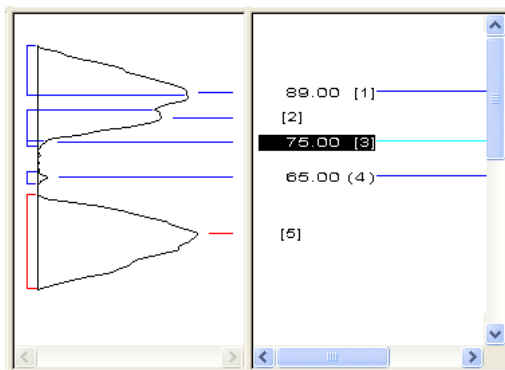


- 4 Drag the molecular weight/quantity to its new position.

As you are dragging, you will see two new lines in the pane, the first under the pointer, the second snapping to the peak that the molecular weight/quantity would be reassigned to if you dropped it:



- 5 Drop the molecular weight/quantity in its new position.



Note 1 As in the example above, the assignments of later peaks will change in line with the reassignment of the selected peak.

Note 2 If the reassignment makes any of the other assignments inconsistent (molecular weights must decrease as peak number increases), the other assignments will be removed.

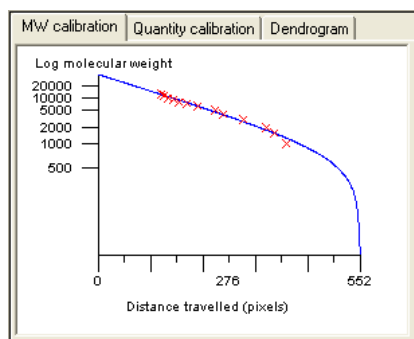
Viewing molecular weight and quantity results

When you have calibrated (an area of interest on) a gel for molecular weights/quantities, (see *Determining molecular weights/quantities using standard tracks*, page 1-79, and *Creating quantity calibrations without using standard tracks*, page 1-76) you can view:

- the molecular weight calibration curve in the **MW calibration** page in the Gel window's Graphics pane – see the next section, *The molecular weight calibration graph*
- the quantity calibration curve in the **Quantity calibration** page in the Gel window's Graphics pane – see *The quantity calibration graph*, page 1-89
- the molecular weights/quantities for the selected track in the Peak value pane when **Molecular weight/Quantities** is selected in the **View** menu – see *Viewing molecular weight or quantity results in the Peak value pane*, page 1-90
- the molecular weights and quantities in the Results pane – see *Viewing molecular weight and/or quantity results in the Results pane*, page 1-91

The molecular weight calibration graph

The molecular weight calibration graph for the selected area of interest on the sample is displayed in the Gel window's Graphics pane:



You can choose the shape of the calibration curve, how the calibration should be propagated to other tracks and the origin for distance measurements along the track – see *Setting the quantity calibration method*, page 1-73, for details.

When a molecular weight standard track is selected in the Image pane, the calibration points are shown on the graph (as in the example).

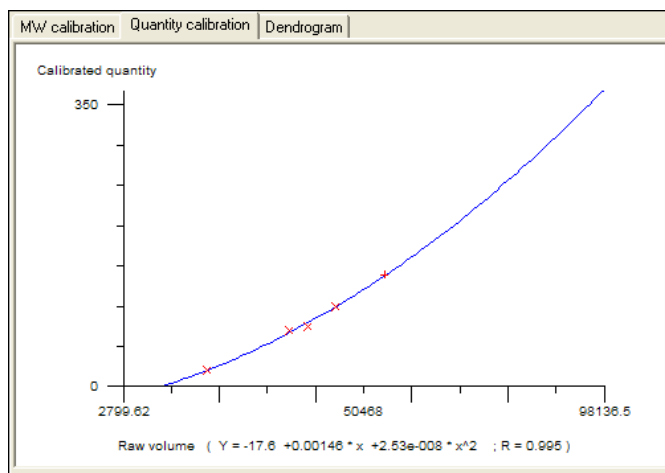
When you display the molecular weight calibration graph, the Peak value pane displays molecular weights for the peaks on the track selected in the Image pane.

You can choose whether to plot the calibration curve using a linear or logarithmic scale – see *Configuration (Molecular Weight page)* in the **Extras** menu – page 8-139).

You create the calibration graph by assigning molecular weights to one or more peaks in one or more tracks – see *Determining molecular weights/quantities using standard tracks*, page 1-79, for details.

The quantity calibration graph

The quantity calibration graph for the selected area of interest is displayed in the Gel window's Graphics pane.



You can choose the shape of the calibration curve, how the calibration should be propagated to other tracks and the quantity units to use – see *Setting the quantity calibration method*, page 1-73, for details.

The equation of the line or curve is shown in the **Raw volume** axis label along with the correlation coefficient **R**, which is a measure of how well the calibration points can be fitted by a line or quadratic curve, depending on the selected calibration method (a value of 1 means a perfect fit). The example shows a quadratic calibration; the calibration points don't quite lie on the curve so the **R** value is slightly less than 1.

The graph shows data points for all the calibration peaks (in the selected region of interest), not just the calibration peaks on the selected track. The graph also shows any non-calibration peaks in the selected track. Calibration data points are marked by \times ; non-calibration points by $+$. By definition, non-calibration points always lie on the calibration curve; calibration points may not lie exactly on the calibration curve.

When you display the quantity calibration graph, the Peak value pane displays quantities for the peaks on the track selected in the Image pane.

You create the calibration graph by assigning quantities to one or more peaks in one or more tracks – see *Determining molecular weights/quantities using standard tracks*, page 1-79, and *Creating quantity calibrations without using standard tracks*, page 1-76, for details.

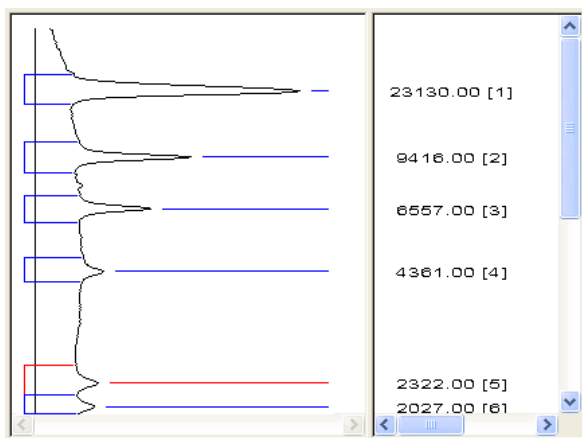
Viewing molecular weight or quantity results in the Peak value pane

Once you have calibrated a sample for molecular weights and/or quantities, you can view the results calculated for other peaks in the Peak value pane.

To view the molecular weights or quantities calculated for peaks on a track:

- 1 Choose **Molecular weight** or **Quantities** from the **View** menu.
- 2 Click in the track for which you want to view results.

The results for the selected track will be shown in the Peak value pane.



Viewing molecular weight and/or quantity results in the Results pane

To view the results for all tracks (in the selected area of interest):

- 1 Click on the **Results for all tracks** tab in the Results pane to display a table including results for each peak in each track:

Results for selected track					Results for all tracks			Matching comparisons	Matching matrix	Similarity matrix
Track 3					Track 4					
Number	Mol. weight	Height	Raw vol.	Base pairs	Number	Mol. weight	Height			
1	812.84	11.978	3450.78	813	1	900.00	8.2			
2	673.21	10.854	5355.39	673	2	743.80	7.9			
					3	681.14	23.5			
					4	610.63	42.6			
					5	68.02	6.8			

(See Step 2 for how to choose which results to display in the table)

The **Number** identifies each located peak on the track – the peaks are numbered in the electrophoresis direction.

- 2 To choose what details to include in the results, right-click on the Results pane to pop up a menu. The commands on this menu allow you to choose whether or not to include a column for the corresponding parameter in the table. The commands are checked in the menu when the columns are displayed.
- 3 To make the Results pane fill the Gel window, right-click on the Results pane to pop up a menu. Choose **Maximize pane** (or choose the same command from the **View** menu).

To view a results table for one track only:

- 1 Click on the track in the Image pane to select it.
- 2 Click on the **Results for selected track** tab to display a table including the molecular weights for each peak:

Results for selected track					Results for all tracks	Matching comparisons	Matching matrix	Similarity matrix
Track 4								
Number	Mol. weight	Height	Raw vol.	Base pairs				
1	900.00	8.219	2910.60	900				
2	743.80	7.950	3592.35	744				
3	681.14	23.538	9097.99	681				
4	610.63	42.692	20263.38	611				
5	68.02	6.873	4902.87	68				

- 3 You can maximize the pane and choose what details to display in the same way as for the **Results for all tracks** tab.

Note In the Results pane tables, molecular weight and calibrated quantity results are shown in red for peaks that have been assigned a value to show that they are calibration peaks.

Working with molecular weight libraries

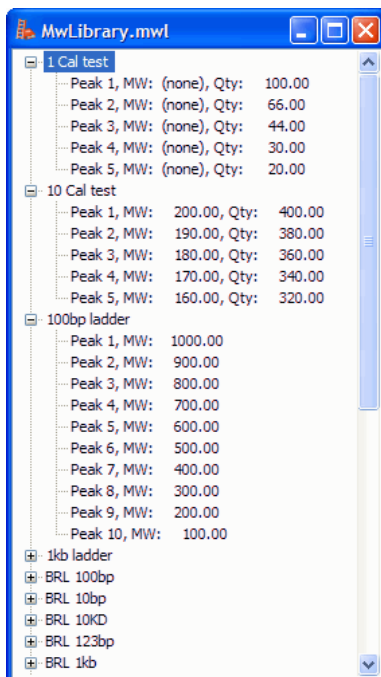
A molecular weight library is a collection of molecular weight/quantity standards. Each standard lists the molecular weights and/or quantities for a set of peaks. You use the library to calibrate a gel by assigning one of the standards contained in the library to one or more standard tracks in the gel. If you use the same standard solution for different gels, using a molecular weight library saves you entering the molecular weights/quantities individually for each peak in the standard tracks.

When you open GeneTools, the default molecular weight library is opened automatically – see *Setting the default molecular weight library*, page 1-98, for how to specify the default library.

You can open previously saved molecular weight libraries or create new ones. You can create as many different molecular weight libraries as you wish, though in many circumstances you will find that one will be sufficient. However, you can only have one library open at a time – opening a new library closes the currently open one.

The Molecular weight library window

Molecular weight libraries can be viewed and edited in the Molecular weight library window:



In this example, the library **MwLibrary.mwl** contains two standards added by the user (**1 Cal test** containing quantities only and **10 Cal test** containing quantities and molecular weights) in addition to the molecular weight standards **100bp ladder**, **1kb ladder**, **BRL-100bp**, **BRL-10bp** etc, which are supplied with GeneTools.

You can expand or contract the display of each standard in the window to show or hide its list of peak values. For example, the display of **100bp ladder** is expanded in the picture above, but **1kb ladder** is contracted.

To expand the display of a standard:

Click on the + to the left of the standard's name.

To contract the display of a standard:

Click on the - to the left of the standard's name.

When you start up the program, the Molecular weight library window is opened automatically showing the default Molecular weight library (see *Setting the default molecular weight library*, page 1-98, for how to specify the default library), but you can also use it to create a new library or to open a previously saved library.

Closing the Molecular weight library window

To close the Molecular weight library window:

- 1 Click in it or choose it from the **Window** menu to select it.
- 2 Choose **Close** from the **File** menu.

Clicking on the close button at the top right-hand corner of the Molecular weight library window only *minimizes* the window.

Creating a new molecular weight library

To create a new molecular weight library:

Choose **New library** from the **File** menu.

If the Molecular weight library window is open and you have any unsaved changes, you will be asked if you want to save them before the library is closed. The Molecular weight library window will then be reopened with a new empty library for you to create new molecular weight/quantity standards – see *Creating a new molecular weight/quantity standard*, page 1-100.

You can associate text with a molecular weight library to document it – see the next section.

Once you have created the new standard(s) you can save the new molecular weight library – see *Saving a molecular weight library*, page 1-96.

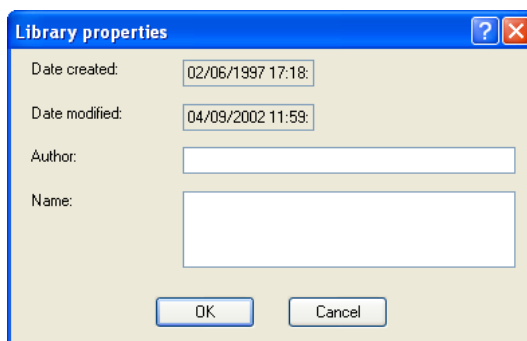
Setting and viewing properties of a molecular weight library

To set or view properties associated with a molecular weight library:

- 1 Open the library if it is not already open.

If the library is already open, click in the Molecular weight library window or choose it from the list at the bottom of the **Window** menu to select it.

- 2 Choose **Properties** from the **File** menu to display the **Library properties** dialog box:

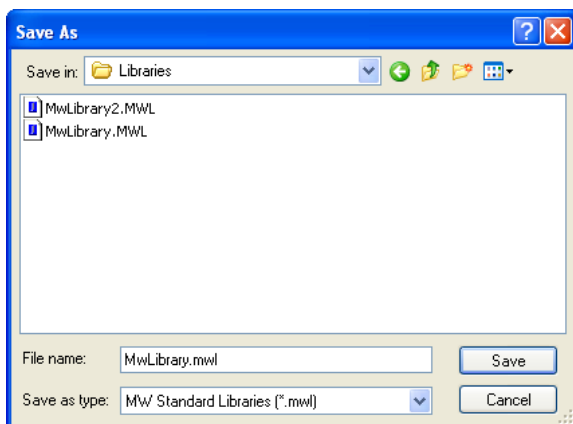


- The **Date created** and **Date modified** boxes are read-only and show the dates on which the library was created and last modified.
 - The **Author** and **Name** boxes can be edited provided the molecular weight library is unlocked – see *Locking and unlocking molecular weight libraries*, page 1-99.
- 3 Enter text in the **Author** and **Name** boxes to document the molecular weight library.
 - 4 Press **OK** to close the dialog box.
 - 5 Choose **Save** from the **File** menu to save the new properties.

Saving a molecular weight library

To save a molecular weight library with a new name:

- 1 Click in the Molecular weight library window or choose it from the list at the bottom of the **Window** menu to select it.
- 2 Choose **Save as** from the **File** menu to display a standard Windows **Save As** dialog box:



- 3 Use the dialog box to select a folder in which to save the molecular weight library.
- 4 Enter a **File name** for the molecular weight library.
- 5 Press **Save** to save the library in the file.

To save a previously saved molecular weight library using the same name:

- 1 Click in the Molecular weight library window or choose it from the list at the bottom of the **Window** menu to select it.
- 2 Choose **Save** from the **File** menu. If the molecular weight library has not been saved previously, the **Save As** dialog box will be displayed so that you can enter a name: see above.

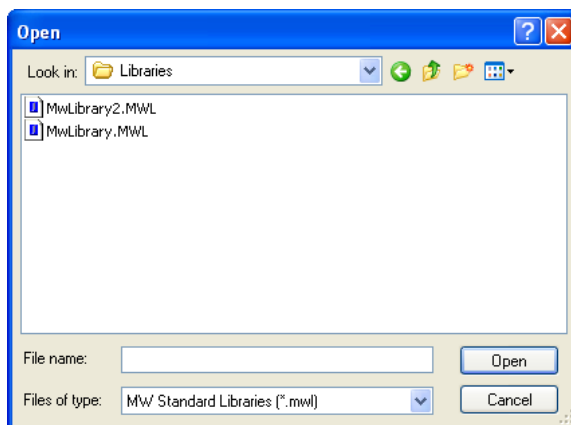


Note Saving a molecular weight library does *not* set it as your default molecular weight library, so it will not be reopened when you next start up GeneTools. See *Setting the default molecular weight library*, page 1-98, for how to specify the default molecular weight library.

Opening a molecular weight library

To open a molecular weight library:

- 1 Choose **Open library** from the **File** menu to display a standard Windows **Open** dialog box:



- 2 Use the dialog box to select the required molecular weight library file.
- 3 Press **Open**.

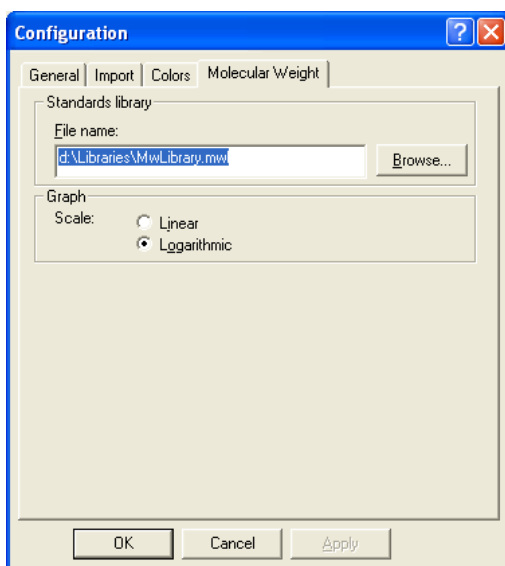
The library will be opened in the Molecular weight library window.

Note Opening a molecular weight library does *not* set it as your default molecular weight library, so it will not be reopened when you next start up GeneTools. See *Setting the default molecular weight library*, page 1-98, for how to specify the default molecular weight library.

Setting the default molecular weight library

To specify the default molecular weight library:

- 1 Choose **Configuration** from the **Extras** menu to display the **Configuration** dialog box.
- 2 Click on the **Molecular Weight** tab to display the **Molecular Weight** page:



The **File name** box shows the path and name of the file containing the default molecular weight library, which you can use for assigning standard molecular weights to standard tracks.

- 3 Enter the path and name for the new default molecular weight library in the **File name** box, or press **Browse** to display a standard Windows **Open** dialog box so that you can choose the new file.

Note You can also click on a radio button in this page of the dialog box to choose whether the calibration graph shown in the **MW calibration** tab in the Graphics pane should have a **Linear** or **Logarithmic** scale.

Locking and unlocking molecular weight libraries

You can lock molecular weight libraries to prevent them being edited.

To lock a molecular weight library:

- 1 Open the library if it is not already open.

If the library is already open, click in the Molecular weight library window or choose it from the list at the bottom of the **Window** menu to select it.

- 2 Choose **Lock** from the **File** menu.

(The command will become disabled in the menu and **Unlock** will become enabled.)

- 3 Choose **Save** from the **File** menu to save the locked status of the file.

While the library is locked, the commands for editing it in the **Edit** menu and the pop-up menu displayed when you right-click in the Molecular weight library window are disabled.

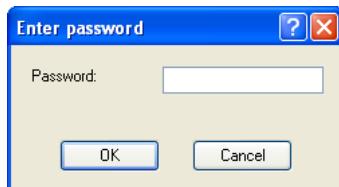
You can protect the library further by setting a password, which will be required to unlock the library – see *Setting a password for a molecular weight library*, page 1-100.

To unlock a molecular weight library:

- 1 Open the library if it is not already open.

If the library is already open, click in the Molecular weight library window or choose it from the list at the bottom of the **Window** menu to select it.

- 2 Choose **Unlock** from the **File** menu to display the **Enter password** dialog box:



- 3 Enter the **Password** (if any) and press **OK** (see the next section for setting a password) – just press **OK** if no password is set.

You will be told if the password is incorrect.

When the library is unlocked, **Unlock** will become disabled in the menu and **Lock** will become enabled.

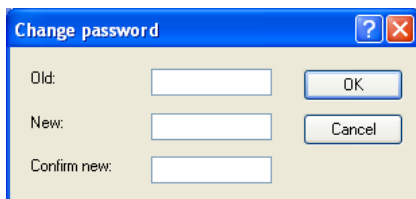
Setting a password for a molecular weight library

To set or change the password for a molecular weight library:

- 1 Open the library if it is not already open.

If the library is already open, click in the Molecular weight library window or choose it from the list at the bottom of the **Window** menu to select it.

- 2 Choose **Change password** from the **File** menu to display the **Change password** dialog box:



- 3 Enter the **Old** password – the characters will be shown as * for security.
- 4 Enter the **New** password – the characters will be shown as * for security.
- 5 Enter the new password again in the **Confirm new** box to check that you typed it correctly.
- 6 Press **OK** to set the new password and close the dialog box.

Creating a new molecular weight/quantity standard

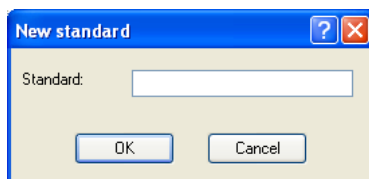
You can only create a new molecular weight standard if the library is unlocked – see *Locking and unlocking molecular weight libraries*, page 1-99.

To create a new molecular weight/quantity standard in a library:

- 1 Open the library if it is not already open.

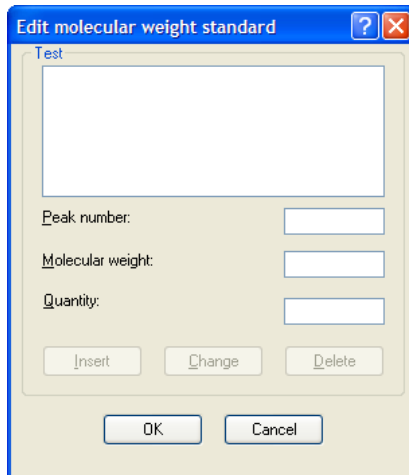
If the library is already open, click in the Molecular weight library window or choose it from the list at the bottom of the **Window** menu to select it.

- 2 Choose **New standard** from the **Edit** menu (or right-click in the window to display a pop-up menu and choose **New**) to display the **New standard** dialog box:



Note You can also display this dialog box by pressing **New standard** on the **Edit standard** page of the **Assign molecular weight/quantity** dialog box.

- 3 Enter a name for the **Standard**.
- 4 Press **OK** to display the **Edit molecular weight standard** dialog box:



- 5 Enter the first **Peak number**, (ie, 1).
- 6 Enter its **Molecular weight** (molecular weights must decrease as peak number increases) and/or **Quantity** (there is no restriction on the order of quantities).

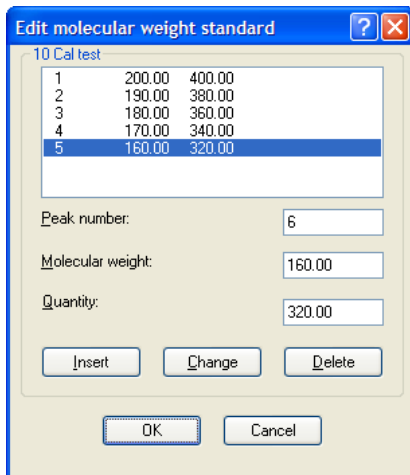
- 7 Press **Insert**. The peak number and associated molecular weight and/or quantity will appear in the list box at the top of the dialog box.
The **Peak number** will be increased by 1 ready for you to add the next peak.
- 8 Repeat Steps 6–7 for the remaining peaks.
- 9 Press **OK** to close the dialog box. The new standard will appear in the Molecular weight library window.

Editing a molecular weight/quantity standard in a library

You can only edit a molecular weight standard if the library is unlocked – see *Locking and unlocking molecular weight libraries*, page 1-99.

To edit a molecular weight standard in a library:

- 1 Open the library if it is not already open.
If the library is already open, click in the Molecular weight library window or choose it from the list at the bottom of the **Window** menu to select it.
- 2 Select the standard in the Molecular weight library window by clicking on the standard's name or any of the values in its list.
- 3 Choose **Edit standard** from the **Edit** menu (or right-click on the standard's name or any of the peaks in its list to display a pop-up menu and choose **Edit**) to display the **Edit molecular weight standard** dialog box:



Note You can also display this dialog box from the **Edit standard** page of the **Assign molecular weight/quantity** dialog box – select the standard you want to edit in the drop-down list box and press **Edit standard**.

The list box shows the peaks and the molecular weights/quantities assigned to them in the standard.

To change a peak in the standard:

- 1 Select the peak you want to change by clicking on it in the list of values. The peak number, molecular weight and quantity will be shown in the **Peak number**, **Molecular weight** and **Quantity** boxes.
- 2 Change the **Peak number** and/or **Molecular weight** and/or **Quantity** as required.
- 3 Press **Change**.

To add a new peak to the standard:

- 1 Enter the **Peak number** (it must be different from any existing peak numbers).
- 2 Enter the **Molecular weight** (molecular weights must decrease as peak number increases) and/or **Quantity** (there is no restriction on the order of quantities).
- 3 Press **Insert**.

To delete a peak from the standard:

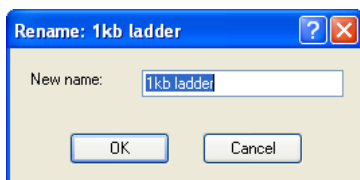
- 1 Select the peak you want to delete by clicking on it in the list of peaks. The peak number, molecular weight and quantity will be shown in the **Peak number**, **Molecular weight** and **Quantity** boxes.
- 2 Press **Delete**.

Renaming a standard in a molecular weight library

You can only rename a molecular weight standard if the library is unlocked – see *Locking and unlocking molecular weight libraries*, page 1-99.

To rename a molecular weight standard in a library:

- 1 Open the library if it is not already open.
If the library is already open, click in the Molecular weight library window or choose it from the list at the bottom of the **Window** menu to select it.
- 2 Select the standard in the Molecular weight library window by clicking on the standard's name.
- 3 Choose **Rename standard** from the **Edit** menu (or right-click on the standard's name to display a pop-up menu and choose **Rename**) to display the **Rename** dialog box:



- 4 Edit the name in the **New name** box.
- 5 Press **OK** to close the dialog box.

The standard will appear with the new name in the Molecular weight library window.

Deleting a standard from a molecular weight library

You can only delete a molecular weight standard from a library if the library is unlocked – see *Locking and unlocking molecular weight libraries*, page 1-99.

To delete a molecular weight standard from a library:

- 1 Open the library if it is not already open.
If the library is already open, click in the Molecular weight library window or choose it from the list at the bottom of the **Window** menu to select it.

- 2 Select the standard in the Molecular weight library window by clicking on the standard's name.
- 3 Choose **Delete standard** from the **Edit** menu (or right-click on the standard's name to display a pop-up menu and choose **Delete**).

How to match peaks on different tracks

Notes The operations described in this section are only available if you have purchased the GeneTools Match software option.

This section shows you how to carry out matches between tracks lying *within the same area of interest*. However, you can also carry out matches between tracks using the **Profile comparison** window (see page 1-117), and in the **Profile comparison** window you can carry out matches between tracks in different areas of interest or even on different gels.

The GeneTools matching software allows you to match:

- **Bands:** matching is between the peaks that have been detected on the tracks. All tracks (in the selected area of interest) are matched to the peaks on a selected 'matching standard track' – see *Setting a matching standard*, page 1-109.
- **Profiles:** matching is between the intensity profile of each track against the intensity profile of each of the other tracks.

See *Setting the method and parameters used for matching*, page 1-107, for how to choose which type of matching to use and for how to set the criteria used for matching.

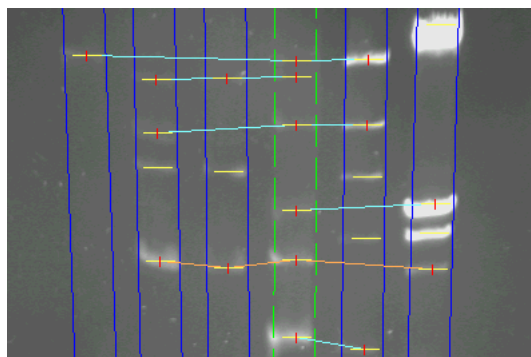
The matching results are updated automatically whenever you carry out an action that might change the results.

If required, you can edit band matching (but not profile matching) manually – see *Editing matches*, page 1-110.

You can view details of the matching results in the Results pane – see *Viewing match results*, page 1-112.

If you choose **Peak matching** from the **View** menu or click on the **Dendrogram** tab in the Graphics pane:

- The Graphics pane shows the dendrogram – see *Dendrogram*, page 1-115.
- If you have set **Band** matching:
 - the Peak value pane shows the positions of the peaks in the active matching standard.
 - if **Match lines** is selected in the **View** menu, the Image pane shows lines joining the matched peaks (you can use **Configuration** in the **Extras** menu to set the colors of the match lines – see page 8-143):



Note that the match peak selected in the Peak value pane is shown in a different color.

Setting the method and parameters used for matching

You can choose different methods of matching and tolerance values for each area of interest on the sample.

To set or view the tolerance and method used for matching in the selected area of interest:



- 1 Choose **Band matching** from the **Edit** menu to display the **Matching parameters** dialog box:

- 2 In the **Matching** box:
 - a In the **Type** box, select **Band** or **Profile** to decide whether to match tracks using the detected bands (peaks) or the intensity profiles.

Note When **Profile** is selected:

- There is no need to detect the peaks on the tracks (unless you choose to match on the basis of molecular weights – see Step c).
- There is no need to define a matching standard – see next section.
- The **Similarity Coefficient** controls in the **Matching parameters** dialog box are disabled.
- The **Matching comparisons** and **Matching matrix** pages in the Results pane will be blank – see *Viewing match results*, page 1-112.

b If you selected **Band** in the **Type** box, select **Dice** or **Jaccard** from the **Similarity Coefficient** box to choose how the similarity coefficients should be calculated – see *Similarity matrix*, page 1-114, for how the similarity coefficients are defined.

c In the **Alignment** box, click on a radio button to choose whether matching should be carried out on the basis of:

- **Position** – distance from start of track
- **Rf** – relative position between Rf start and end lines on the tracks
- **MW** – molecular weight calculated using the molecular weight calibration curve(s) for the tracks (see *How to determine molecular weights and quantities*, page 1-72).

3 Enter a **Tolerance** figure to set a limit to the accuracy required when matching peaks (this does not have to be a whole number).

Note For **Profile** matching, the **Tolerance** must be set to a number less than or equal to 1.

4 In the **Dendrogram Drawing** box:

- a Choose whether to use **UPGMA** or **Neighbor Joining** as the linkage rule for the dendrogram – see *The dendrogram*, page 6-10, for a description of these linkage rules.
- b Check or uncheck **Include MW standard(s)** to choose whether molecular weight standard tracks should be included in the dendrogram.

- 5 Press **Apply** to see the effect of changing the matching parameters without closing the dialog box; press **OK** to set the matching parameters and close the dialog box.

Setting a matching standard

If you choose **Band** as the matching **Type** for carrying out matches (see previous section), the bands (peaks) on each track in an area of interest are matched to the bands on a specified matching standard in that area of interest. This section shows you how to set the matching standard.

Note When you choose **Profile** as the matching **Type**, the intensity profile of each track in an area of interest is matched to each of the other tracks in the area of interest without reference to any matching standard track. You can select one or more matching standards, but they will have no effect on the results for *profile* matching – this is shown by the fact that none of them will be marked as the active matching standard (see later in this section).

To make a track a matching standard for the selected area of interest:

- 1 Click on the track in the Image pane to select it.
- 2 Choose **Matching standard** from the **Track** menu.



Or

- 1 Right-click on the track's label in the Track label pane to select it and pop up a menu.
- 2 Choose **Matching standard** from the menu.

The track label will show **MS*** – the MS means it is a matching standard, the * means it is the active matching standard (any previous active matching standard will now show **MS** to show that it is still a matching standard but no longer the *active* one).

To make a matching standard the active matching standard:

- 1 Right-click on the track's label in the Track label pane to select it and pop up a menu.
- 2 Choose **Active matching standard** from the menu.

If you choose **Matching standard** for a matching standard track, the track will no longer be a matching standard. If it was the active matching standard, the matching standard (if any) with the highest track number will become active.

Editing matches

After GeneTools has matched peaks automatically, you may want to reassign, remove or add matches manually.

Notes You cannot match peaks in different areas of interest.

You cannot edit profile matching results.

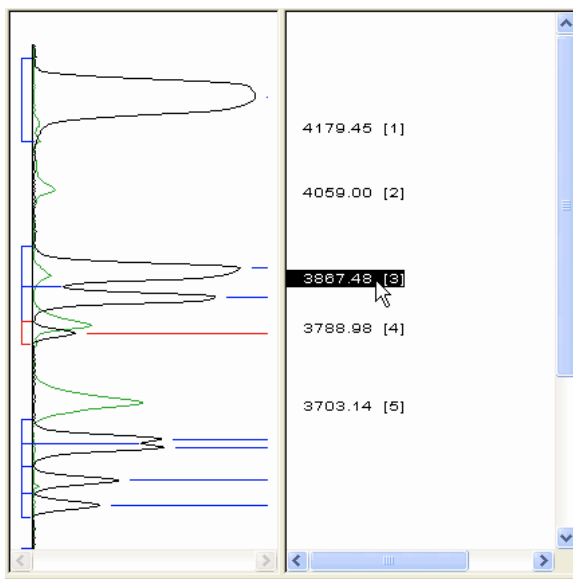
To edit peak matches manually:

- 1 Make sure **Peak matching** is selected in the **View** menu (or, equivalently, that the **Dendrogram** page is displayed in the Graphics pane).

Remember, when **Peak matching** is selected, the Peak value pane shows the peaks in the active matching standard track, whichever track is selected in the Image pane – see Step 3.

- 2 Make sure **Match lines** is selected in the **View** menu.

- 3 Click on the (matching standard) peak in the Peak value pane that you want to match to a peak in another track:



If there are any matches for this peak already, they will be shown in the Image pane joined by a line in the color defined for the selected matching peak (see page 8-143 for how to set the color using **Configuration** in the **Extras** menu).

- 4 In the Image pane, double-click on the peak (in another track) that you want to match or unmatched to the peak in the active matching standard that you selected in the previous step:
 - If there is already a match between the peak you double-clicked on and any peak in the active matching track, it will be removed.
 - Otherwise, if there is already a match between the selected matching peak and any of the other peaks in the track, it will be moved to the peak you double-clicked on.
 - Otherwise, the selected matching peak will be matched to the peak you double-clicked on.

Viewing match results

When you have performed a match, the Results pane can show (for the selected area of interest):

- matching comparisons – the results for matching peaks on all (enabled) tracks (this is blank for profile matching)
- a matching matrix – an overview of which peaks on the active matching standard are matched on the other tracks (this is blank for profile matching)
- a similarity matrix – a table showing the correlation between each pair of tracks.

To expand the Results pane to fill the Gel window:

Click in the Results pane and choose **Maximize pane** from the **View** menu.

To return the pane to its normal size:

Choose **Maximize pane** from the **View** menu again.

Or

Adjust the size of the Gel window.

Matching comparisons

Results for selected track				Results for all tracks			Matching comparisons			Matching matrix			Similarity matrix		
Track 4 (Reference)				Track 5			Track 6								
Peak	Number	Mol. weight	Height	Number	Mol. weight	Height	Number	Mol. weight	Height						
1	1	982.73	5.520	1	983.54	120.029									
2	2	944.36	15.872	2	944.36	62.415									
3	3	871.55	13.306				2	900.00	143.197						
4	4	721.08	41.222				4	700.00	29.817						
5	5	632.46	76.495	5	621.45	14.138									
6	6	0.66	9.072												

Note The **Matching comparisons** page shows *band* matching results – it is blank when *profile* matching is selected.

The **Matching comparisons** page in the Results pane shows the results for matching peaks on all (enabled) tracks in the selected area of interest.

To choose what details to include in the results, right-click on the Results pane to pop up a menu. Apart from the **Maximize pane** command at the bottom of the menu, the

commands on this menu allow you to choose whether or not to include a column for the corresponding quantity in the table. The commands are checked in the menu when the columns are displayed.

Note The results will not be shown for disabled tracks (all tracks except 4, 5 and 6 have been disabled for the example picture).

Each row in the table corresponds to a peak in the active matching standard, which is identified by **(Reference)** in the Table Heading.

For all the other tracks, the results are shown only for any peaks that match tracks in the active matching standard. In the example picture, peaks 1, 2 and 5 in Track 5, match the same numbered peaks in the matching standard (Track 4), but in Track 6, while peak 4 matches peak 4, peak 2 matches peak 3 in the active matching standard.

Molecular weight and quantity results are shown in red if the corresponding peaks have been assigned a molecular weight or a quantity, respectively.

Matching matrix

Peak	Track 3	Track 4	Track 6
1	X	X	
2		X	
3		X	X
4	X	X	X
5		X	
6		X	

Note The **Matching matrix** page shows *band* matching results – it is blank when *profile* matching is selected.

The **Matching matrix** page in the Results pane shows a table identifying which peaks in the tracks in the selected area of interest match the peaks in the active matching standard.

Note The results will not be shown for disabled tracks (all tracks except 3, 4 and 6 have been disabled for the example picture).

Each row in the table corresponds to a peak in the active matching standard, which is identified by red Xs in its column.

For all the other tracks, an X shows that there is a peak in the track matching a peak in the active matching standard. The row containing the X identifies which peak in the active matching standard is being matched. In the example picture, Track 3 has peaks matching peaks 1 and 4 in the matching standard.

Note The matching matrix does not identify which peaks in Tracks 3 and 6 are the matching peaks (the peak numbers refer to the matching standard) – you can look at the **Matching comparisons** table to identify the peaks.

Similarity matrix

Results for selected track	Results for all tracks		Matching comparisons		Matching matrix	Similarity matrix
	Track 1	Track 2	Track 3	Track 4	Track 5	Track 6
Track 1	1.000	0.000	0.500	0.286	0.286	0.000
Track 2	0.000	1.000	0.286	0.400	0.200	0.143
Track 3	0.500	0.286	1.000	0.444	0.222	0.154
Track 4	0.286	0.400	0.444	1.000	0.500	0.250
Track 5	0.286	0.200	0.222	0.500	1.000	0.000
Track 6	0.000	0.143	0.154	0.250	0.000	1.000

The **Similarity matrix** page in the Results pane shows the correlation between each pair of tracks in the selected area of interest.

Note The results will be shown for all tracks in the selected area of interest, including any that are disabled.

The calculation of the similarity coefficients depends on the Type of matching selected in the **Matching parameters** dialog box (see *Setting the method and parameters used for matching*, page 1-107):

- **Band** matching – the **Matching parameters** dialog box allows you to choose between two ways of calculating the similarity coefficient for any pair of tracks A and B:

- **Jaccard:**

$$\frac{\text{Number of Matching Peaks}}{\text{Total Number of Peaks} - \text{Number of Matching Peaks}}$$

- **Dice:**

$$\frac{2 \times \text{Number of Matching Peaks}}{\text{Total Number of Peaks}}$$

Where the '*Number of Matching Peaks*' means the 'number of peaks common to A and B that match to a common peak on the matching standard', and the '*Total Number of Peaks*' means 'the number of peaks on A + the number of peaks on B including both matching and non-matching peaks'.

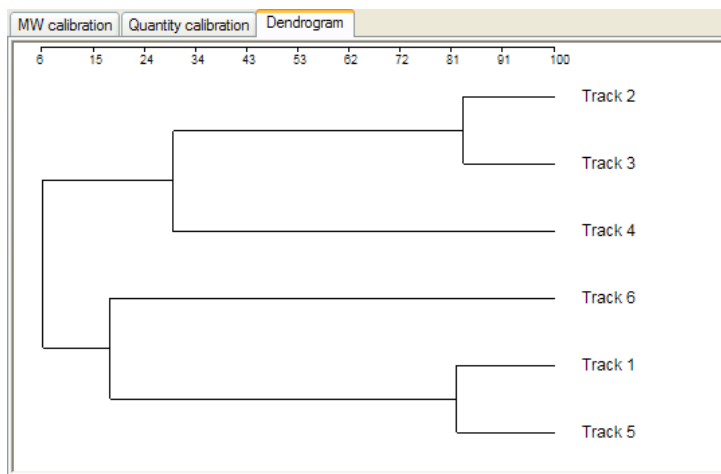
- **Profile** matching – the similarity coefficient for any pair of tracks A and B shows the correlation between the intensity profiles on the two tracks.

Dendrogram

See page 6-10 for some background information about dendrograms.

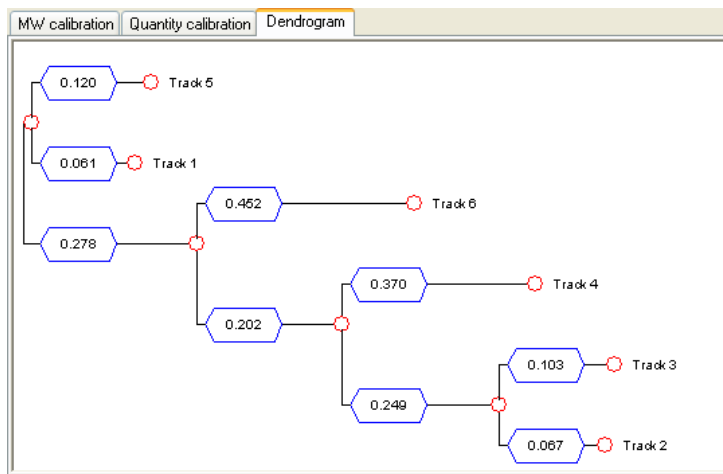
When you match tracks on a Gel sample, GeneTools automatically creates a dendrogram and displays it in the Gel window's Graphics pane. The **Matching parameters** dialog box (see *Setting the method and parameters used for matching*, page 1-107) allows you to choose between using **UPGMA** or **Neighbor Joining** as the linkage rule for the dendrogram. The choice of linkage rule determines the method used to calculate the measure of similarity between clusters of similar tracks and affects the way the dendrogram is displayed. For example:

- **UPGMA**



The UPGMA dendrogram is right-aligned and drawn against a scale, which is shown along the top of the pane.

- Neighbor Joining



The Neighbor-joining dendrogram is not right-aligned and the lengths of the individual branches are shown on the lines themselves.

If required, you can change the colors used for the Neighbor-joining dendrogram nodes and leaves – see page 8-143 for details.

For the Neighbor-joining dendrogram, you can also choose which node in the tree to display at the root of the dendrogram – see the next section.

If the dendrogram is larger than the Graphics pane, you can increase the size of the pane, scroll the dendrogram to view hidden parts or scale the dendrogram to fit the Graphics pane.

To scale the dendrogram to fit the Graphics pane:

- 1 Right-click in the dendrogram to display the dendrogram context menu.
- 2 Choose **Scale to fit**.

The dendrogram will be scaled to fit the Graphics pane.

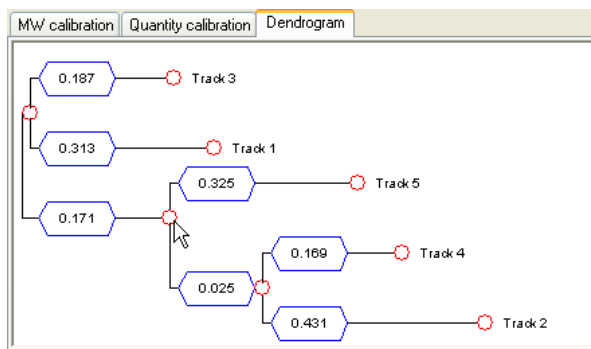
Scale to fit is checked in the dendrogram context menu when autoscaling is selected; choose the command again to switch autoscaling off.

If you resize the Graphics pane while **Scale to fit** is selected, the dendrogram will be rescaled so that it still fills the pane.

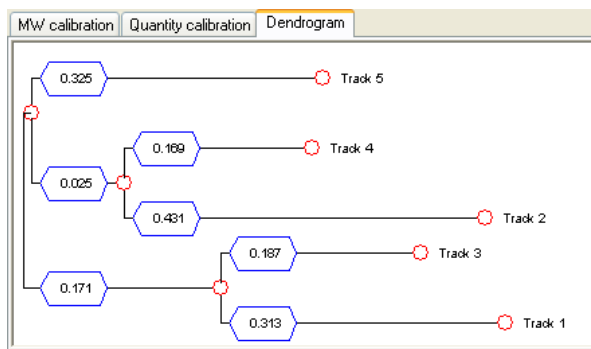
Changing the root in a Neighbor-joining dendrogram

To choose a different node to be the root of the dendrogram:

Click on the node in the dendrogram:



The dendrogram will be redisplayed with the selected node at the root:



Note that this only affects the way the tree is displayed – the correlation values and connectivity of the tree are unaffected.

How to compare peak profiles

This section describes how to use the **Profile comparison** window. The **Profile comparison** window allows you to compare the profiles of selected tracks, which may be on different gels. Additionally, if you have purchased the GeneTools Match software option, you can use the **Profile comparison** window to perform track matching between tracks, which, unlike the matching procedure described in *How to match*

peaks on different tracks (see page 1-105), may be in the same or different areas of interest, or even on different gels.

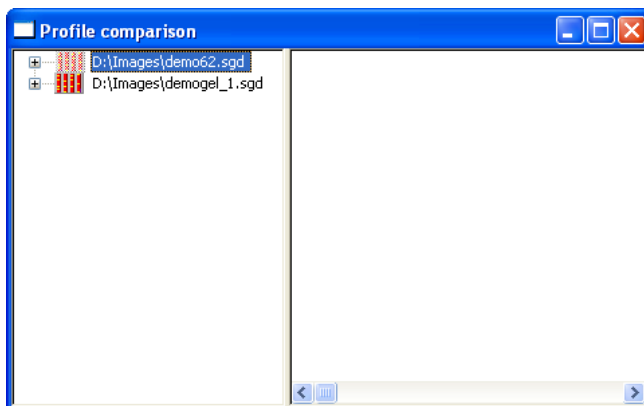
Note In order to support the matching operations, when the Match software option is enabled, the **Profile comparison** window has an additional pane and some additional commands. However, many of the **Profile comparison** window operations are the same as when the Match software option is not enabled, so to avoid repetition, unless they explicitly say otherwise, the following instructions apply whether the Match software option is enabled or not.

To compare the profiles on different tracks and/or different gels:

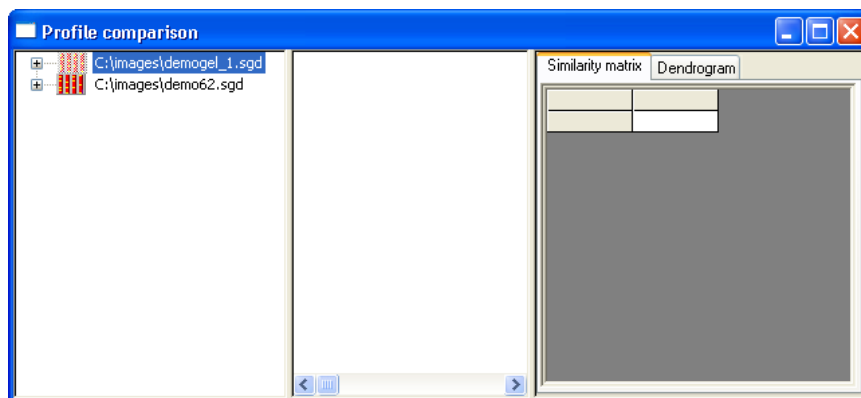
- 1 If you want to compare profiles in any secure sample files that are not already open, open them – you can only compare track profiles for tracks in open secure sample files.
- 2 Choose **Profile comparison** from the **View** menu. The **Profile comparison** window will open.

The appearance of the window depends on whether the GeneTools Match software option is installed:

Match software option not installed



Match software option installed



The *Track browser* pane (the left-hand pane) shows the path and filenames for all the open Gel windows and allows you to select which tracks to include in the comparison.

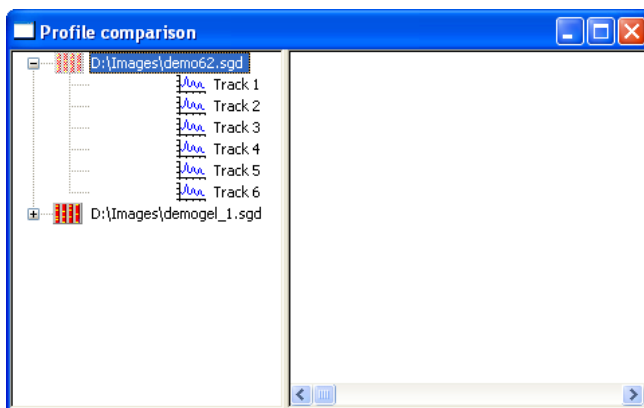
The *Profiles* pane (the right-hand pane for systems without the GeneTools Match software option, as in the example; the center pane for systems with it) is used to plot the intensity profiles for the selected tracks.

The third pane is the *Match results* pane (the right-hand pane for systems with the GeneTools Match software option; absent for systems without it) contains the similarity matrix and dendrogram tabs showing the matching results.

- 3 In the Track browser pane, click on the + icon(s) next to the secure sample file(s) containing the tracks that you want to compare (or double-click anywhere else in the row)



to display the tracks in the file:



(Click on the - icon or double-click again anywhere else in the row to hide the tracks in the left-hand pane.)

- 4 Click on the first track that you want to include in the comparison.
- 5 Choose **Show** from the **Profile** menu (or the context menu displayed if you right-click on the track).

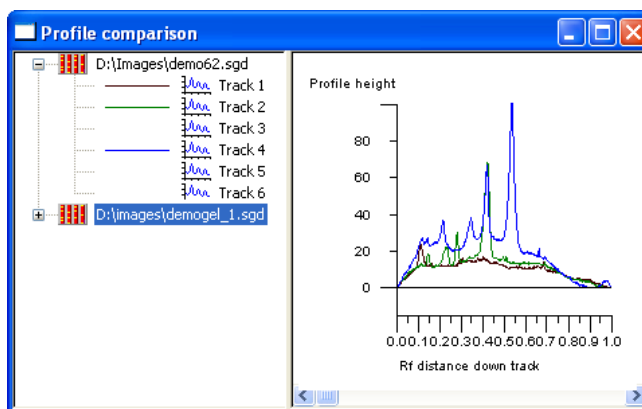
(As an alternative to steps 4 and 5, just double-click on the track.)

Show will be checked in the menu when a profile is shown, a line showing the color used for drawing the profile will be shown next to the track in the left-hand pane and the profile will be drawn in the Profiles pane.

(Choosing **Show** again for the same track, or double-clicking again, removes the track from the comparison.)

Note To include all of the tracks in the comparison, choose **Show all** from the **Profile** menu; to remove all of the tracks from the comparison, choose **Hide all** from the **Profile** menu.

- 6 Repeat Steps 4 and 5 for any other tracks you want to include in the comparison:



(In the example all the profiles are for tracks on the same gel, but you can use the same procedure to include tracks from different files in the same comparison if you wish).

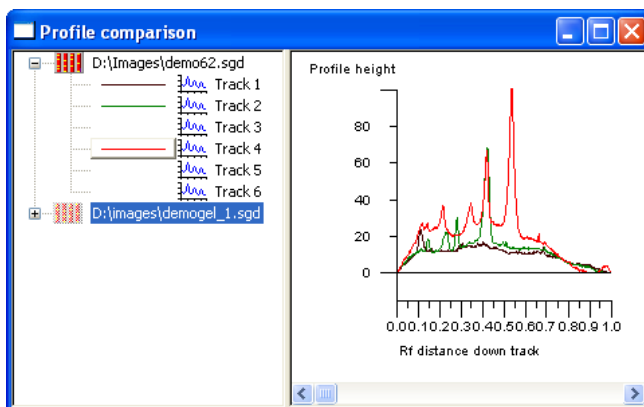
The vertical scale shows the image gray level. The default horizontal scale is the Rf value from 0 (the Rf start position) to 1 (the Rf end position) (see *Adjusting the Rf start and end positions*, page 1-43, for how to set these), but if you have assigned molecular weights to a standard track, you can also use (log) molecular weight for the horizontal scale – see the next step.

Note If you have purchased the GeneTools Match software option, the parameter chosen for the horizontal scale also determines the alignment used when matching tracks in the Profile comparison window – see *Matching tracks in the Profile comparison window*, page 1-123, for details.

- 7 To choose whether to use Rf or (log) molecular weight for the horizontal scale for plotting profiles in the **Profile comparison** window, choose **MW** or **Rf** from the **View Plot mode** submenu.

Note If you choose **MW** and have not yet assigned molecular weights to a standard track, the profile plot will be blank – see *Assigning molecular weights/quantities to a standard track*, page 1-79.

- 8 If required, select a track and choose **Reference** from the **Profile** menu (or the menu displayed if you right-click on the track) to highlight one of the tracks in a comparison as a reference:



Track 4 in the example is the reference track.

Note If you have purchased the GeneTools Match software option, the reference track will also be used as the Matching standard track for peak matching comparisons – see *Matching tracks in the Profile comparison window*, page 1-123, for details.

If you repeat Step 8 for another track, the new track will become the reference – only one track in a comparison can be defined as the reference track.

If the track you define as the reference is not already included in the comparison, it will become shown in the comparison automatically. However, you can then hide it if required (see Step 5) without it losing the status of being the reference – if you show it again it will still be the reference, provided you have not chosen another track as the reference meanwhile.

You can use **Configuration** in the **Extras** menu (see page 8-143) to change the colors and line styles of profiles in the **Profile comparison** window.

Changing the scale in the Profile comparison window

To increase the horizontal scale in the Profiles pane in the **Profile comparison** window:

- 1 If necessary, use the scroll bar to move the point of interest in the profiles to the middle of the Profiles pane (the scale will be expanded about the center of the pane).



- 2 Choose **Zoom in** from the **View** menu.

You can only see part of the Rf/MW range when the profile window is zoomed; you can use the horizontal scroll bar to choose which part of the range to view.

To reduce the horizontal scale in the Profiles pane **Profile comparison** window:



Choose **Zoom out** from the **View** menu.

To remove any magnification from the Profiles pane in the **Profile comparison** window:



Choose **Zoom reset** from the **View** menu.

Matching tracks in the Profile comparison window

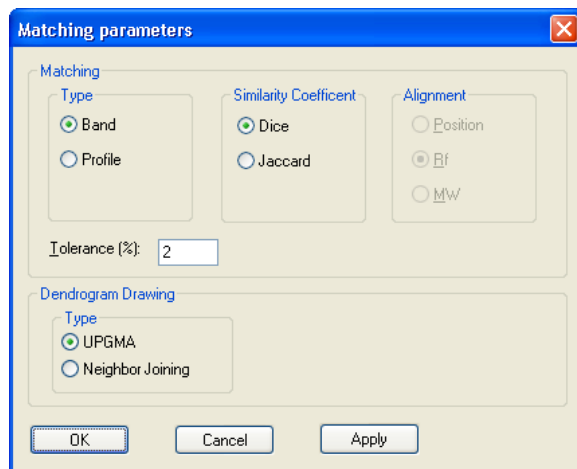
Note The operations described in the section are only available if you have purchased the GeneTools Match software option.

This section shows you how to use the **Profile comparison** window to carry out track matching. You can also carry out track matching using a gel window (see *How to match peaks on different tracks*, page 1-105), and the two methods share many features. However, one difference between the two techniques is that in a Gel window, you can only match peaks on tracks that lie within the same area of interest, while in the **Profile Comparison** window you can match tracks lying in different areas of interest, or even on different gels. On the other hand, if you match peaks in a Gel window, you can get more detailed results in the form of the matching comparisons table and the similarity matrix, and you can edit band (peak) matching results manually.

Controlling the way tracks are matched in the Profile comparison window

To control the way tracks are matched in the **Profile comparison** window:

Choose **Parameters** from the **Matching** menu to display the **Matching parameters** dialog box:



This dialog box is also used to control matching in Gel windows, and with two exceptions it is used in exactly the same way. The exceptions are:

- There is no **Include Molecular Wt standard(s)** checkbox when it is displayed for the **Profile comparison** window – see the next section for how to choose which tracks are included in the matching.
- The **Alignment** radio buttons are disabled – the setting (**Rf** or **MW**) is controlled by the commands in the **View Plot mode** submenu, which also set the horizontal axis of the graphs in the Profiles pane.

See *Setting the method and parameters used for matching*, page 1-107, for details of the other settings in the **Matching parameters** dialog box.

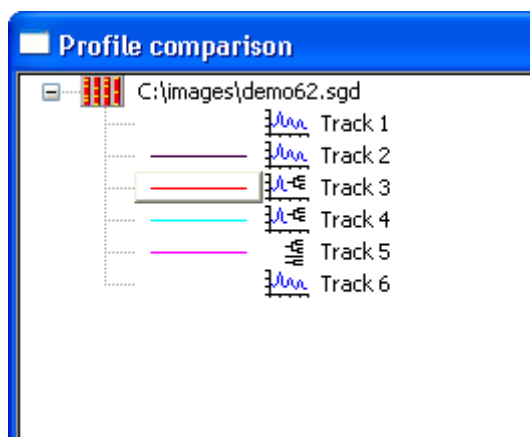
Selecting which tracks to include in a matching

To choose which tracks to include in a matching in the **Profile comparison** window:

- 1 In the Track browser pane, click on the first track that you want to include in the comparison.
 - 2 Choose **Include selected in matching** from the **Matching** menu (or the context menu displayed if you right-click on the track).
- (Choosing **Include selected in matching** again for the same track removes the track from the matching.)

Notes To include all of the tracks in the matching, choose **Include all** from the **Matching** menu; to remove all of the tracks from the matching, choose **Exclude all** from the **Matching** menu.

There is no link between ‘showing a track’ in the Profiles pane and including a track in the matching – tracks can be matched without being shown, and *vice versa*. The status of each of the tracks is shown next to the commands in the **Profile** and **Matching** menus when the track is selected and by the icons in the Track browser pane – for example:



Tracks 1 and 6 are not shown and not included in the matching; Track 2 is shown but not included in the matching; Track 3 is shown, included in the matching and is the reference track; Track 4 is shown and included in the matching; and Track 5 is included in the matching but not shown.

Selecting a matching reference track for peak matching

If you choose **Band** (peak) matching in the **Matching parameters** dialog box, the peaks detected on all of the tracks included in the matching are matched to the peaks on a selected matching reference track.

To select a matching reference track for peak matching:

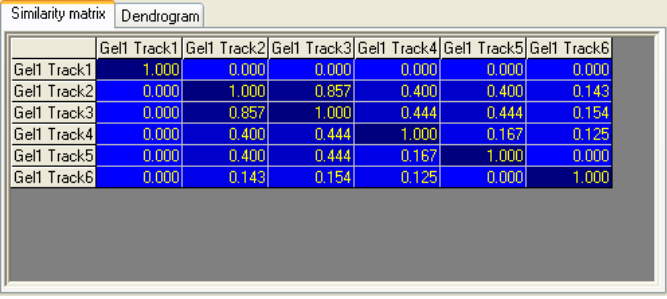
Select a track in the Track browser pane and choose **Reference** from the **Profile** menu (or the menu displayed if you right-click on the track).

The matching reference track must also be included in the matching (see previous section) if it is to be used for Band matching – if **Band** (peak) matching is selected in the **Matching parameters** dialog box, you will be reminded if there is no reference track selected or if the reference track is not included in the matching.

Matching results in the Profile comparison window

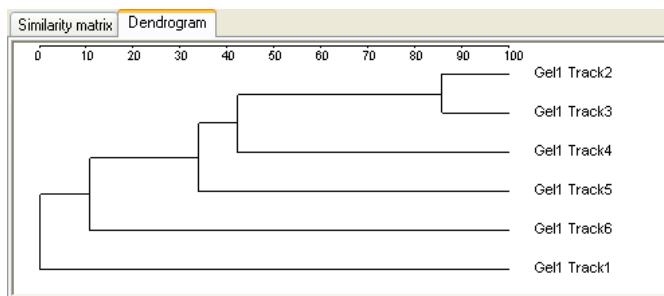
The results of carrying out a matching in the **Profile comparison** window are shown in the window's Results pane at the right-hand side of the window. The pane has two tabs:

- **Similarity matrix**



	Gel1 Track1	Gel1 Track2	Gel1 Track3	Gel1 Track4	Gel1 Track5	Gel1 Track6
Gel1 Track1	1.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000
Gel1 Track2	0.000	1.000	0.857	0.400	0.400	0.143
Gel1 Track3	0.000	0.857	1.000	0.444	0.444	0.154
Gel1 Track4	0.000	0.400	0.444	1.000	0.167	0.125
Gel1 Track5	0.000	0.400	0.444	0.167	1.000	0.000
Gel1 Track6	0.000	0.143	0.154	0.125	0.000	1.000

- **Dendrogram**



You can work with these results panes in exactly the same way as in the Gel window – see *Similarity matrix*, page 1-114, and *Dendrogram*, page 1-115, for details.

How to print and export Gel results

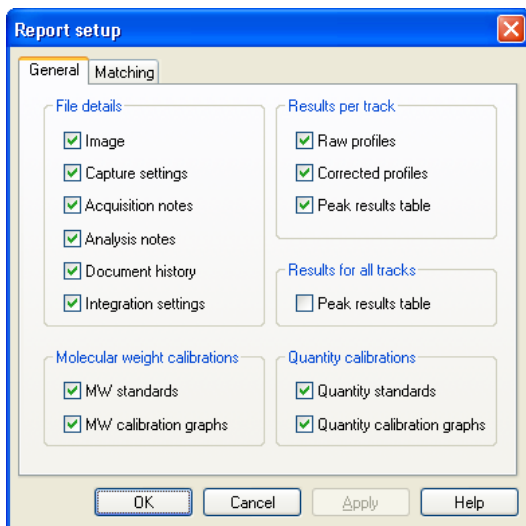
Printing a report showing Gel results

To print a report showing the results for the selected area of interest on a gel:

- 1 If you have not already done so, enter your laboratory's name and a heading for reports in the **General** page of the **Configuration** dialog box (see page 8-139).
- 2 Click in the Gel window or choose it from the **Window** menu to select it.



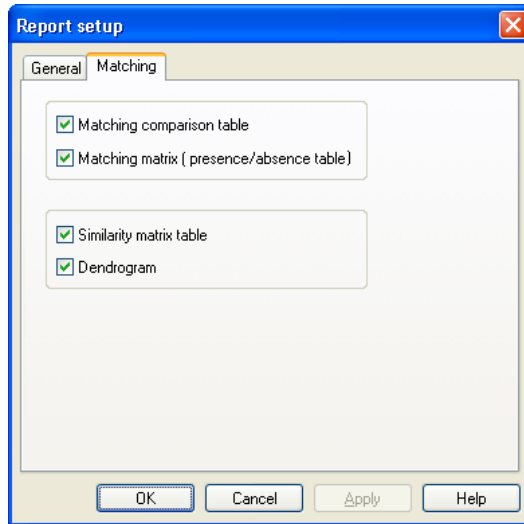
- 3 Choose **Report setup** from the **File** menu to display the **Report Setup** dialog box:



Note If the paper selected for the currently selected printer is less than 150 mm in either dimension (for example if you are using a video printer), a simplified report containing the image and some brief identification and image information will be printed. The settings in the **Report setup** dialog box have no effect on the content of this simplified report.

- 4 Select the check boxes for the items you want to include in the report.

- Click on the **Matching** tab to display the **Matching** page in the **Report setup** dialog box:



- Select the check boxes for the items you want to include in the report.
- To preview the report before you print it, choose **Print preview** from the **File** menu.
- Choose **Print** from the **File** menu (if you are previewing the report, you can also press **Print** in the preview window).



Printing reports – Profile comparisons

To print a report showing Profile comparisons:

- If you have not already done so, enter your laboratory's name and a heading for reports in the **General** page of the **Configuration** dialog box – see the entry for **Configuration** in the **Extras** menu in the *Menus* chapter (page 8-139).
- Click in the **Profile comparison** window or choose it from the **Window** menu to select it.



- 3 To preview the report before you print it, choose **Print preview** from the **File** menu.



- 4 Choose **Print** from the **File** menu (if you are previewing the report, you can also press **Print** in the preview window).

See the entry for **Printer Setup** in the *Menus* chapter, page 8-19, for how to select and set up the printer to use.

Exporting results to Excel

Gel windows

To export results to Excel:

- 1 Select the results table that you want to export by clicking on its tab in the Results pane – see page 6-14 for information about the tables that can be displayed in the Results pane.
- 2 If you want to change the columns shown in the table, right-click on the table to display the Results context menu and choose the required parameter to add to or remove from the table.
- 3 Repeat Step 2 until the required columns are displayed.
- 4 Choose **Export table to Excel**.



Unless you have already exported a table to Excel in the current session, Excel will be opened and a new workbook created.

The first sheet in the workbook will be named **Image document data** and will contain the secure sample's file name, and data taken from the **Information** page of the **Sample properties** dialog box.

The second sheet in the workbook will contain the exported table and will be named appropriately.

If you have already exported a table to Excel in the current session:

- if the results table selected in the Results pane already exists in the workbook, the results will be updated

- otherwise, a new sheet will be added for the new table and named appropriately.

Note 1 GeneTools identifies sheets in the workbook by their names. If you rename a sheet and export the table again, a new sheet will be added for the table and the original sheet will not be updated.

Note 2 After you have exported a table to Excel in a session, GeneTools maintains a link to the workbook it created but does not use the name of the workbook to identify it. This means that you can save the workbook with another name if you wish. However, it also means that once you have exported a table to Excel, you should leave the workbook open in Excel until after you have closed GeneTools.

Profile comparison window

To export the data points (Rf and height values) to Excel for a track displayed in the **Profile comparison** window (see *Profile comparison window*, page 6-18, for more information about the **Profile comparison** window):

Select a track in the Track browser pane and choose **Export to Excel** from the **Profile** menu (or the menu displayed if you right-click on the track).

Note **Export to Excel** is only enabled for tracks that are currently 'shown' in the **Profile comparison** window.

The data (one data point for each pixel along the track) will be exported to a new worksheet in Excel, which will be opened if it is not already open.

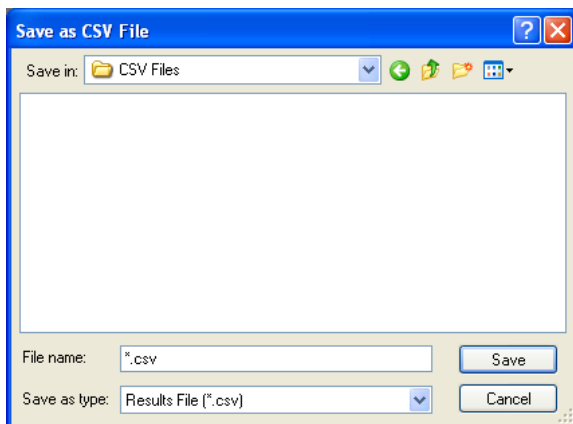
Saving results in a comma separated values format file

To save results to a comma separated values text file:

- 1 Select the results table that you want to export by clicking on its tab in the Results pane.
- 2 If you want to change the columns shown in the table, right-click on the table to display the Results context menu and choose the required parameter to add to or remove from the table.
- 3 Repeat Step 2 until the required columns are displayed.



- 4 Choose **Save table to CSV file** to display the **Save as CSV File** dialog box:



This is a standard Windows **Save as** dialog box.

- 5 Use the dialog box to select a folder in which to save the CSV file.
- 6 Enter a **File name** for the CSV file.
- 7 Press **Save** to save the results in the file.

Creating a report in Word

To create a Word document containing a report showing Gel results for the selected area of interest:

- 1 If you have not already done so, enter your laboratory's name and a heading for reports in the **General** page of the **Configuration** dialog box.
- 2 Click in the Gel window or choose it from the **Window** menu to select it.
- 3 Choose **Report setup** from the **File** menu to display the **Report setup** dialog box – see page 1-128 for how to use this dialog box.
- 4 Choose **Export to Word** from the **File** menu to open a new Word document and build the report.



A new Word document will be opened and the report created within it.

Copying a picture of an image to the clipboard

To copy a picture of the image in the Image pane in the current window to the clipboard:



Choose **Save to clipboard** from the **File** menu.

Using GeneTools for High Throughput Gel analysis

Most operations you will need to carry out for the analysis of High Throughput Gel samples are also used for Gel samples – see *Getting started with High Throughput Gel analysis* in the *GeneTools Getting Started* manual for full instructions on the operations specific to High Throughput Gel samples; see the previous chapter in this manual, *Using GeneTools for Gel analysis*, for operations common to High Throughput Gel and Gel samples.

Using GeneTools for Manual band quantification

See Getting started with Manual band quantification in the GeneTools Getting Started manual for full instructions on using GeneTools for Manual band quantification.

Using GeneTools for Spot blot analysis

This chapter contains detailed instructions for using GeneTools for Spot blot analysis.

The chapter begins by describing how you can load sample files and images into GeneTools. It then shows you how to place spot frames over the spots and change their sizes and positions – the spot frames are the areas within which GeneTools takes quantity measurements from the spots on the image.

This is followed by instructions for calibrating the results so that you can measure quantities from the spots.

The final section in the chapter describes how to use GeneTools to view, print and export the results.

How to create and work with secure sample files

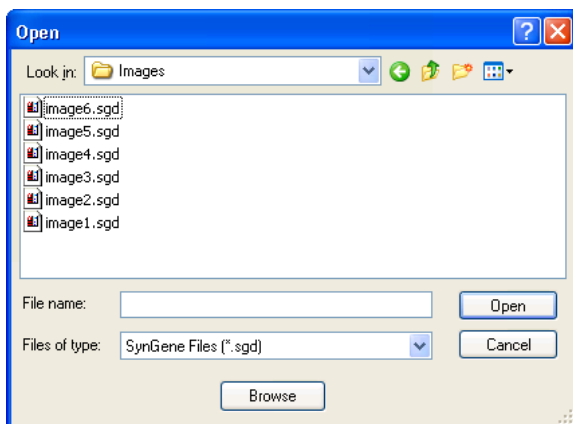
See *File formats*, page 1-1, for a description of the secure file format used by GeneTools.

Opening a secure sample file

To open a secure sample file:



- 1 Choose **Open** from the **File** menu to display a standard Windows **Open** dialog box:

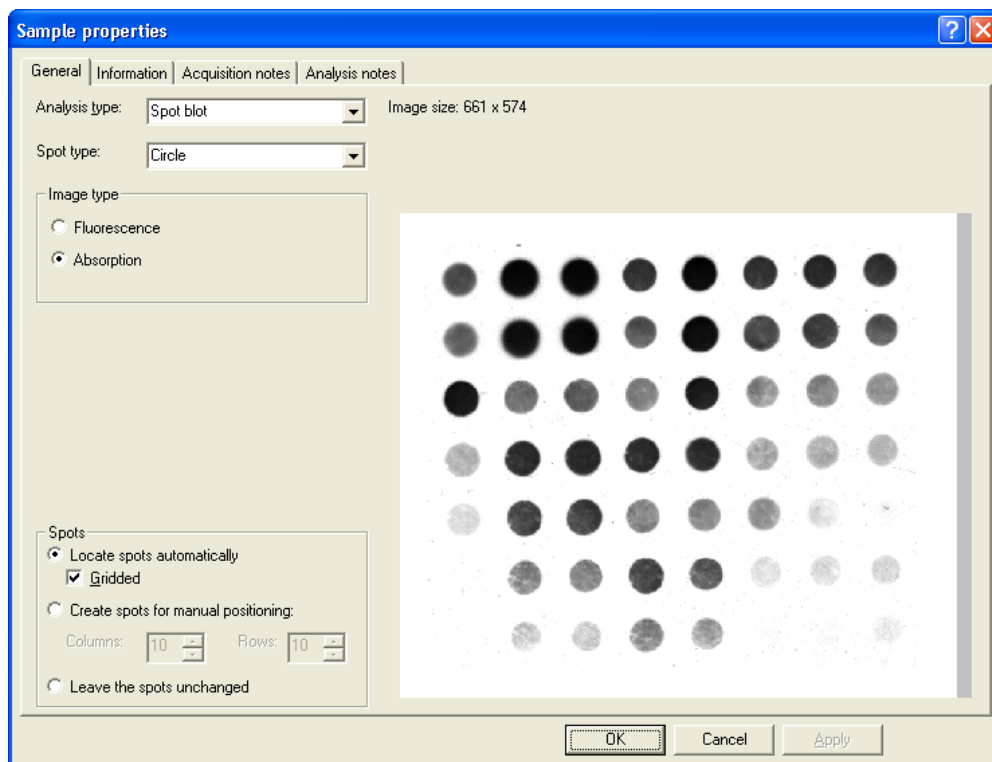


- 2 Use the dialog box to select the required secure sample file.
- 3 Press **Open**.

What happens next depends on whether you are opening an analyzed or unanalyzed secure sample, and in the latter case on whether you have set **Auto import methods** in the **Configuration** dialog box.

- If you are opening an analyzed secure sample file:
 - The sample will be opened in a Spot blot/Manual band quantification window with all spot frames displayed as they were when the file was last saved. All previously analyzed results will be shown in the Results table.
- If you are opening an unanalyzed secure sample file and you have selected **Auto import methods** in the **Configuration** dialog box:
 - The **Import method** dialog box will open so that you can choose which settings to import – see *Opening or creating a secure sample file with automatic import*, page 4-11, for further details.

- If you are opening an unanalyzed secure sample file:
 - The **Sample properties** dialog box will open with the image loaded:



The controls shown on the **General** page in the **Sample properties** dialog box depend on the **Analysis type** selected.

- 1 If required, select **Spot blot** from the **Analysis type** drop-down list box – the default **Analysis type** is set to **Gel** when GeneTools is first installed but you can change this using **Configuration** in the **Extras** menu – see page 8-139.
- 2 Choose the shape of spots (**Circle** or **Rectangle**) you want to use from the **Spot type** drop-down list box.
- 3 Click on the **Fluorescence** radio button for a fluorescence image (bright spots on a dark background); click on the **Absorption** radio button for an absorption image (dark spots on a bright background).

GeneTools detects the **Image type** automatically, so you shouldn't need to change this setting.

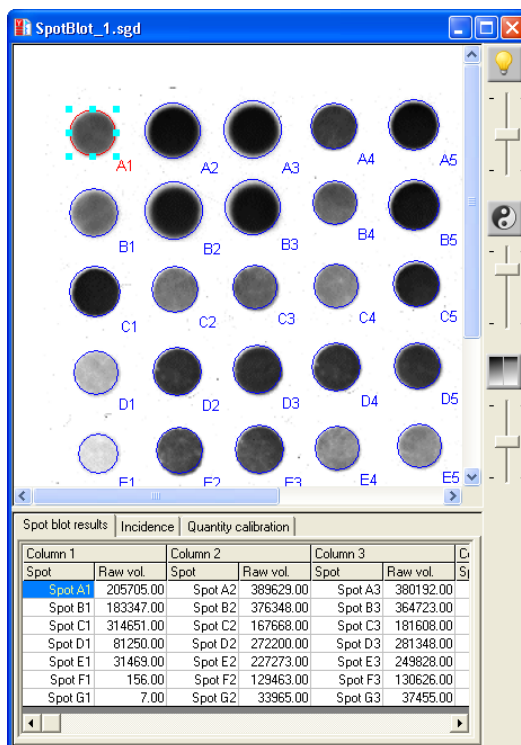
4 Do one of:

- Press **Locate spots automatically** if you want GeneTools to detect the positions of the spots automatically:
 - Check **Gridded** if you want GeneTools to place a rectangular grid of spot frames over the spots it detects.
 - Uncheck **Gridded** if you want GeneTools to place spot frames only where it actually found spots.
- Press **Create spots for manual positioning** to place a rectangular grid of spot frames in a default position on the image:
 - Enter the number of **Columns** and **Rows** you want to appear in the grid.
- Press **Leave the spots unchanged** if you do not want to put any spot frames on the image yet. You will be able to add spots manually later – see *Adding new spot frames*, page 4-18.

5 Click on the **Analysis notes** tab and enter any notes you want to save with the secure sample file.

The other two pages give information saved with the file in the acquisition program – see the entry for **Sample properties** in the *Menus* chapter, page 8-28, for details.

- 6 Press **OK** to close the dialog box and display the sample in a Spot blot/Manual band quantification window:



If you have set **Gridded**, a grid of spot frames of the chosen shape will be shown on the image and their positions automatically adjusted within the grid cells to fit over any spots that are detected – see *How to adjust the spot frame positions*, page 4-26, for how to move and resize the frames if necessary.

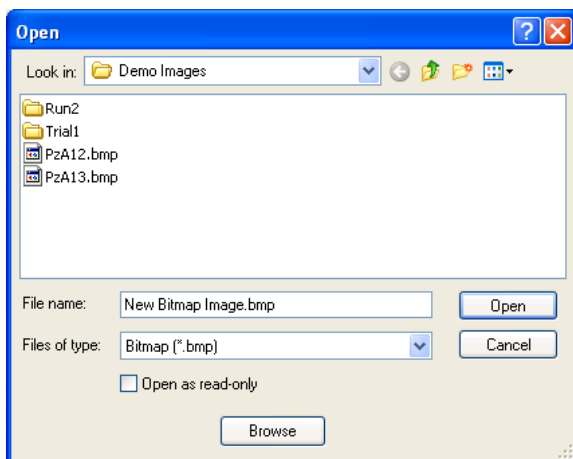
If you have not set **Gridded**, spot frames of the chosen shape will be shown on the image at any detected spots – see *How to adjust the spot frame positions*, page 4-26, and *How to add and remove spot frames*, page 4-16.

See also *How to adjust the size and shape of spot frames*, page 4-21.

Creating a new secure sample file

To create a new secure sample file (for example, from a non-secure .tif or .bmp image file):

- 1 Choose **New (Import)** from the **File** menu to display a standard Windows **Open** dialog box:



- 2 Choose the type of image file from the **Files of type** drop-down list box.
- 3 Use the **Look in** drop-down list box to select the folder containing the image file.
- 4 Click on the file in the list box to select it – the name of the file will appear in the **File name** box.
- 5 Press **Open** to close the dialog box.

What happens next depends on whether you have selected **Auto import methods** in the **Configuration** dialog box:

- If you have selected **Auto import methods** in the **Configuration** dialog box, the **Import method** dialog box will open so that you can choose which settings to import – see *Opening or creating a secure sample file with automatic import*, page 4-11, for further details.

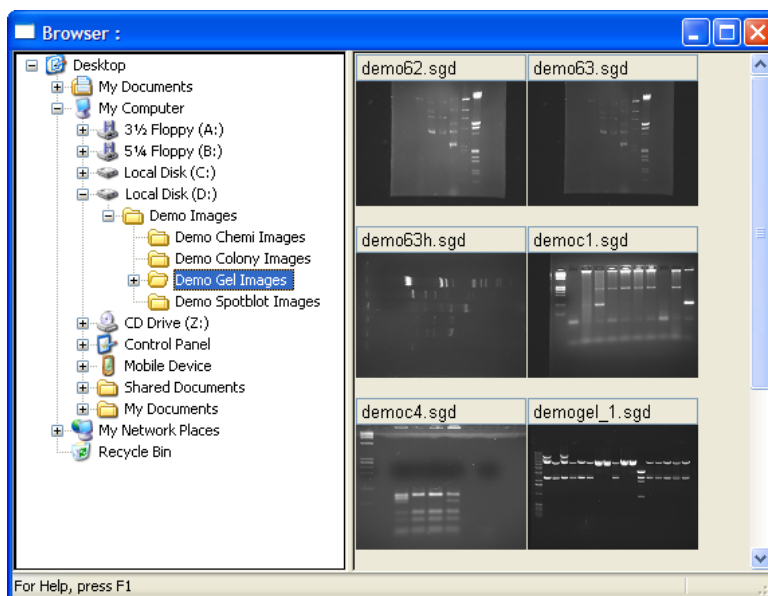
If **Auto import methods** is not selected, the **Sample properties** dialog box will open so that you can set the type of image and make other settings – see the picture on page 4-3 and the instructions following it.

Using the Browser

As an alternative to using the **Open** command to open a secure sample file (see Steps 1–3 in *Opening a secure sample file* page 4-2) or the **New (Import)** command to create a new secure sample file (for example, from a non-secure .tif or .bmp image file – see the previous section), you can use the GeneTools Browser to preview and open image files.

To open an existing secure sample file or to create a new secure sample file using the Browser:

- 1 Choose **Browse** from the **File** menu to display the Browser:



- 2 Use the left-hand pane in the Browser to select the folder containing the required image in exactly the same way as you use the left-hand pane in Windows Explorer.

The right-hand pane in the Browser will show a preview of all the images in the selected folder.

- 3 Double-click on the image that you want to open.

What happens next depends on whether you are opening an analyzed or unanalyzed secure sample or creating a new secure sample file.

If you are opening an analyzed secure sample file:

- The sample will be opened in a Spot blot/Manual band quantification window with all spot frames displayed as they were when the file was last saved. All previously analyzed results will be shown in the Results table.

If you are opening an unanalyzed secure sample file or creating a new secure sample file:

- If you have selected **Auto import methods** in the **Configuration** dialog box, the **Import method** dialog box will open so that you can choose which settings to import – see *Opening or creating a secure sample file with automatic import*, page 4-11, for further details.
- If **Auto import methods** is not selected, the **Sample properties** dialog box will open so that you can set the type of image and make other settings – see the picture on page 4-3 and the instructions following it.

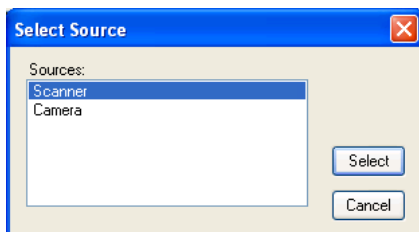
Acquiring an image to create a secure sample file

GeneTools allows you to acquire an image from a Twain source, such as a scanner or a digital camera, and create a secure sample file from it.

In order to acquire the image you need to select the Twain source first.

To select a Twain source so that you can acquire an image from it:

- 1 Choose **Select Source (Twain)** from the **File** menu to display the **Select Source** dialog box:



- 2 Click on the required source to select it.
- 3 Press **Select** to confirm the selection and close the dialog box.

To acquire an image from the selected Twain source and create a secure sample file:

- 1 Choose **Acquire (Twain)** from the **File** menu.

A dialog box will be displayed for the selected source so that you can select acquisition options and acquire the image.

- 2 Use the dialog box to acquire the image.

Once the image has been acquired:

- If you have selected **Auto import methods** in the **Configuration** dialog box, the **Import method** dialog box will open so that you can choose which settings to import – see *Opening or creating a secure sample file with automatic import*, page 4-11, for further details.
- If **Auto import methods** is not selected, the **Sample properties** dialog box will open so that you can set the type of image and make other settings – see the picture on page 4-3 and the instructions following it.

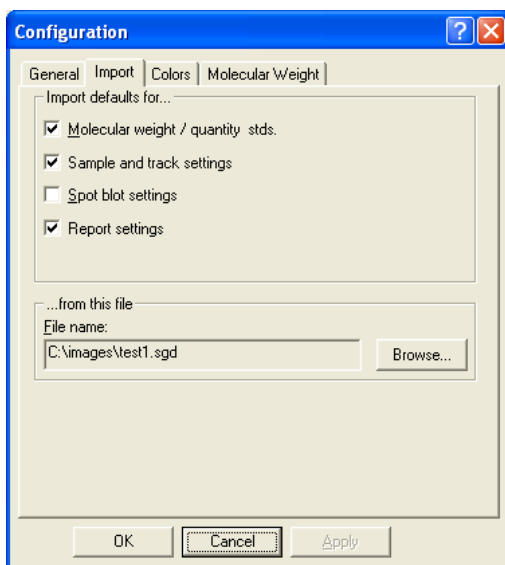
Importing settings from existing secure Spot blot sample files

Automatically importing settings

To set the program to import settings automatically from an existing secure Spot blot sample file

- 1 Choose **Configuration** from the **Extras** menu to display the **General** page of the **Configuration** dialog box.
- 2 Check **Auto import methods**.

- 3 Click on the **Import** tab to display the **Import** page:



- 4 Press **Browse** to display a standard Windows **Open** dialog box if you want to select a different file from which to import the settings.

a Select the file from which you want to import settings.

b Press **OK** to close the **Open** dialog box.

The name of the selected file will appear in the **File name** box.

- 5 Check the boxes for the settings you want to import – the relevant boxes for a Spot blot sample are **Spot blot settings** and **Report settings**.

Note The check boxes are disabled if no file is selected.

- 6 Press **OK** to close the **Configuration** dialog box.

Note The settings you make will be stored as the defaults for the next time you want to import settings. The controls on this page are also displayed in a dialog box when you:

- open an unanalyzed image, or
- create a secure sample file from a non-secure image, or

- choose **Import method** from the **File** menu to import the settings from a saved file to an existing secure sample file in a Spot blot window.

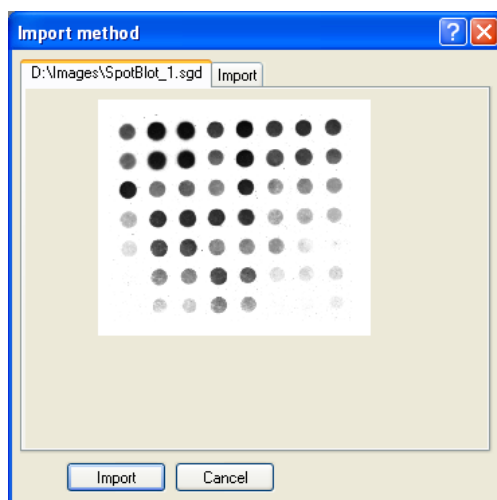
Changing the settings in any of these places changes the defaults.

Opening or creating a secure sample file with automatic import

If you have automatic import set when you:

- open an unanalyzed secure sample file – see *Opening a secure sample file*, page 4-2,
- create a new secure sample file – see *Creating a new secure sample file*, page 4-6,
- acquire an image from a Twain source – see *Acquiring an image to create a secure sample file*, page 4-8,

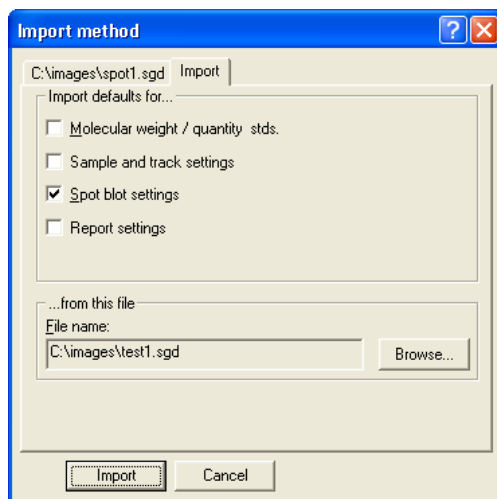
the **Import method** dialog box will open:



Note If you change your mind about using automatic import, press **Cancel** to close the **Import method** dialog box and display the **Sample properties** dialog box. Then continue as if you were opening or creating a secure sample file without automatic import.

To continue opening or creating a secure sample file with automatic import:

- 1 Click on the **Import** tab to display the **Import** page:



- 2 Press **Browse** to display a standard Windows **Open** dialog box if you want to select a different file from which to import the settings.

Note The check boxes are disabled if no file is selected.

- 3 Check or uncheck the boxes if you want to change the settings that are imported – the relevant boxes for a Spot blot sample are **Spot blot settings** and **Report settings**.

Note The choices you make will be stored as the defaults for the next time you want to import settings. You can also set the defaults using the **Import** page of the **Configuration** dialog box, or by importing settings to an existing secure sample file by choosing **Import method** from the **File** menu.

- 4 Press **Import** to close the **Import method** dialog box.

What happens next depends on whether you have chosen to import **Spot blot settings**:

- If you haven't imported **Spot blot settings**, the **Sample properties** dialog box will be displayed so that you can set the sample properties – see

Opening a secure sample file, page 4-2, for details.

When you have done that, a Spot blot/Manual band quantification window will open containing the new sample created from the image.

- Otherwise, a Spot blot/Manual band quantification window will open immediately containing the new sample created from the image with the imported spot frames in position – see later in this chapter for information about working with spot frames.

You can now use all the program's analysis procedures to work with the sample.

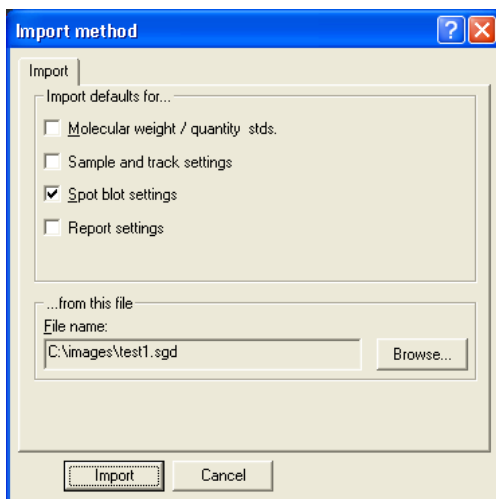
Note You can always change the automatically imported settings at a later time by choosing **Sample properties** from the **File** menu to change individual settings (the **Sample properties** dialog box also allows you to add notes about the sample to be saved with it).

See the next section for how to use **Import method** from the **File** menu to import settings from a different secure sample file – this also displays the **Import method** dialog box but without the page showing the image).

Importing settings from a saved sample file

To apply spot blot and/or report settings from a saved secure sample file to the sample in the selected Spot Blot/Manual Quantification window:

- 1 Choose **Import method** from the **File** menu to display the **Import method** dialog box:



- 2 Press **Browse** to display a standard Windows **Open** dialog box if you want to select a different file from which to import the settings.

Note The check boxes are disabled if no file is selected.

- 3 Check the boxes for the settings you want to import – the relevant boxes for a Spot blot sample are **Spot blot settings** and **Report settings**.

Note This dialog box is also displayed if you create a new sample from a non-secure image with automatic import set (though it then has an additional page showing the image). You can also set the import methods in the **Import** page of the **Configuration** dialog box. The program displays the same import methods in all these places and changing the settings in any one of them changes the settings in all of them.

Editing sample properties

To view or edit the settings and notes for a sample:

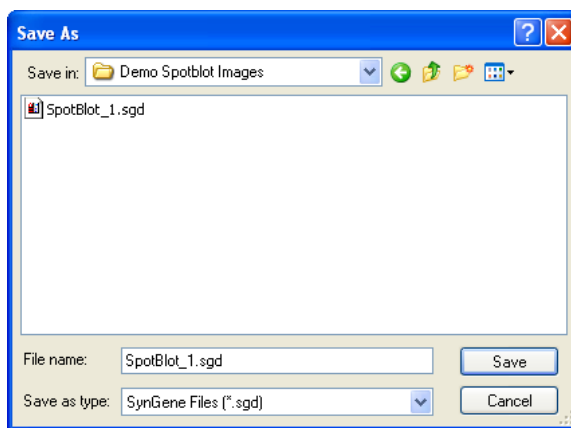
- 1 Click in the window containing the sample to select it.
- 2 Choose **Sample properties** from the **File** menu to display the **General** page of the **Sample properties** dialog box – see the entry for **Sample properties** in the *Menus* chapter (page 8-28) for details.



Saving a secure sample file

To save a secure sample with a new name:

- 1 Click in the Sample window containing the sample (or choose it from the list at the bottom of the **Window** menu).
- 2 Choose **Save as** from the **File** menu to display a standard Windows **Save As** dialog box:



- 3 Use the dialog box to select a folder in which to save the sample.
- 4 Enter a **File name** for the sample.
- 5 Press **Save** to save the sample in the file.

To save a previously saved secure sample file using the same name:

- 1 Click in the Sample window containing the sample (or choose it from the list at the bottom of the **Window** menu).
- 2 Choose **Save** from the **File** menu. If the secure sample file has not been saved previously, the **Save As** dialog box will be displayed so that you can enter a name: see above.



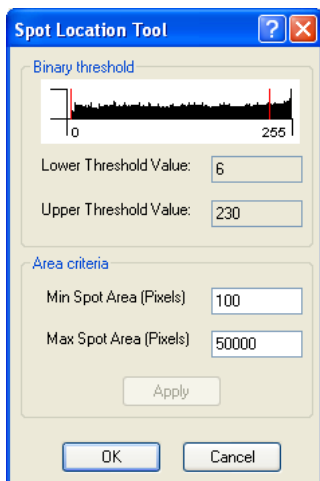
How to add and remove spot frames

Adding spot frames automatically

To locate spots automatically on a non-gridded Spot blot image (or to fine-adjust the size and position of the spot frames on a gridded sample):



- 1 Choose **All spots same size** from the **Spots** menu to choose whether or not to force all the spot frames to have the same size.
- 2 Choose **Locate** from the **Spots** menu to display the **Spot Location Tool** dialog box:



The dialog box allows you to set the criteria used for detecting spots:

- The red vertical lines in the **Binary threshold** control set the lower and upper boundaries of the range of intensities corresponding to spots in the image – areas in the image within this range will be marked in blue while the **Spot Location Tool** dialog box is open.
 - The **Area criteria** controls set the minimum and maximum size of spots – spot frames will appear on areas in the image satisfying both the **Binary threshold** and **Area criteria**.
- 3 Set the minimum and maximum areas for spots in the **Min Spot Area** and **Max Spot Area** boxes.
 - 4 Press **Apply** to set the area criteria without closing the dialog box – spot frames will appear on areas in the image satisfying both the **Binary threshold** and the new **Area criteria**.
 - 5 Drag the red boundary markers in the **Binary threshold** control until the spots, but not the background, in the image are colored blue – as you adjust the boundaries, the spot frames on the image will show where the spots are detected.
 - 6 If necessary, repeat Steps 2–5 until the spot frames are accurately positioned on the spots in the image.

Note	If All spots same size is not set, the spot frames will be sized optimally for each spot; if it is set, they will all be set to the size of the largest spot.
-------------	--

Note	For a gridded sample, this procedure allows fine adjustment of the size and position of the existing spot frames, which must substantially overlap the actual spots on the image.
-------------	---

Adding new spot frames

When the sample is non-gridded (see Step 3 on page 4-4), you can place your own spot frames on the sample.

Circular frames

(See also *Adding a copy of a spot frame*, page 4-20.)

To place a circular spot frame on a non-gridded Spot blot sample:



- 1 If it isn't already selected, choose **Position any spot** from the **Spots** menu to unlock the sample for placing and moving spot frames.



- 2 If **All spots same size** is selected in the **Spots** menu, choose the command again to deselect it.



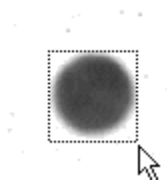
- 3 If it isn't already selected, choose **Circle** from the **Spots** menu – this will change the shape of the currently selected frame.

You place the circle by dragging out its bounding rectangle.

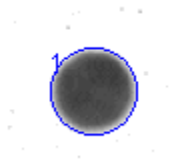
- 4 Move the pointer to where you want to place the top left-hand corner of the bounding rectangle:



- 5 Press the mouse button and drag to the bottom right-hand corner of the bounding rectangle:



- 6 Release the mouse button to place the new spot frame on the sample. The frame will be drawn as the largest circle possible within the bounding rectangle. It will be drawn in the color for selected spot frames (you can use **Configuration** in the **Extras** menu to set the color – see page 8-143) and labeled with a number showing the order in which the frame was added.



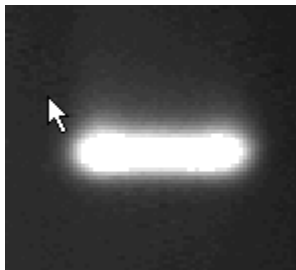
Rectangular frames

(See also *Adding a copy of a spot frame*, page 4-20.)

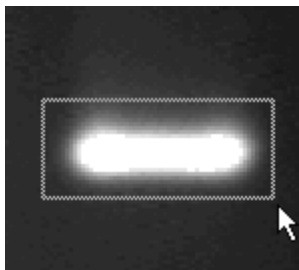
To place a rectangular spot frame on a Spot blot sample:



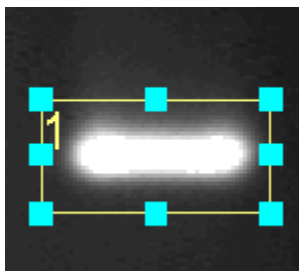
- 1 If it isn't already selected, choose **Position any spot** from the **Spots** menu to unlock the sample for placing and moving spot frames.
- 2 If **All spots same size** is selected in the **Spots** menu, choose the command again to deselect it.
- 3 If it isn't already selected, choose **Rectangle** from the **Spots** menu.
- 4 Move the pointer to where you want to place the top left-hand corner of the rectangle:



- 5 Press the mouse button and drag to the bottom right-hand corner of the rectangle:



- 6 Release the mouse button to place the new spot frame on the sample. The frame will be drawn in the color for selected spot frames (you can use **Configuration** in the **Extras** menu (see page 8-143) to set the color) and labeled with a number showing the order in which the frame was added. It will have drag handles at its corners and at the middle of its sides so that you can adjust its shape – see *Adjusting the size and shape of rectangular spot frames*, page 4-24.



Adding a copy of a spot frame

To add another frame of the same size as another frame (a default size if it is the first frame) to a non-gridded sample:



- 1 If it isn't already selected, choose **Position any spot** from the **Spots** menu to unlock the sample for changing spot frames.
- 2 Click in the spot frame that you want to copy to select it.
- 3 Double-click at the point you want to place the center of the new frame.

A new frame with the same size and shape as the selected frame will be added at the point you double-clicked.

See *How to adjust the spot frame positions*, page 4-26, and *How to adjust the size and shape of spot frames*, page 4-21, for making further adjustments to the spot frames.

Removing spot frames

To remove a spot frame from a sample:



- 1 If it isn't already selected, choose **Position any spot** from the **Spots** menu to unlock the sample for changing spot frames.
- 2 Click in the spot frame to select it.
- 3 Either:

Choose **Delete** from the **Spots** menu.

or

Press .

After the spot frame has been removed, the numbers or letter/number pairs labeling the remaining frames will be changed so that they are still consecutive.

To remove all the spot frames from a sample:



- 1 If it isn't already selected, choose **Position any spot** from the **Spots** menu to unlock the sample for changing spot frames.
- 2 Choose **Delete all** from the **Spots** menu.

How to adjust the size and shape of spot frames

Setting the size of all spot frames to the same size and shape

To set all the spot frames to the same size and shape as the selected spot frame:



Choose **All spots same size** from the **Spots** menu.

The shape and size of all the spot frames will be adjusted to match the selected spot frame.

While **All spots same size** is set, if you adjust the size or shape of an individual spot frame, all the spot frames will be adjusted to match them. If **All spots same size** is set when you locate spots automatically, the spot frames placed on the detected spots will all have the same size (see *Adding spot frames automatically* on page 4-16).

Changing between circular and rectangular spot frames

To make the selected circular frame rectangular or all frames rectangular if **All spots same size** is set:



Choose **Rectangle** from the **Spots** menu to make a circular frame rectangular.

To make the selected rectangular frame circular or all frames circular if **All spots same size** is set:



Choose **Circle** from the **Spots** menu to make a rectangular frame circular.

Adjusting the size of circular spot frames

You can adjust the size of circular spot frames using the mouse or a dialog box (apart from changing them to rectangular spot frames, you cannot change their shape).

Using the mouse

To adjust the size of one or all of the circular frames:



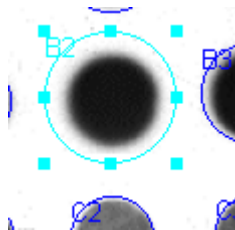
- 1 If it isn't already selected, choose **Position any spot** from the **Spots** menu to unlock the sample for resizing spot frames.

Note You could also use **Position control points** to unlock the sample, but that would only allow you to change the size of the spots at the control points – see *Adjusting the positions of all the spot frames in a grid*, page 4-26, to find out about control points.



- 2 If required, set or unset **All spots same size** by choosing the command from the **Spots** menu – when **All spots same size** is set all the frames will be adjusted to the same size and shape; when it is unset, only the selected frame will be adjusted.
- 3 Click in the frame to select it – if **All spots same size** is set, you can select any frame.

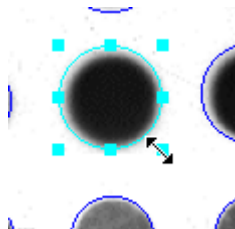
Drag handles will appear at the corners and in the middle of the sides of the square bounding the frame:



- 4 Move the pointer over a drag handle – it doesn't matter which. The pointer will change to a two-headed arrow showing the direction you can drag the handle:



- 5 Drag the handle:



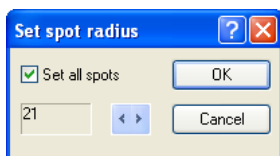
and drop it in its new position.

Using a dialog box

To change the size of one or all the circular frames on a sample:



- 1 If the sample is locked, choose **Lock position** from the **Spots** menu to unlock the sample.
- 2 Click on the spot frame that you want to adjust to select it – click on any circular frame if you want to adjust them all.
- 3 Right-click in the image pane and choose **Set radius** from the context menu displayed to display the **Set spot radius** dialog box:



- 4 Check **Set all spots** if you want to change the radius of all the (circular) spot frames; uncheck it if you just want to change the radius of the selected spot frame.

Note The initial **Set all spots** setting is fixed by the setting of the **All spots same size** command in the **Spots** menu. If you change the setting of **Set all spots** in the dialog box, **All spots same size** will be set or unset accordingly when you close it.

- 5 Use the arrow buttons to set the new radius.
- 6 Press **OK** to close the dialog box and set the new radius.

Adjusting the size and shape of rectangular spot frames

To adjust the size and shape of one or all of the rectangular frames:

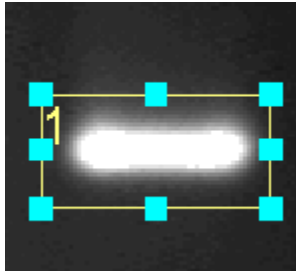


- 1 If the sample is locked, choose **Lock position** from the **Spots** menu to unlock the sample.
- 2 If required, set or unset **All spots same size** by choosing the command from the **Spots** menu – when **All spots same size** is set all the frames will be adjusted to the same size and shape; when it is unset, only the selected frame will be adjusted.

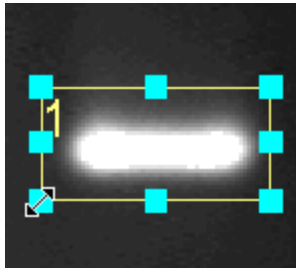


- 3 Click in the frame to select it – if **All spots same size** is set, you can select any frame.

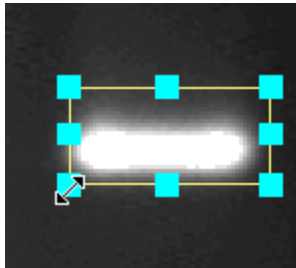
Drag handles will appear at the corners and in the middle of the sides of the frame:



- 4 Move the pointer over the drag handle that you want to adjust. The pointer will change to a two-headed arrow showing the direction you can drag the handle:



- 5 Drag the handle:



and drop it in its new position.

- 6 Repeat Steps 4 and 5 for any of the other handles you want to adjust.

How to adjust the spot frame positions

You can adjust the position of one frame at a time on any sample, but if the sample is gridded, you can also adjust the position of all the frames together.

Adjusting the position of a single spot frame

To adjust the position of a single spot frame:



- 1 If **Position any spot** is not selected already, choose **Position any spot** from the **Spots** menu to unlock the sample and allow individual spot movement.
- 2 Click in the frame that you want to move to select it.
- 3 Drag the frame to its new position (avoid dragging the drag handles).

Adjusting the positions of all the spot frames in a grid

When a sample is gridded (see Step 3 on page 4-4), you can adjust the position of all the spot frames together.

There are several ways of doing this to achieve different results, but for all of them you will need to set **Position control points**.

To unlock the grid for positioning all spot frames together:



If it isn't already selected, choose **Position control points** from the **Spots** menu.

To move all of the spot frames in the grid together, you make one or more of the frames a 'positioning point'.

To make a frame a positioning point:

Double-click in the frame.

The positioning point will be identified by color (you can use **Configuration** in the **Extras** menu to set the color – see page 8-143).

Repeat the process to change the frame back to being a normal frame.

You can define up to three positioning points. If there are already three positioning points, you will need to remove one before adding another one. The following sections describe the effect of using one, two or three positioning points.

Moving the grid of spot frames without changing its shape or orientation

To move the grid of spot frames without changing its shape or orientation:

- 1 Define a single positioning point by double-clicking in a frame as above (if there is more than one positioning point, remove one or two until there is only one left).
- 2 Drag the grid by the positioning point.

The whole grid of spot frames will move with the positioning point.

Note	If you have moved any individual spot frames, they will be snapped back to their grid positions as you move the positioning point.
-------------	--

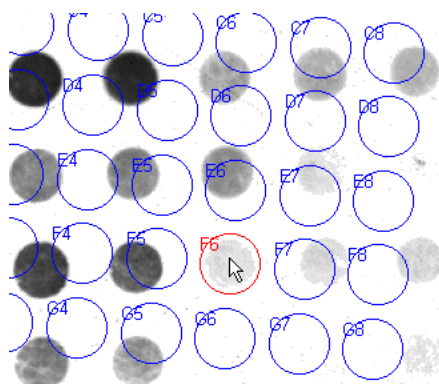
Scaling and rotating the grid of spot frames without changing its shape

For this operation you define one positioning point to act as a fixed point in the grid and then define a second positioning point to drag the frame around the fixed point.

To adjust the pitch and orientation of the grid of spot frames without changing the shape:

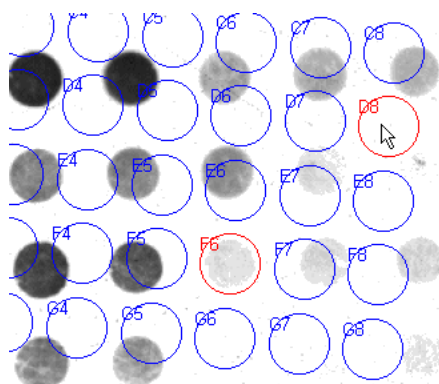
- 1 Remove any existing positioning points by double-clicking on them.

- 2 Define the first positioning point by double-clicking on the frame that you want to act as a fixed point:



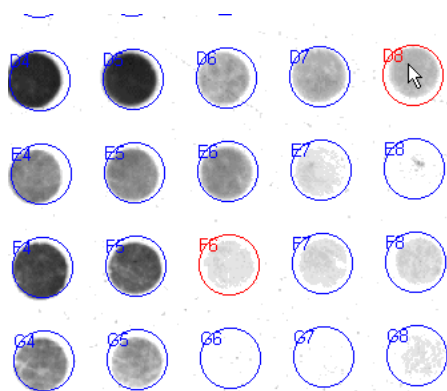
(The pointer is over the first positioning point in this example.)

- 3 Define the second positioning point by double-clicking on the frame that you want to drag:



- 4 Drag the second positioning point to the required position.

The grid will be scaled and rotated about the fixed positioning point:



Note that the shape of the grid has not changed – the rows are still at right angles to the columns.

- 5 Drop the grid in its new position.

Note If you have moved any individual spot frames, they will be snapped back to their grid positions as you move the positioning point.

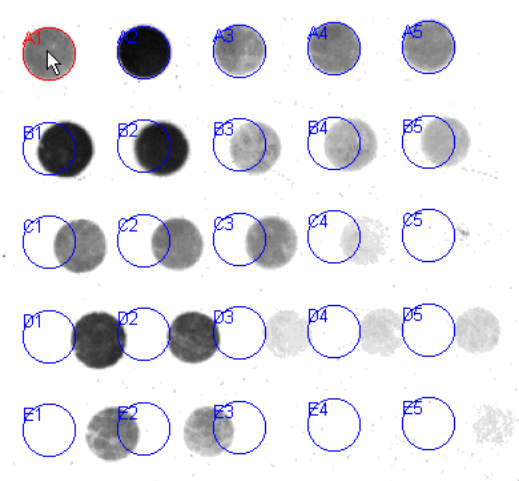
Changing the shape of the grid of spot frames

For this operation you define two fixed positioning points in the grid and then define a third positioning point to drag the frame relative to the fixed points.

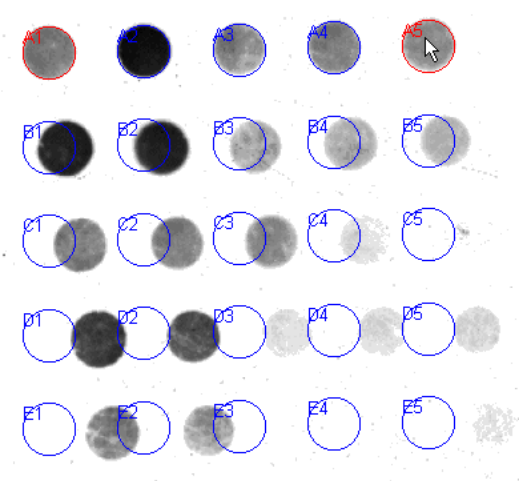
To adjust the shape of the grid of spot frames:

- 1 Remove any existing positioning points by double-clicking on them.

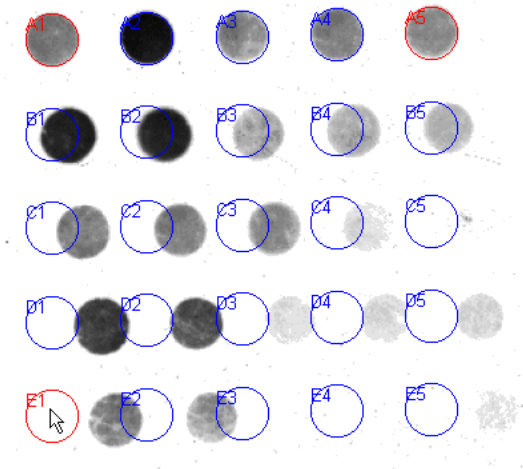
- 2 Define the first positioning point by double-clicking on the first frame that you want to act as a fixed point:



- 3 Define the second positioning point by double-clicking on the second frame that you want to act as a fixed point:

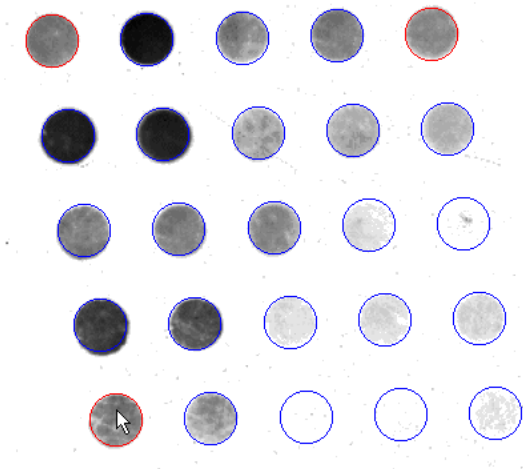


- 4 Define the third positioning point by double-clicking on the frame that you want to drag:



- 5 Drag the third positioning point to the required position.

The grid will be reshaped about the fixed positioning points:



Note If you have moved any individual spot frames, they will be snapped back to their grid positions as you move the positioning point.

How to lock the spot frames on a sample

To lock the spot frames on a sample:



Choose **Lock position** from the **Spots** menu.

Lock position is checked in the **Spots** menu and the button is shown as depressed in the toolbar when the frames are locked.

When the spot frames are locked, you cannot adjust their size, shape or position using the mouse or, in the case of non-gridded samples, delete them. However, you can change them between circular and rectangular shapes, set all to the same size as the selected spot frame using **All spots same size**, and use automatic spot location.

To unlock the spot frames:



Choose **Lock position** from the **Spots** menu.

If the sample is gridded, either **Position control points** or **Position any spot** will become selected, depending on which was selected before the spot frames were locked. For non-gridded samples, **Position any spot** will become selected.

The Spot frames are also unlocked if you choose **Position control points** or **Position any spot** from the **Spots** menu.

How to show or hide identification labels on the spot frames

To show/hide identification labels on the spot frames:

Choose **Spot numbers** from the **View** menu.

Spot numbers is checked in the **View** menu when the labels are shown.

How to set the quantity calibration method

To set or view the calibration method and units for quantity determination:



- 1 Choose **Quantity calibration** from the **Edit** menu to display the **Quantity calibration** dialog box:



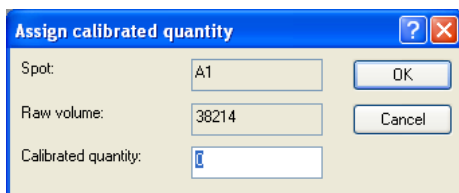
- 2 Choose the shape of calibration curve(s) from the drop-down list box. You can choose from:
 - **Linear through origin (single standard value)**
 - **Linear (multiple standard values)**
 - **Linear through origin (multiple standard values)**
 - **Quadratic**, or
 - **Quadratic through origin**.
- 3 Enter your own quantity units in the **Units** box.
- 4 Press **OK** to save the new settings and close the dialog box.

Note If you select **Linear through origin (single standard value)**, the calibration curve is drawn through the origin and the *last* calibration point you have added – in other words, adding a new calibration point replaces the previous one. For the other types of curve, the calibration curve is drawn as the best fit for all the (relevant) calibration points – adding a new calibration point contributes to (and does not replace) the calibration from any previous points.

How to assign quantities to spot frames

To assign a quantity to a spot to calibrate quantity measurements from other spots:

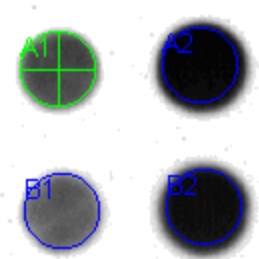
- 1 Click on the spot frame for the spot to which you want to assign a quantity.
- 2 Choose **Assign quantity** from the **Spots** menu to display the **Assign calibrated quantity** dialog box:



- 3 Enter the known quantity for the spot in the **Calibrated quantity** box.
- 4 Press **OK** to close the dialog box and set the calibration.

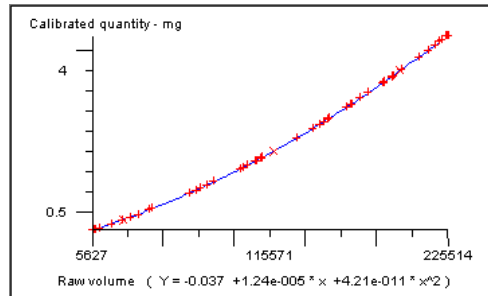
After you have assigned a quantity to a spot:

- The calibrated spot will be marked with a cross:



- The table on the **Spot blot results** page in the Spot blot/Manual band quantification window's Results/Quantity calibration pane will be automatically updated to include the calibrated quantities (the quantity you assigned will be shown in red).
- The **Quantity calibration** page in the Spot blot/Manual band quantification window's Results/Quantity calibration pane will show the calibration points and the selected calibration curve joining them (see page 4-33 for how to select the units

and shape of calibration curve: the example shows a quadratic calibration curve – the equation of the curve is given in the **Raw volume** axis label):

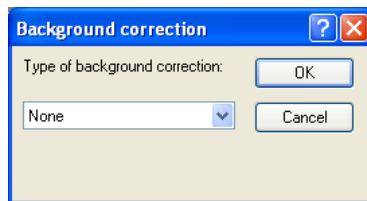


How to apply background correction to results

To apply or remove background correction to the raw volume measurements from the image:



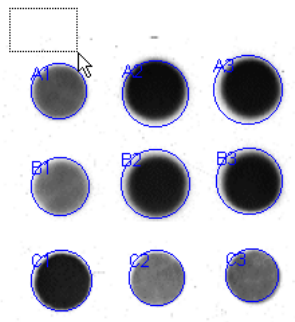
- 1 Choose **Background correction** from the **Spots** menu to display the **Background correction** dialog box:



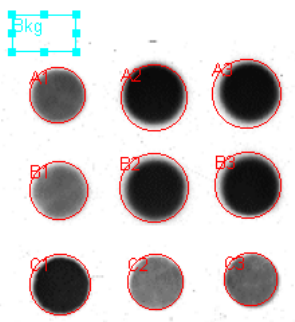
- 2 Choose **None**, for no background correction, or **Automatic** or **Manual** background correction.
- 3 If you have selected **None** or **Automatic**, go to Step 7.

For **Manual** background correction, you need to specify areas in the image from which the background readings should be taken – each spot result is then corrected by the reading from the background area nearest to it. Steps 4–6 show you how to define the background areas.

- 4 With the **Background correction** dialog box still open, drag out a rectangle on the image in the first background area you want to define:



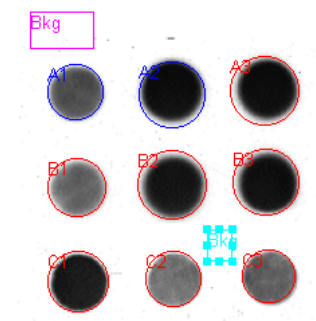
When you release the mouse button, the background area will be drawn with drag handles to show that it is selected:



- 5 If required, you can reshape and resize the background area by dragging the drag handles, move it by dragging the area or remove it by pressing **DEL**.

Note These editing operations can be applied to any existing background areas if you click in them while the **Background correction** dialog box is open.

6 Repeat Steps 4 and 5 to define any other background areas you require:



Note GeneTools highlights the spots that will be corrected by the selected background area. In particular, if you move a background area, the highlighting will change accordingly as you move the area.

7 Press **OK** to close the dialog box and set the background correction method.

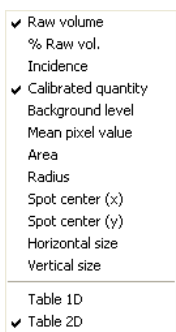
How to view Spot blot results

The Spot blot results are shown in the **Spot blot results** page in the bottom pane of the Spot blot/Manual band quantification window:

Spot blot results			Incidence	Quantity calibration
	Raw vol.	Background		
Spot A1	38214.00	0.00		
Spot A2	51364.00	0.00		
Spot A3	51396.00	0.00		
Spot A4	42594.00	0.00		
Spot A5	50982.00	0.00		
Spot A6	42500.00	0.00		
Spot A7	44662.00	0.00		
Spot A8	42478.00	0.00		
Spot B1	34079.00	0.00		

To choose what parameters to show in the Results table:

- 1 Right-click on the table to display the Spot blot results context menu:



- 2 Click on the required parameter in the list at the top of the menu to add it to or remove it from the Results table.

If the sample is gridded (see page 4-4), you can choose whether to display the results in a one- or two-dimensional table.

To choose whether to display Spot blot results in a one- or two-dimensional table:

- 1 Click on the Spot blot results tab.
- 2 Right-click in the table to display the Spot blot/Manual band quantification window Results pane context menu.
- 3 Choose **Table 1D** or **Table 2D**.

The selected command will become checked in the menu.

In a one-dimensional table, the results for the first row of spots are given first, then the second row and so on as in the example above. In a two-dimensional table, there is a separate row for each row in the grid and a group of columns for each column:

Spot blot results			Incidence	Quantity calibration		
Column 1			Column 2			Column 3
Spot	Raw vol.	Background	Spot	Raw vol.	Background	Spot
Spot A1	38214.00	0.00	Spot A2	51364.00	0.00	Spot A3
Spot B1	34079.00	0.00	Spot B2	49924.00	0.00	Spot B3
Spot C1	48467.00	0.00	Spot C2	30525.00	0.00	Spot C3
Spot D1	16401.00	0.00	Spot D2	43257.00	0.00	Spot D3
Spot E1	8072.00	0.00	Spot E2	38430.00	0.00	Spot E3
Spot F1	1404.00	0.00	Spot F2	24956.00	0.00	Spot F3
Spot G1	1255.00	0.00	Spot G2	10710.00	0.00	Spot G3

How to define an incidence condition

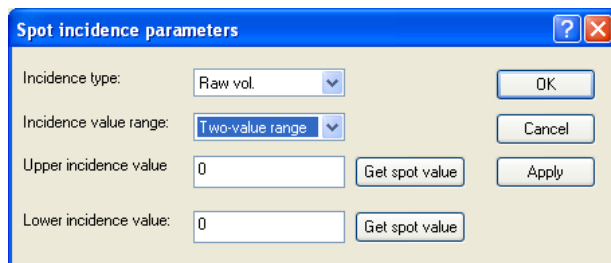
To define an incidence condition for a Spot blot:



- 1 Choose **Spot incidence parameters** to display the **Spot incidence parameters** dialog box:

- 2 Choose the parameter for which you want to set the incidence condition from the **Incidence type** drop-down list box – you can choose **Raw vol**, **% Total raw vol**, **Pixel area** or **Quantity**.
- 3 Choose the comparison operation to be used from the **Incidence value range** drop-down list box – you can choose **Greater than**, **Less than** or **Two-value range**.

If you choose **Two-value range**, an additional box will appear in the dialog box so that you can enter two values:



- 4 Enter the value(s) to be used for the comparison in the **Incidence value** (**Upper Incidence value** and **Lower Incidence value**) box(es).

Or:
 - a Click in a spot on the image to select it.
 - b Press **Get spot value** to transfer the **Incidence type** value for the selected spot to the incidence value box.
- 5 Press **Apply** to set the incidence condition without closing the **Spot incidence parameters** dialog box (you will be able to view the effect if the **Incidence** page is shown in the Results/Incidence/Calibration Graph pane).

Press **OK** to set the incidence condition and close the **Spot incidence parameters** dialog box.

You can view the incidence matrix in the **Incidence** page in the Results/Incidence/Calibration Graph pane at the bottom of the Spot blot/Manual band quantification window – see page 6-32.

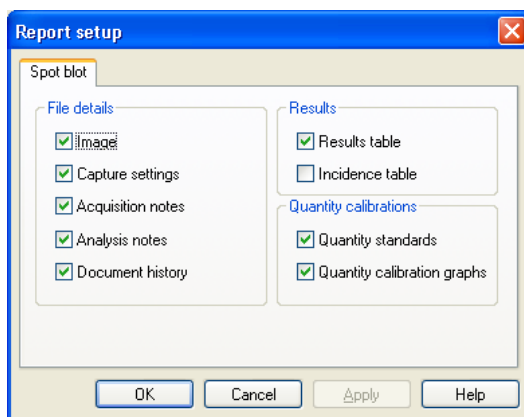
How to print and export Spot blot results

Printing Spot blot results

To choose what data to include in a Spot blot sample report:



- 1 With the Spot blot/Manual band quantification window selected, choose **Report setup** from the **File** menu to display the **Report setup** dialog box:



Note If the paper selected for the currently selected printer is less than 150 mm in either dimension (for example if you are using a video printer), a simplified report containing the image and some brief identification and image information will be printed. The settings in the **Report setup** dialog box have no effect on the content of this simplified report.

- 2 Check the boxes for the items you want to include in the report – see the entry for **Report setup** in the *Menus* chapter, page 8-20, for details of the options.
- 3 If you are going to include the Results table, choose what columns to include and whether it should be one- or two-dimensional – see page 4-37 for how to do this.
- 4 Choose **Print Preview** from the **File** menu to preview the report before it is printed – see the entry for **Print preview** in the *Menus* chapter, page 8-26, for details.





- 5 Choose **Print** from the **File** menu (or press **Print** in the Preview window if it is displayed) to display the **Print** dialog box so that you can select print options before printing the report – this is a standard Windows dialog box.
- 6 After selecting any required options, press **OK** to close the dialog box and print the report.

Exporting Spot blot results to Excel

To export Spot blot results to Excel:

- 1 Select the **Spot blot results** tab in the Spot blot/Manual band quantification window's lower pane.
- 2 If you want to change the columns shown in the table, right-click on the table to display the Results context menu and choose the required parameter to add to or remove from the table.
- 3 Repeat Step 2 until the required columns are displayed.
- 4 Choose **Export table to Excel** from the **File** menu.



Unless you have already exported a table to Excel in the current session, Excel will be opened and a new workbook created.

The first sheet in the workbook will be named **Image document data** and will contain the secure sample's file name, and data taken from the **Information** page of the **Sample properties** dialog box.

The **Spot blot results** will be shown on a separate sheet.

If you have already exported a table to Excel in the current session:

- if the results table selected in the Results pane already exists in the workbook, the results will be updated
- otherwise, a new sheet will be added for the new table and named accordingly.

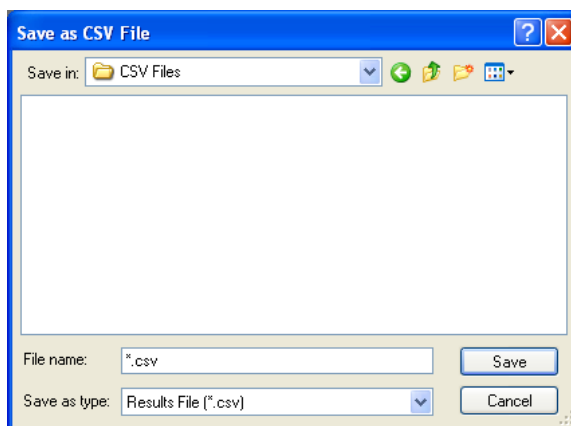
Note 1 GeneTools identifies sheets in the workbook by their names. If you rename a sheet and export the table again, a new sheet will be added for the table and the original sheet will not be updated.

Note 2 After you have exported a table to Excel in a session, GeneTools maintains a link to the workbook it created but does not use the name of the workbook to identify it. This means that you can save the workbook with another name if you wish. However, it also means that once you have exported a table to Excel, you should leave the workbook open in Excel until after you have closed GeneTools.

Saving results in a comma separated values format file

To save results to a comma separated values text file:

- 1 Select the **Spot blot results** tab.
- 2 If you want to change the columns shown in the table, right-click on the table to display the Results context menu and choose the required parameter to add to or remove from the table.
- 3 Repeat Step 2 until the required columns are displayed.
- 4 Choose **Save table to CSV file** to display the **Save as CSV File** dialog box:



This is a standard Windows Save As dialog box.

- 5 Use the dialog box to select a folder in which to save the CSV file.
- 6 Enter a **File name** for the CSV file.

- 7 Press **Save** to save the results in the file.

Copying a picture of an image to the clipboard

To copy a picture of the image in the Image pane in the current window to the clipboard:



Choose **Save to clipboard** from the **File** menu.

Using GeneTools to count colonies

See *Getting started with Colony counting* section in the *GeneTools Getting Started* manual for full instructions on Using GeneTools to count colonies.

Windows

You can display the following document windows in the main GeneTools application window:

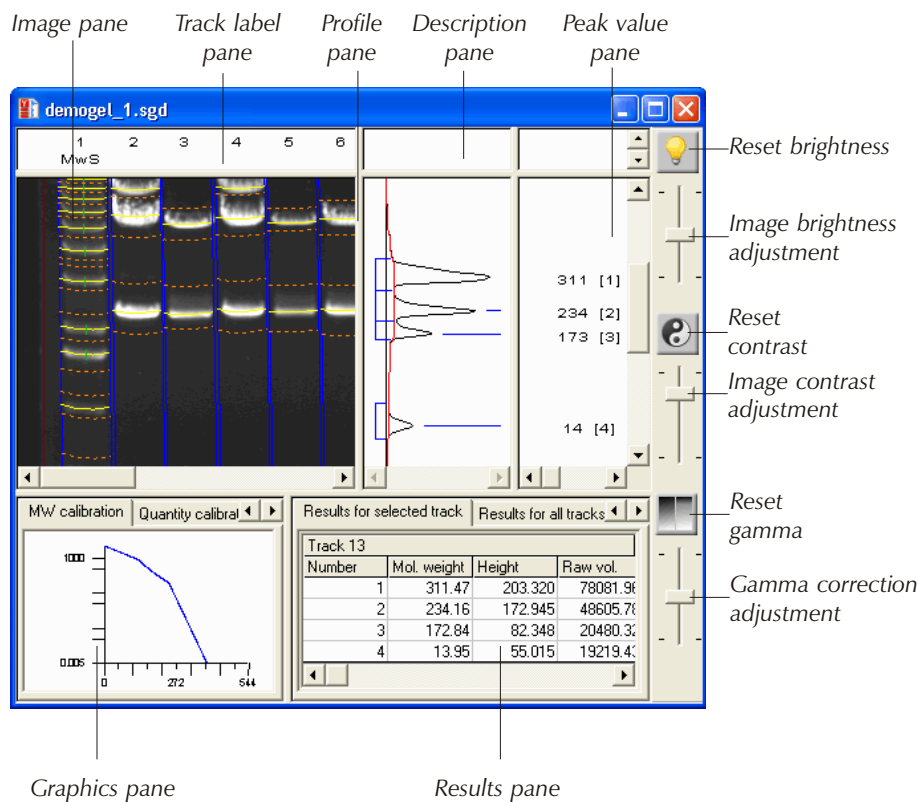
- Sample windows:
 - Gel window
 - Colony counting window
 - Spot blot/Manual band quantification window
- Molecular weight library window
- **Profile comparison** window.

This chapter describes how you use each of these.

The final sections in the chapter then describe how to use the image controls and the Histogram, which can be used with Gel, Colony counting and Spot blot/Manual band quantification windows – see page 6-33.

Gel windows

When you open a Gel or High Throughput Gel sample it is displayed in a Gel window:



Note The layout of the Gel window depends on the electrophoresis direction. If the direction is horizontal, the Track label pane is to the left of the Image pane and the Profile and Results panes are below the Image pane.

Adjusting the panes in a Gel window

To change the size of individual panes in the window:

- 1 Move the pointer over the pane border: the pointer will change to a double-headed arrow:



- 2 Press and drag the border to a new position.

To maximize the Graphics or Results pane so that it fills the Gel window:

- 1 Click in the pane to select it.
- 2 Choose **Maximize pane** from the **View** menu or the menu displayed when you right-click in the pane.

To return the pane to its normal size:

Choose **Maximize pane** again.

Or

Adjust the size of the Gel window.

Track label pane

The Track label pane shows:

- A number identifying each track
- Whether the track is enabled (black label) or disabled (gray label) – see the entries for **Enable** and **Disable** on the **Track** menu in the *Menus* chapter (page 8-100)
- The label **MwS**, **QuS** or **MQS** if the track is defined as a molecular weight, quantity or molecular weight and quantity standard – see the entry for **MW/quantity standard** on the **Track** menu in the *Menus* chapter (page 8-94)
- The label **MS** if the track is defined as a matching (but inactive) standard – see the entry for **Matching standard** on the **Track** menu in the *Menus* chapter (page 8-95).

- The label **MS*** if the track is defined as the active matching standard – see the entry for **Active matching standard** on the Track label context menu in the *Menus* chapter (page 8-149).

Note If there is more than one area of interest, the Track label pane shows these details for the selected area of interest.

You can right-click in the Track label pane to pop up a menu of commands for working with the selected track. All the commands on this menu can also be chosen from the **Track** menu apart from the additional **Active matching standard** command.

Description pane

The Description pane shows a description of the selected track – use **Description** in the **Tracks** menu to enter or edit the description (see page 8-100).

Image pane

The Image pane shows the gel or High Throughput Gel image. See *Image Controls*, page 6-33, for how to adjust the brightness and contrast for monochrome images.

View modes

When the tracks are locked in all areas of interest, you can choose whether the Image pane should display the original gel image with tracks marked on the image or display the tracks in aligned banks (see below for an explanation).

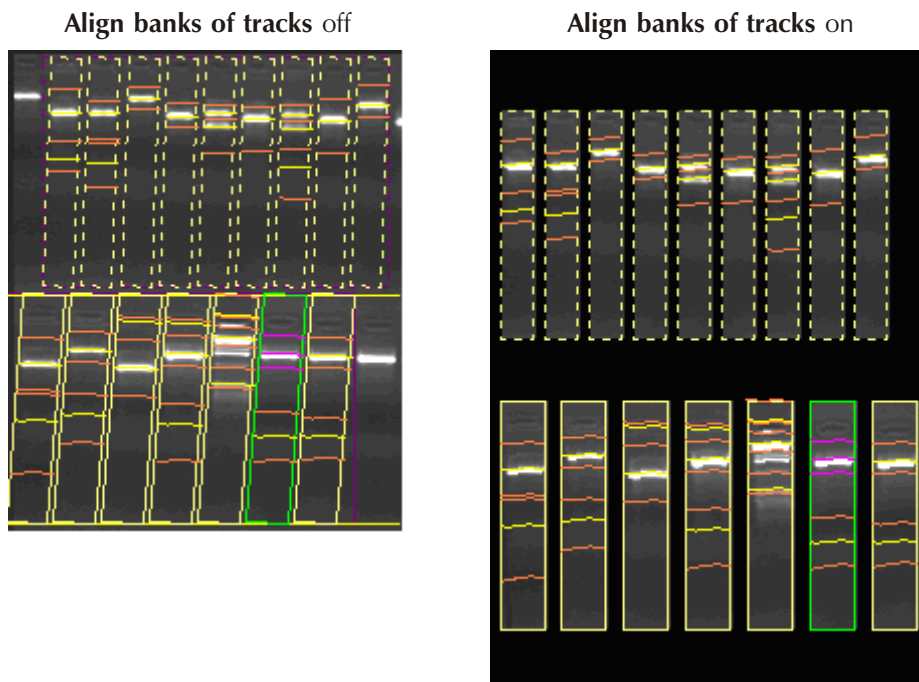
To switch aligned banks of tracks view on or off:

Choose **Align banks of tracks** from the **View** menu.

The command is checked in the menu when the Image pane shows banks of tracks.

When the Image pane shows banks of tracks, the image area within each track is cut out and, if it is skewed, transformed so that it is rectangular (see the note following the example pictures). The cut out tracks within each area of interest are then arranged in a horizontal bank of tracks with the tops aligned. The banks corresponding to the different areas of interest are then arranged one above the other.

For example:



Note The transformation of the track image to a rectangle is for display purposes only; all analysis is performed using the original image.

Viewing the tracks in aligned banks is particularly useful for High Throughput Gel samples and is automatically selected when you lock a High Throughput Gel sample, though you can deselect it if required.

When aligned banks of tracks view is on, the only way to unlock the tracks is using **Position all** in the **Track** menu or the Position all button. Unlocking the tracks in any area of interest switches aligned banks of tracks view off.

Working in the Image pane

You can change the magnification of the image by choosing **Zoom in**, **Zoom out** or **Zoom reset** from the **View** menu or by clicking on the equivalent tools in the Zoom toolbar.

For most gels, you can allow GeneTools to locate the tracks and peaks on the image completely automatically (see the entry for **Configuration** in the *Menus* chapter, page 8-139, for how to set GeneTools automatic modes), but you can also edit the results or carry out these operations manually, or semi-automatically (see the entries for the commands in the **Track** and **Peak** menus in the *Menus* chapter, pages 8-72 and 8-104, for details).

Note You can use automatic peak location but not automatic track location with High Throughput Gel samples.

You can also choose what information to superimpose on the image (see the entries for the commands in the **View** menu in the *Menus* chapter (page 8-63) for details).

If you right-click near a peak in the Image pane, a menu will pop up with commands for working with the selected peak – all the commands can also be chosen from the **Peak** menu, except for the **Edit manual baseline** and **Delete manual baseline commands**, which can be chosen from the **Track** menu.

Profile pane

The Profile pane shows the profile measured from the track selected in the Image pane.

Once peaks have been located, it also shows the position of the peaks and peak bounds – see *How to locate and edit peaks on a track* in the *Using GeneTools for Gel analysis* chapter (page 1-59) for more information on working with peaks.

You can right-click on a peak in the Profile pane to pop up a menu of commands for working with the selected peak – all the commands can also be chosen from the **Peak** menu except for the **Edit manual baseline** and **Delete manual baseline** commands, which can be chosen from the **Track** menu.

Peak value pane

The Peak value pane shows:

- Quantities for the peaks in the selected track if **Quantities** is selected in the **View** menu.
- Molecular weights for the peaks in the selected track if **Molecular weight** is selected in the **View** menu.
- Peak positions for the active matching standard if **Peak matching** is selected in the **View** menu.

If a molecular weight standard track is selected when the Peak value pane is showing molecular weights, only the assigned molecular weights are shown. You can unassign or reassign these molecular weights in the Peak value pane.

Graphics pane

The Graphics pane can show:

- The molecular weight calibration
- The quantity calibration
- The dendrogram.

Each of these is described in more detail later in this section.

Note If there is more than one area of interest, the Graphics pane shows these details for the selected area of interest.

To select the required graphical display:

Click on the tab for the graph (you may have to use the scroll bar if the tab you want is not visible).

Or

Choose **Molecular weight**, **Quantities** or **Peak matching** from the **View** menu.

The Graphics pane is linked to some of the other panes in the Gel window:

- Displaying the molecular weight calibration graph displays molecular weights in the Peak value pane. The Image pane will show peaks in molecular weight standard tracks with a short line across the peak marker if they have been assigned a molecular weight.
- Displaying the quantity calibration graph displays quantities in the Peak value pane and in the Image pane shows peaks that have been assigned a volume with a short line across the peak marker.
- Displaying the dendrogram displays matching comparisons in the Results pane and the peak values of the active matching standard in the Peak value pane. Provided **Match lines** is selected in the **View** menu, the Image pane will show matching lines between matching peaks.

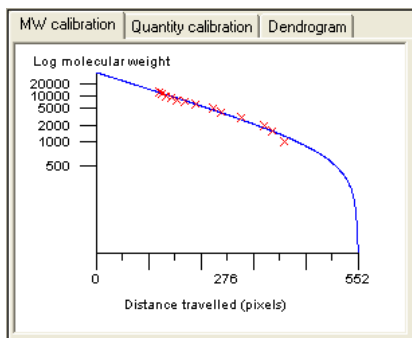
Note If profile matching is selected in the **Matching parameters** dialog box (see *Setting the method and parameters used for matching*, page 1-107), the matching comparisons pane will be blank and there will be no matching lines between peaks in the Image pane.

Similarly, displaying matching comparisons or the matching matrix in the Results pane displays the dendrogram in the Graphics pane.

See *Adjusting the panes in a Gel window*, page 6-3, for how to maximize the Graphics pane.

The molecular weight calibration graph

The molecular weight calibration graph is displayed in the Gel window's Graphics pane:



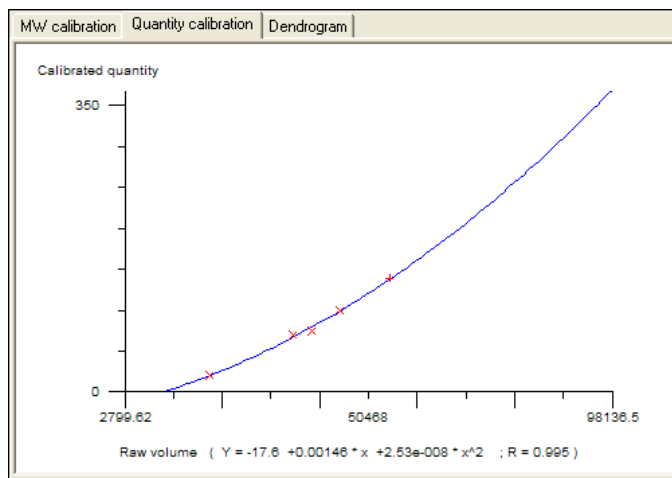
When a molecular weight standard track is selected in the Image pane, the calibration points are shown on the graph.

You can choose the shape of the calibration curve and how the calibration should be propagated to other tracks – see the entry for **Molecular weight calibration** in the *Menus* chapter, page 8-50.

You create the calibration graph by assigning molecular weights to peaks in one or more tracks that you have defined as molecular weight standards – see the entries for **MW/quantity standard**, page 8-94, and **Assign molecular weight** in the *Menus* chapter, page 8-104.

The quantity calibration graph

The quantity calibration graph is displayed in the Gel window's Graphics pane:



You can choose the shape of the calibration curve, how the calibration should be propagated to other tracks and the quantity units to use – see the entry for **Quantity calibration** in the *Menus* chapter, page 8-52.

The equation of the line or curve is shown in the **Raw volume** axis label along with the correlation coefficient (R), which is a measure of how well the calibration points can be fitted by a line or quadratic curve, depending on the selected calibration method (a value of 1 means a perfect fit).

The example shows a quadratic calibration; the calibration points don't quite lie on the curve so the **R** value is slightly less than 1.

The graph shows data points for all the calibration peaks (in the selected region of interest), not just the calibration peaks on the selected track. The graph also shows any non-calibration peaks in the selected track. Calibration data points are marked by \times ; non-calibration points by $+$. Non-calibration points always lie on the calibration curve; calibration points may not lie exactly on the calibration curve.

When you display the quantity calibration graph, the Peak value pane displays quantities for the peaks on the track selected in the Image pane.

You create the calibration graph by assigning quantities to one or more peaks in one or more tracks – see the entries for **MW/quantity standard**, page 8-94, and **Assign quantity** in the *Menus* chapter, page 8-110.

The dendrogram

Dendrograms are a graphical technique for displaying track similarity based on matching information. They represent hierarchical relationships using a tree-like structure, where the branch lengths represent the similarity between tracks. The shorter the branch lengths, the more similarly matched are the tracks.

Tracks are compared in pairs, starting with the two most similar. These two are then treated as one and compared to the other tracks. This process is then continued for all the tracks in the series. There are a number of different ways to calculate dendrograms depending on the linkage rule used. In GeneTools you can use the **Matching parameters** dialog box (see *Setting the method and parameters used for matching*, page 1-107) to choose between using either:

- **UPGMA**

In the Unweighted Pair-Group Method Average the distance between two clusters is calculated as the arithmetic mean of the distances between all items in the two clusters.

- **Neighbor joining**

The ‘neighbor-joining method’ was devised by Saitou and Nei (see *The Neighbor-joining Method: A New Method for Reconstructing Phylogenetic Trees* by Naruya Saitou and Masatoshi Nei, in *Mol. Biol. Evol.* **4** (4) 406-425). Quoting from the abstract to this paper:

A new method called the neighbor-joining methods is proposed for reconstructing phylogenetic trees from evolutionary distance data. The principle of this method is to find pairs of operational taxonomic units (OTU's [=neighbors]) that minimize the total branch length at each stage of clustering of OTU's starting with a starlike tree. The branch lengths as well as the topology of a parsimonious tree can quickly be obtained using the method.

(See also *Molecular phylogenetic analysis* by Georg F. Weiller, Marcella A. McClure and Adrian Gibbs in: *Molecular Basis of Virus Evolution* Eds. A. Gibbs, C. H. Calisher and F. Garcia-Arenal, Cambridge University Press.)

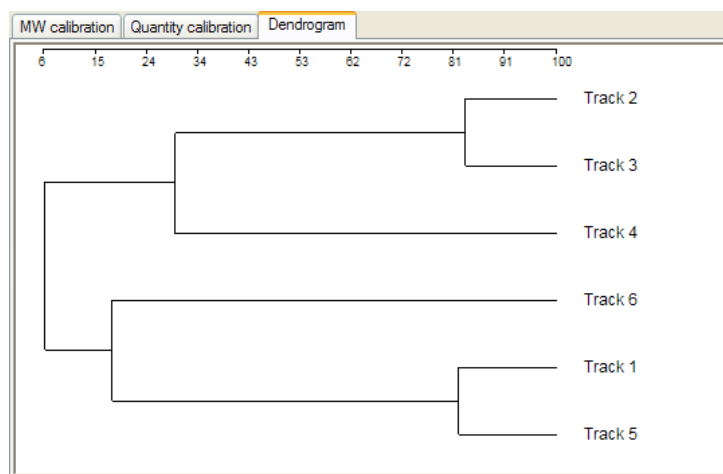
The neighbor-joining method can be used when evolution across the tree is expected to be non-constant. At each stage of clustering the total branch length is

minimized. The distance between two items is approximately the sum of the branch lengths between them. The trees are not right-aligned and branches can have negative values.

Dendrogram display

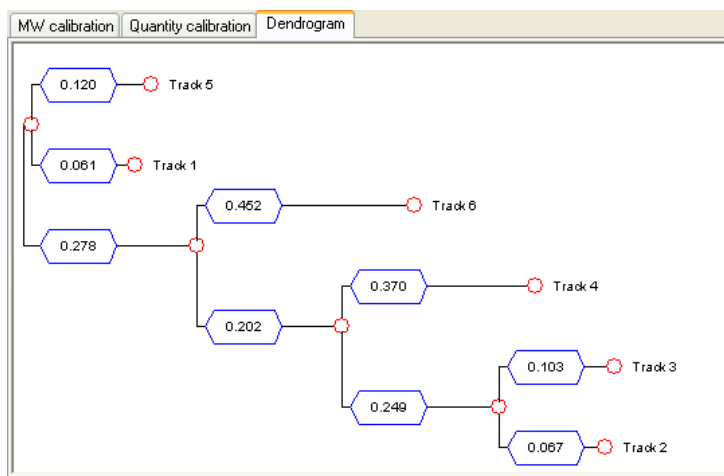
When you match tracks on a Gel sample, GeneTools automatically creates a dendrogram and displays it in the Gel window's Graphics pane (a dendrogram is also displayed in the **Profile comparison** window if you use it to carry out a matching – see **Profile comparison** window, page 6-18). The choice of linkage rule affects the way the dendrogram is displayed (as well as the values calculated). For example:

- **UPGMA**



The UPGMA dendrogram is right-aligned and drawn against a scale, which is shown along the top of the pane.

- **Neighbor joining**



The Neighbor-joining dendrogram is not right-aligned and the lengths of the individual branches are shown on the lines themselves.

If required, you can change the colors used for the Neighbor-joining dendrogram nodes and leaves – see page 8-143 for details.

If the dendrogram is larger than the Graphics pane, you can increase the size of the pane, scroll the dendrogram to view hidden parts or scale the dendrogram to fit the Graphics pane.

To scale the dendrogram to fit the Graphics pane:

- 1 Right-click in the dendrogram to display the dendrogram context menu.
- 2 Choose **Scale to fit**.

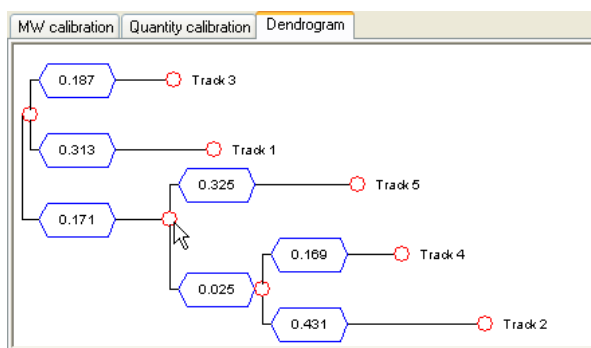
The dendrogram will be scaled to fit the Graphics pane:

- **Scale to fit** is checked in the dendrogram context menu when autoscaling is selected; choose the command again to switch autoscaling off.
- When **Scale to fit** is selected, if you resize the Graphics pane, the dendrogram will be rescaled so that it still fills the pane.

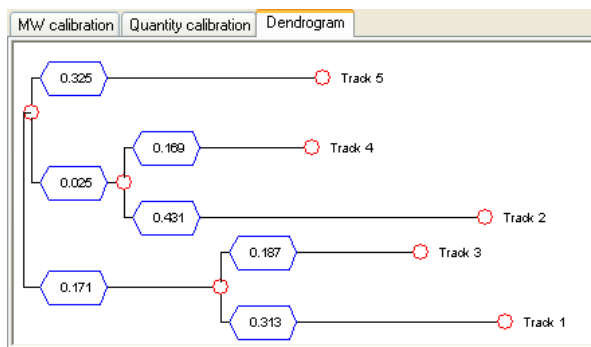
For the Neighbor-joining dendrogram you can choose which node in the tree to display at the root of the dendrogram.

To choose a different node to be the root of a Neighbor-joining dendrogram:

Click on the node in the dendrogram:



The dendrogram will be redisplayed with the selected node at the root:



Note that this only affects the way the tree is displayed – the correlation values and connectivity of the tree are unaffected.

Results pane

See *Adjusting the panes in a Gel window*, page 6-3, for how to maximize the Results pane.

The Results pane can show:

- the results for the track selected in the Image pane:

Results for selected track					Results for all tracks	Matching comparisons	Matching matrix	Similarity matrix
Track 4								
Number	Mol. weight	Height	Raw vol.	Base pairs				
1	900.00	8.219	2910.60	900				
2	743.80	7.950	3592.35	744				
3	681.14	23.538	9097.99	681				
4	610.63	42.692	20263.38	611				
5	68.02	6.873	4902.87	68				

See the next section for how to choose what information to include in the table.

- the results for all tracks (in the selected area of interest):

Results for selected track					Results for all tracks	Matching comparisons	Matching matrix	Similarity matrix
Track 3					Track 4			
Number	Mol. weight	Height	Raw vol.	Base pairs	Number	Mol. weight	Height	
1	812.84	11.978	3450.78	813	1	900.00	8.219	
2	673.21	10.854	5355.39	673	2	743.80	7.950	
					3	681.14	23.538	
					4	610.63	42.692	
					5	68.02	6.873	

See the next section for how to choose what information to include in the table.

- a table of matching comparisons (for the selected area of interest):

Results for selected track				Results for all tracks		Matching comparisons		Matching matrix		Similarity matrix	
Track 4 (Reference)				Track 5			Track 6				
Peak	Number	Mol. weight	Height	Number	Mol. weight	Height	Number	Mol. weight	Height		
1	1	982.73	5.520	1	983.54	120.029					
2	2	944.36	15.872		944.36	62.415					
3	3	871.55	13.306				2	900.00		143.197	
4	4	721.08	41.222				4	700.00		29.817	
5	5	632.46	76.495	5	621.45	14.138					
6	6	0.66	9.072								

See the next section for how to choose what information to include in the table.

Note The matching comparisons table is blank if there is no active matching standard track. In particular, it is always blank if **Profile** is selected as the matching type in the **Matching parameters** dialog box (see *Setting the method and parameters used for matching*, page 1-107).

- a matching matrix showing which peaks on the matching standard are matched on each of the matched tracks (for the selected area of interest):

Results for selected track				Results for all tracks	Matching comparisons	Matching matrix	Similarity matrix
Peak	Track 3	Track 4	Track 6				
1	X	X					
2		X					
3		X	X				
4	X	X	X				
5		X					
6		X					

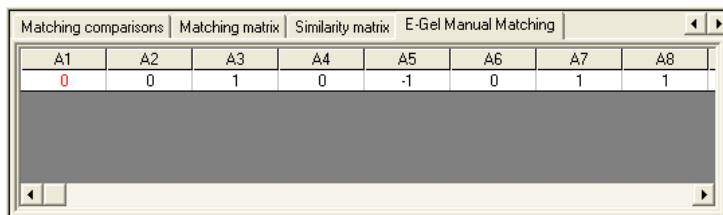
Note The matching matrix table is blank if there is no active matching standard track. In particular, it is always blank if **Profile** is selected as the matching type in the **Matching parameters** dialog box (see *Setting the method and parameters used for matching*, page 1-107).

- a similarity matrix of matching coefficients showing the correlation between matching peaks on different tracks (for the selected area of interest):

Results for selected track				Results for all tracks	Matching comparisons	Matching matrix	Similarity matrix
	Track 1	Track 2	Track 3	Track 4	Track 5	Track 6	
Track 1	1.000	0.000	0.500	0.286	0.286	0.000	
Track 2	0.000	1.000	0.286	0.400	0.200	0.143	
Track 3	0.500	0.286	1.000	0.444	0.222	0.154	
Track 4	0.286	0.400	0.444	1.000	0.500	0.250	
Track 5	0.286	0.200	0.222	0.500	1.000	0.000	
Track 6	0.000	0.143	0.154	0.250	0.000	1.000	

See *Similarity matrix*, page 1-114, for information about how the matching coefficients are calculated.

- for High Throughput Gels (Madge or E-Gel), a manual matching table allowing you to assign a matching result manually to each of the tracks:




A1	A2	A3	A4	A5	A6	A7	A8
0	0	1	0	-1	0	1	1

To change the matching result for a track:


- 1 Click in the track frame to select it.


Note You can change the matching results at any time: the sample can be locked or unlocked, and if unlocked, it can be in any track editing mode.

- 2 In the numeric keypad, press:

 to assign a matching result of **+1** to the track

 to assign a matching result of **0** to the track

 to assign a matching result of **-1** to the track (this is the default).

- 3 If required, press  to tab to the next track to set its matching result.

Choosing what information to show in results tables

To choose what information to include in the **Results for selected track**, **Results for all tracks** and **Matching comparisons** tables:

- 1 Click on the tab for the table you want to change.
- 2 Right-click on the table to pop up a menu.
- 3 Choose the parameter to add to or remove from the table.
- 4 Repeat for any other parameters you want to add or remove.

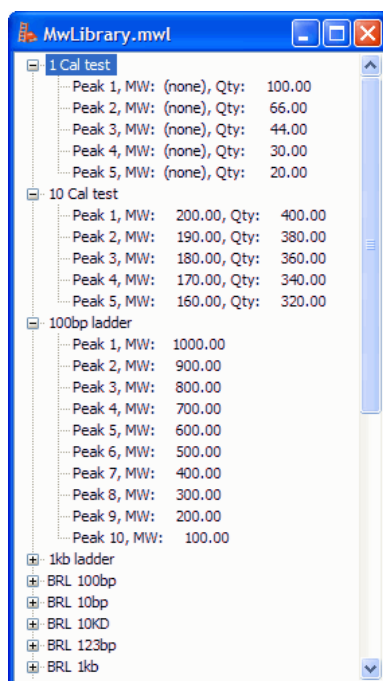
The commands for the parameters included in the table are checked in the menu.

Molecular weight library window

A molecular weight library is a collection of molecular weight/quantity standards. Each standard lists the molecular weights and/or quantities for a set of peaks. You use the library to calibrate a gel by assigning one of the standards contained in the library to one or more standard tracks in the gel. If you use the same standard solution for different gels, using a molecular weight library saves you entering the molecular weights/quantities individually for each peak in the standard tracks.

Note You can create as many other molecular weight libraries as you wish (see the entry for **New library** in the **File** menu in the *Menus* chapter – page 8-13), but you can only have one open at a time – see the entry for **Open library** in the *Menus* chapter, page 8-14. When you start up GeneTools, the default molecular weight library is opened automatically – see *Setting the default molecular weight library*, page 1-98, for how to specify the default library.

Molecular weight libraries can be viewed and edited in the Molecular weight library window:



In this example, the library **MwLibrary.mwl** contains two standards added by the user (**1 Cal test** containing quantities only and **10 Cal test** containing quantities and molecular weights) in addition to the molecular weight standards **100bp ladder**, **1kb ladder**, **BRL-100bp**, **BRL-10bp** etc, which are supplied with GeneTools.

You can expand or contract the display of each standard in the window to show or hide its list of peak values. For example, the display of **100bp ladder** is expanded in the picture above, but **1kb ladder** is contracted.

To expand the display of a standard:

Click on the + to the left of the standard's name.

To contract the display of a standard:

Click on the - to the left of the standard's name.

To close the Molecular weight library window:

- 1 Click in the window or choose it from the list at the bottom of the **Window** menu.
- 2 Choose **Close** from the **File** menu.

Clicking on the close button at the top right-hand corner of the Molecular weight library window only *minimizes* the window.

See *Working with molecular weight libraries*, page 1-92, for further details.

Profile comparison window

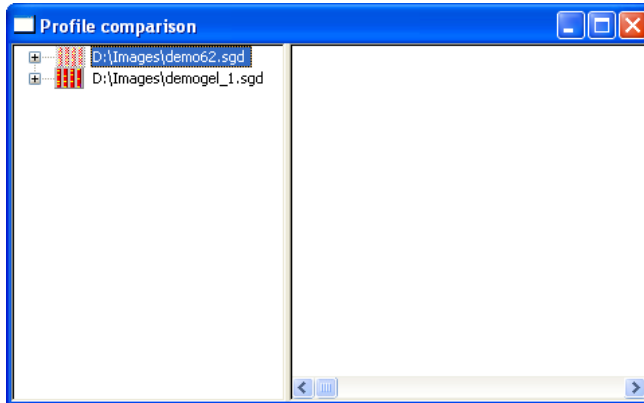
The **Profile comparison** window allows you to compare the profiles on different tracks (and different gels) by plotting them on the same axes. Additionally, if you have purchased the GeneTools Match software option, you can use the **Profile comparison** window to perform track matching between tracks, which may be in the same or different areas of interest, or even on different gels.

To display the **Profile comparison** window:

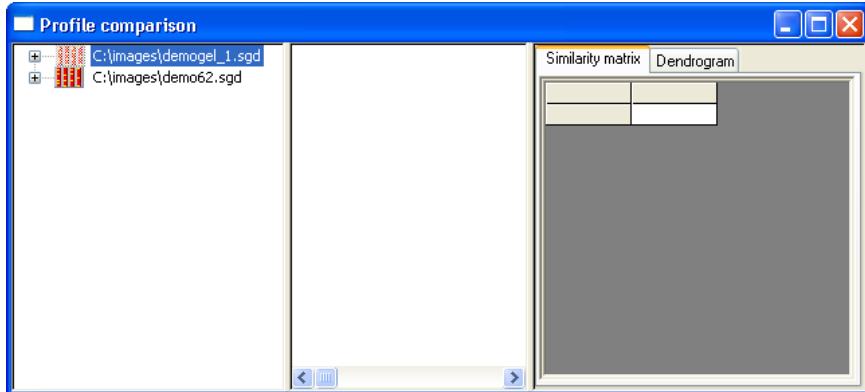
Choose **Profile comparison** from the **View** menu.

The **Profile comparison** window will open. The appearance of the window depends on whether the GeneTools Match software option is installed:

GeneTools Match software option not installed



GeneTools Match software option installed



The *Track browser* pane (the left-hand pane) shows the path and filenames for all the open Gel windows and allows you to select which tracks to include in the comparison.

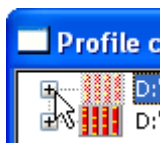
The *Profiles* pane (the right-hand pane for systems without the GeneTools Match software option; the center pane for systems with it) is used to plot the intensity profiles for the selected tracks.

The *Match results* pane (the right-hand pane for systems with the GeneTools Match software option; absent for systems without it) contains the similarity matrix and dendrogram tabs showing the matching results.

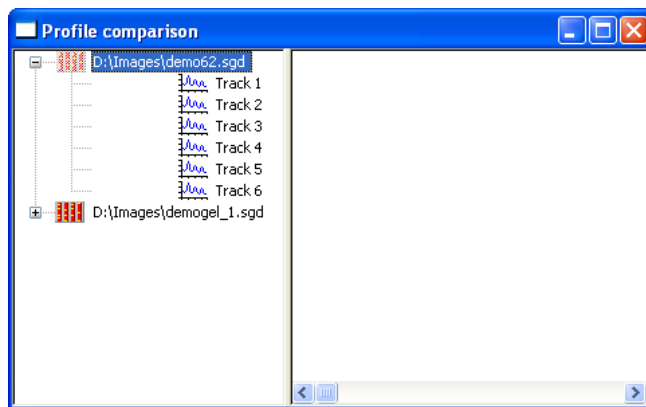
Viewing tracks

To view the tracks in the secure sample file(s) in the *Track browser* pane so that you can select them for comparison or matching:

Click on the + icon(s) next to the secure sample file(s) (or double-click anywhere else in the row):



to show the tracks in the file:



(Click on the - icon or double-click again anywhere else in the row to hide the tracks in the left-hand pane.)

Selecting tracks for a comparison

To choose which tracks to include in a comparison:

- 1 In the Track browser pane, click on the first track that you want to include in the comparison.

- 2 Choose **Show** from the **Profile** menu (or the menu displayed if you right-click on the track).

Or:

Just double-click on the track.

Or, to include all the tracks in a comparison:

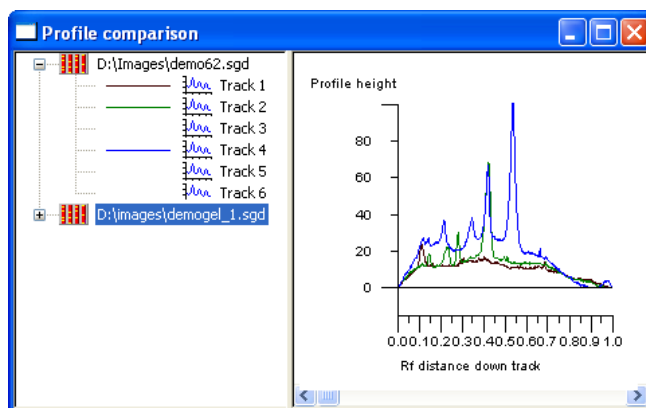
Choose **Show all** from the **Profile** menu.

Show will be checked in the menu when a profile is shown, a line showing the color used for drawing the profile will be shown next to the track in the left-hand pane and the profile will be drawn in the right-hand pane.

(Choosing **Show** again for the same track, or double-clicking again, removes the track from the comparison; choosing **Hide all** from the **Profile** menu removes all tracks from the comparison.)

Viewing profiles

After you have selected **Show**, the corresponding profile will be displayed in the Profiles pane:



(In the example all the profiles are for tracks on the same gel, but you can use the same procedure to include tracks from different files if you wish).

The profiles in the Profiles pane are drawn in the colors shown by the colored lines next to the tracks in the Track browser pane. You can use **Configuration** in the **Extras** menu to define the color for each of the profile lines – see page 8-143.

The vertical scale shows the image gray level. The default horizontal scale is the Rf value from 0, the Rf start position, to 1, the Rf end position (see *Adjusting the Rf start and end positions*, page 1-43, for how to set these), but if you have assigned molecular weights to a standard track, you can also use (log) molecular weight for the horizontal scale.

Note If the Band matching option is installed in your system, the parameter chosen for the horizontal scale also determines the alignment used when matching tracks in the **Profile comparison** window.

To choose whether to use Rf or (log) molecular weight for the horizontal scale for plotting profiles in the **Profile comparison** window:

Choose **MW** or **Rf** from the **View Plot mode** submenu.

Note If you choose **MW** and have not yet assigned molecular weights to a standard track, the profile plot will be blank – see *Assigning molecular weights/quantities to a standard track*, page 1-79.

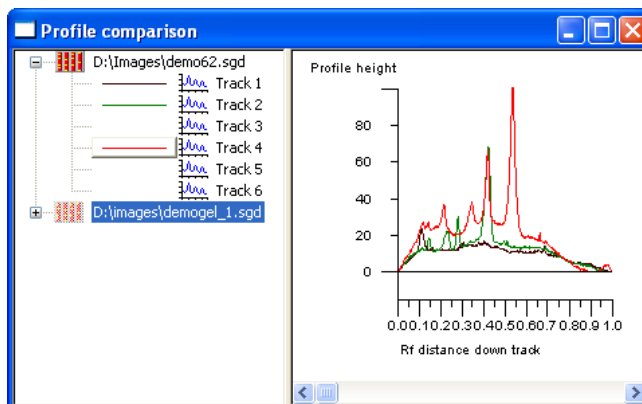
You can change the magnification of the horizontal scale in the **Profile comparison** window by choosing **Zoom in**, **Zoom out** or **Zoom reset** from the **View** menu, or by clicking on the equivalent tools in the Zoom toolbar. When you have zoomed the **Profile comparison** window, only part of the Rf/MW range is visible, but you can choose which part to view using the horizontal scroll bar.

Setting a reference track

Note If the Band matching option is installed in your system, the reference track will also be used as the Matching standard track for peak matching comparisons – see the following section for details.

To highlight one of the tracks in the comparison as a reference:

Select the track and choose **Reference** from the **Profile** menu (or the menu displayed if you right-click on the track):



Track 4 in the example is the reference track – it is highlighted in the Track browser pane and (by default) plotted in red in the profiles pane (you can use **Configuration** in the **Extras** menu to define the color used for the reference line – see page 8-143).

If you repeat this operation, the new track will become the reference – only one track in a comparison can be defined as the reference track.

If the track you define as the reference is not already included in the comparison, it will become shown in the comparison automatically. However, you can remove it from the comparison if required without it losing the status of being the reference – if you show it again, it will still be the reference, provided you have not chosen another track as the reference meanwhile.

Matching tracks in the Profile comparison window

If you have purchased the GeneTools Match software option, you can match tracks in the **Profile comparison** window as well as in Gel windows (see *How to match peaks on different tracks*, page 1-105, for how to match tracks in Gel windows). The two methods share many features, but one difference between the two techniques is that in a Gel window, you can only match peaks on tracks that lie within the same area of interest, while in the **Profile Comparison** window you can match tracks lying in different areas of interest, or even on different gels. On the other hand, if you match peaks in a Gel

window, you can get more detailed results in the form of the matching comparisons table and the similarity matrix, and you can edit matchings manually.

To choose how the matching should be performed:

Choose **Parameters** from the **Matching** menu to display the **Matching parameters** dialog box – see *Parameters*, page 8-118, for details.

In particular, you can choose whether to match bands (peaks) or profiles. When you match peaks, the detected peaks on each track are matched to the detected peaks on a selected matching reference track, so to carry out band matching, you must detect the peaks on the tracks and select a reference track (see previous section); neither of these steps is required for profile matching.

To choose which tracks to include in a match:

- 1 In the Track browser pane, click on the first track that you want to include in the match.
- 2 To add a single track to the matching:

Choose **Include selected in matching** from the **Matching** menu (or the context menu displayed if you right-click on the track).

(Choosing **Include selected in matching** again for the same track removes the track from the matching.)

Or, to include all the tracks in a matching:

Choose **Include all** from the **Matching** menu.

(To remove all of the tracks from the matching, choose **Exclude all** from the **Matching** menu.)

You must include at least three tracks in the matching – the tracks may be selected from the same gel or different gels. If you have chosen to carry out band matching in the **Matching parameters** dialog box, you must also select a reference track – see previous section.

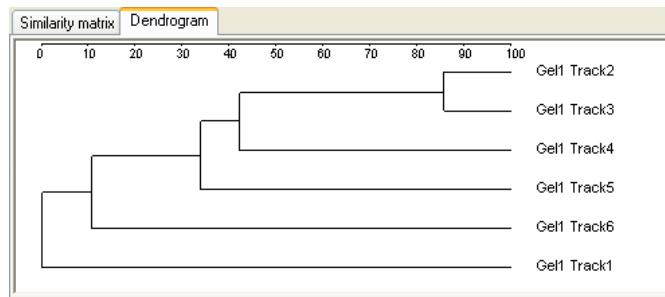
Matching results

When you have included at least three tracks in the matching, and selected a reference track if you have chosen to carry out band matching in the **Matching parameters** dialog box, the matching is carried out automatically and the results displayed in the Match results pane. The pane has two tabs:

- Similarity matrix

Similarity matrix		Dendrogram				
	Gel1 Track1	Gel1 Track2	Gel1 Track3	Gel1 Track4	Gel1 Track5	Gel1 Track6
Gel1 Track1	1.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000
Gel1 Track2	0.000	1.000	0.857	0.400	0.400	0.143
Gel1 Track3	0.000	0.857	1.000	0.444	0.444	0.154
Gel1 Track4	0.000	0.400	0.444	1.000	0.167	0.125
Gel1 Track5	0.000	0.400	0.444	0.167	1.000	0.000
Gel1 Track6	0.000	0.143	0.154	0.125	0.000	1.000

- Dendrogram



You can work with these results panes in exactly the same way as in the Gel window – see *The Results pane*, page 6-14, and *The Dendrogram*, page 6-10, for details.

Other Profile comparison window operations

See *Printing reports – Profile comparisons*, page 1-129, for how to print a report showing a Profile comparison.

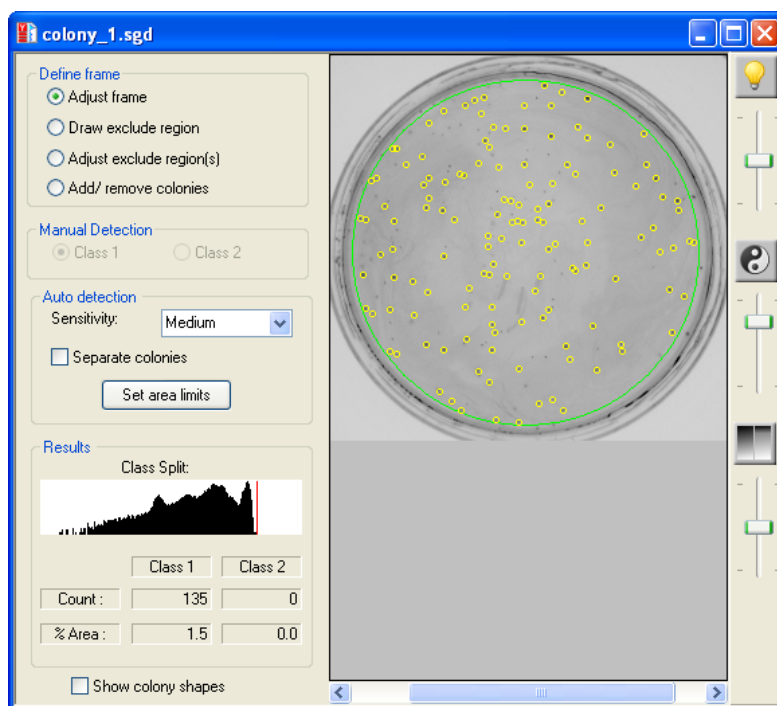
You can display a dialog box showing the properties of a track by selecting the track in the left-hand pane of the **Profile comparison** window and choosing **Properties** from

the **Profile** menu – see page 8-119 for details; see page 8-102 for pictures of the dialog box.

You can export the data points (Rf and height values) to Excel for a track by right-clicking on the track in the left-hand pane of the **Profile comparison** window to pop up a menu and choosing **Export To Excel** – see page 8-150.

Colony counting window

When you open a Colony counting sample it is opened in a Colony counting window:



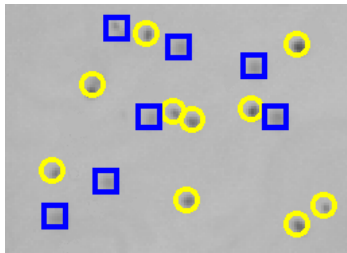
For a monochrome image you can use the image controls on the right-hand side of the window and the Histogram viewer to control the display of the image – see pages 6-33–6-35 for instructions.

GeneTools automatically counts the colonies within an elliptical frame on the image. You can move, reshape and resize the frame as required, and the results will be updated automatically. You can also define exclude regions on the image where

GeneTools will ignore any colonies. You use the radio buttons in the **Define frame** box to select the mode for adjusting the frame or for drawing or adjusting exclude regions.

The controls in the **Auto-detection** box allow you to set the parameters used by the colony detection software. You can also choose whether to highlight the areas of the image detected as colonies using the **Show colony shapes** check box at the bottom left-hand corner of the window.

The results are displayed in the results table in the **Results** box at the left-hand side of the Colony counting window. When the sample contains light or dark colonies only (but not both), you can use the Histogram in the **Results** box to define a boundary between two classes of colonies (light and lighter or dark and darker). When the sample contains both light and dark colonies, the Histogram is not displayed but the totals for dark and light colonies are shown separately as **Class 1** and **Class 2**. The colonies of each class are marked separately on the image: dark colonies are marked with circles and light colonies with squares:

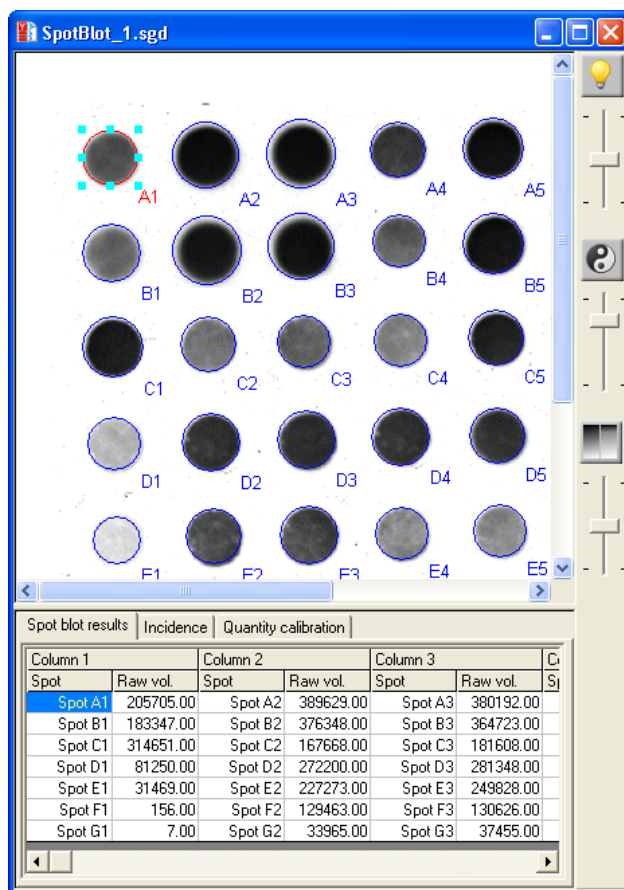


If you select **Add/remove colonies** in the **Define frame** box you can add or remove colonies from the count by double-clicking on the image – the **Manual Detection** radio buttons will be enabled so that you can choose which class of colonies to add or remove.

See *Getting started with Colony counting* in the *GeneTools Getting Started* manual for full instructions on using GeneTools to count colonies.

Spot blot/Manual band quantification window

When you open a Spot blot or Manual band quantification sample it is displayed in a Spot blot/Manual band quantification window:



The picture shows a gridded Spot blot sample (see Step 3 on page 4-4): the window can also show non-gridded Spot blot samples with circular and/or rectangular spot frames (for further details, see chapter 4 – *Using GeneTools for Spot blot analysis*), and Manual band quantification samples with rectangular measurement boxes (for further details, see *Getting started with Manual band quantification* in the *GeneTools Getting Started* manual).

For a monochrome image you can use the image controls on the right-hand side of the window and the Histogram viewer to control the display of the image – see pages 6-33–6-35 for instructions.

The Spot blot/Manual band quantification window is split into two parts:

- The Image pane
- The Results/Incidence/Calibration graph pane.

You can adjust the position of the split in the same way as for the Gel window (see page 6-3).

Image pane

The upper part of the Spot blot/Manual band quantification window shows the Spot blot or Manual band quantification image.

You can change the magnification of the image by choosing **Zoom in**, **Zoom out** or **Zoom reset** from the **View** menu or by clicking on the equivalent tools in the Zoom toolbar.

For a Spot blot sample, you can use GeneTools to locate a grid of circular spot frames over the spots on the sample, or place individual circular or rectangular frames; for a Manual band quantification sample, you can place rectangular or free hand boxes over the bands.

The spot frames and boxes define the area within which GeneTools measures quantities from the spots or bands. You can move the frames or boxes (see page 4-26) and resize them (see page 4-21). For Spot blot samples, you can change the shape of the frames from circular to rectangular and vice versa.

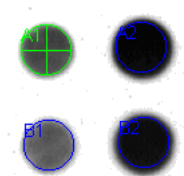
The spot frames or boxes on the image are identified by labels:

- If a Spot blot sample is gridded, the label consists of a letter identifying the row and a number identifying the column in the grid.
- If the sample is a Manual band quantification sample or a non-gridded Spot blot sample, the label is a number that shows the order in which the spot frames or boxes were added.

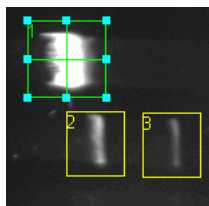
You can select a spot frame or box by clicking on it. The selected frame or box is identified by color (you can use **Configuration** in the **Extras** menu to set the color – see page 8-143).

For a gridded Spot blot sample, if **Position** is selected in the **Spots** menu, you can double-click on a spot frame to set it as a 'positioning point'; double-click again to unset it. Positioning points are identified by color (you can use **Configuration** in the **Extras** menu to set the color – see page 8-143). When you drag a positioning point, you adjust the position of the other spot frames, not just the selected frames. You can set more than one positioning point – any other positioning points act as fixed anchors for the grid when you drag a positioning point. See *How to adjust the spot frame positions*, page 4-26, for how to move the spot frames on the image.

When you assign a quantity to a spot frame or box to calibrate quantity measurements, the frame or box is marked with a cross:



or



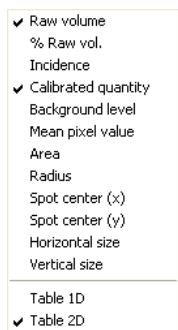
Results/Incidence/Calibration graph pane

Results page

Click on the **Spot blot results** (or **Manual band quantification results**) tab to display the results page in a Spot blot/Manual band quantification window.

To choose what parameters to show in the Results table:

- 1 Right-click on the table to display the Spot blot results context menu:



- 2 Click on the required parameter in the list at the top of the menu to add it to or remove it from the Results table.

If a Spot blot sample is gridded, you can choose whether to display the results in a one- or two-dimensional table (Manual band quantification results and non-gridded Spot blot results are always displayed in a one-dimensional table).

To choose whether to display Spot blot results for a gridded Spot blot sample in a one- or two-dimensional table:

- 1 Click on the Spot blot results tab.
- 2 Right-click in the table to display the Spot blot/Manual band quantification window Results pane context menu.
- 3 Choose **Table 1D** or **Table 2D**.

The selected command will become checked in the menu.

In a one-dimensional table, the results for the first row of spots are given first, then the second row and so on.

Incidence page

Click on the **Incidence** tab to display the **Incidence** page in a Spot blot/Manual band quantification window:

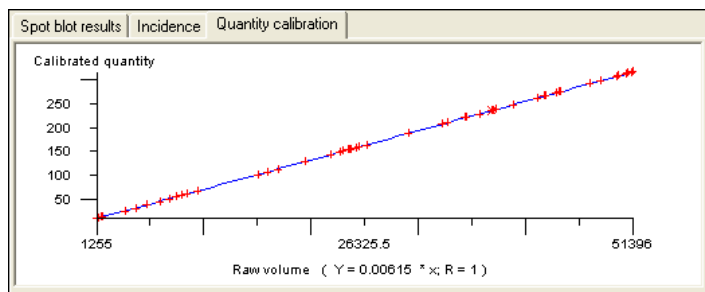
Spot blot results Incidence Quantity calibration							
Column 1		Column 2		Column 3		Column 4	
Spot	Incidence	Spot	Incidence	Spot	Incidence	Spot	Incidence
Spot A1	X	Spot A2	X	Spot A3	X	Spot A4	X
Spot B1		Spot B2	X	Spot B3	X	Spot B4	
Spot C1	X	Spot C2		Spot C3		Spot C4	
Spot D1		Spot D2	X	Spot D3	X	Spot D4	X
Spot E1		Spot E2	X	Spot E3	X	Spot E4	
Spot F1		Spot F2		Spot F3		Spot F4	X
Spot G1		Spot G2		Spot G3		Spot G4	

The picture shows the **Incidence** page for a gridded Spot blot sample (see Step 3 on page 4-4). For non-gridded Spot blot samples and Manual band quantification samples the matrix consists of a single column.

The matrix shows whether each spot or box satisfies an incidence condition defined using **Spot incidence parameters** in the **Spots** menu – see *How to define an incidence condition*, page 4-39.

Quantity calibration page

Click on the **Quantity calibration** tab to display the **Quantity calibration** page in a Spot blot/Manual band quantification window:



The graph shows the points corresponding to all the spot frames or boxes on the image (not just the calibration points).

You can choose the shape of the calibration curve and the units – see *How to set the quantity calibration method*, page 4-33.

You create the calibration graph by assigning quantities to one or more spot frames or boxes on the image – see page 4-34.

Image controls

For a monochrome image the image controls on the right-hand side of Sample windows allow you to control the way the image is displayed on the screen and the way it is printed in reports (see the next section for how to use the Histogram viewer as an alternative for changing the way the image is displayed).

Note 1 The settings of the image controls have no effect on the way GeneTools analyzes the images (for example when it locates tracks and peaks, or measures quantities) – GeneTools always uses the original data for analysis.

Note 2 The image controls do not appear if the window contains a full color image.

To adjust the brightness of the image:

Drag the Image brightness slider control.

To restore the original image brightness:



Press the Reset brightness button.

To adjust the contrast of the image:

Drag the Image contrast slider control.

To restore the original contrast brightness:



Press the Reset contrast button.

To adjust the gamma correction of the image:

Drag the Gamma correction slider control.

Windows

To restore the original gamma correction for the image:



Press the Reset gamma correction button.

Note Gamma correction allows you to adjust the midtones in an image without changing the lightest and darkest tones – it determines the shape of the response curve between the black and white points, which are fixed by the brightness and contrast settings.

The Histogram viewer

To show or hide the Histogram viewer:

Choose **Histogram** from the **View** menu.

The Histogram viewer displays a histogram showing the distribution of intensities in the image:



The horizontal axis shows the possible intensity values in the image from 0 to the maximum (the example is taken from an 8-bit image so the maximum intensity is 255; the maximum for a 16-bit image would be 65535, and so on).

The Histogram viewer displays two vertical red cursor lines on the histogram. These are the black and white value cursors – pixels in the image with the intensity value at or outside the black value cursor will be shown as black on the screen; pixels with the intensity value at or outside the white value cursor will be shown as white on the screen; pixels with values between the cursors will be shown in tones of gray intermediate between black and white.

Note The exact relationship between the intensity value and the gray tone for pixels with values lying between the cursors is determined by the gamma correction value.

To adjust the image display using the Histogram viewer:

- 1 Move the pointer over the black or white value cursor, depending on which one you want to move. The pointer will change shape to show that you can move the cursor:



- 2 Drag the cursor to its new position:



In this example the black value cursor has been dragged to the lowest intensity value actually appearing in the image, so pixels with this value will now be shown in black rather than dark gray – the effect is to increase the contrast without losing any information. In general, you can adjust the position of the cursors to expand the contrast to show details of interest.

Dragging the black or white value cursor is equivalent to a combination of adjusting the contrast and brightness sliders – you can see the sliders adjust as you drag a cursor. Similarly, adjusting the contrast or brightness slider is equivalent to a combination of dragging the black and white value cursors – again you can see the cursors adjust as you drag a slider.

To reset the brightness and contrast:

Double-click in the Histogram viewer.

Toolbars

GeneTools has a number of toolbars with buttons that provide shortcuts to using menu commands. GeneTools automatically shows and hides the toolbars depending on what type of window is selected. However, you can also show or hide toolbars manually.

To show or hide a toolbar:

Choose the toolbar's name from the **View** **Toolbars** submenu.

The command is checked in the menu when the toolbar is shown.

The rest of this chapter summarizes the function of each button.

The Standard toolbar



The Standard toolbar is always displayed.

Open



Press the Open button to open a secure sample file.

Pressing the Open button is equivalent to choosing **Open** from the **File** menu.

Save



Press the Save button to save the secure sample file in the selected Sample window or molecular weight library in the selected library window.

Pressing the Save button is equivalent to choosing **Save** from the **File** menu.

Toolbars

Help



Press the context-sensitive Help button to display Help for a menu command, button or window area.

When you press the context-sensitive Help button, the pointer changes to a question mark. Use this pointer to select a menu command, or click on a button or window area to display the help.

Sample properties



Press the sample properties button to view or edit the settings and notes for a secure sample file.

Pressing the sample properties button is equivalent to choosing **Sample properties** from the **File** menu.

Report toolbar



The Report toolbar is displayed when any Sample window or the **Profile Comparison** window is selected.

Report setup



Press the Report setup button to choose what information to print in Sample reports.

Pressing the Report setup button is equivalent to choosing **Report setup** from the **File** menu.

Preview



Press the Preview button to preview a report on the contents of the selected window before it is printed.

Pressing the Preview button is equivalent to choosing **Preview** from the **File** menu.

Print



Press the Print button to print a report on the contents of the selected window.

Pressing the Print button is equivalent to choosing **Print** from the **File** menu.

Export table to Excel



Press the Export table to Excel button to export the contents of the selected Results pane page to Excel.

Pressing the Export table to Excel button is equivalent to choosing **Export table to Excel** from the **File** menu.

Save table to CSV file



Press the Save table to CSV file button to export the contents of the selected Results pane page to a comma separated values format file.

Pressing the Save table to CSV file button is equivalent to choosing **Save table to CSV file** from the **File** menu.

Export to Word



Press the Export to Word button to create a report in a Word document.

Pressing the Export to Word button is equivalent to choosing **Export to Word** from the **File** menu.

Save to clipboard



Press the Save to clipboard button to copy a picture of the image in the Image pane in the current window to the clipboard.

Pressing the Save to clipboard button is equivalent to choosing **Save to clipboard** from the **File** menu.

Track toolbar



The Track toolbar is displayed when a Gel window is selected (some tools are disabled when the window contains a High Throughput Gel sample).

Locate tracks



Press the Locate tracks button to locate the tracks automatically in the selected area of interest on the image in the selected Gel window.

Pressing the Locate tracks button is equivalent to choosing **Locate tracks** from the **Track** menu.

Lock all



Press the Lock all button to lock the tracks on the image (in the selected area of interest) in the selected Gel window.

When the tracks are locked, **Lock all** is checked in the menu and the button is shown as depressed in the toolbar.

You need to lock the tracks before you can perform any of the functions that require the program to analyze the image along the tracks, such as locating the peaks, and assigning and calculating molecular weights and quantities

Tracks are unlocked when you choose any of the following tools for editing the tracks: **Position All**, **Splay All**, **Move/tilt**, **Width**, **Rf start** and **Rf end**.

Pressing the Lock all button is equivalent to choosing **Lock all** from the **Track** menu.

Position all



Press the Position all button to adjust the horizontal and vertical position of all the tracks (in the selected area of interest) on the image in the selected Gel window.

Pressing the Position all button is equivalent to choosing **Position all** from the **Track** menu.

Splay all



Press the Splay all button to adjust the amount by which the tracks are splayed and the overall position of all the tracks (in the selected area of interest) on the image in the selected Gel window.

Pressing the Splay all button is equivalent to choosing **Splay all** from the **Track** menu.

Move/tilt



Press the Move/tilt button to adjust the position of a single track on the image (in the selected area of interest) in the selected Gel window.

Pressing the Move/tilt button is equivalent to choosing **Move/tilt** from the **Track** menu.

Width



Press the Width button to adjust the width of individual tracks, if **Width individual** is selected in the **Track** menu, or all tracks (in the selected area of interest), if **Width individual** is not selected, on the image in the selected Gel window.

Pressing the Width button is equivalent to choosing **Width** from the **Track** menu.

Rf start position



Press the Rf start position button to adjust the position of the Rf start line (in the selected area of interest) on the image in the selected Gel window.

Pressing the Rf start position button is equivalent to choosing **Rf start position** from the **Track** menu.

Rf end position



Press the Rf end position button to adjust the position of the Rf end line (in the selected area of interest) on the image in the selected Gel window.

Pressing the Rf end position button is equivalent to choosing **Rf end position** from the **Track** menu.

Zoom toolbar



The Zoom toolbar is displayed when any Sample window or the **Profile Comparison** window is selected.

Zoom in



Press the Zoom in button to increase the magnification of the image in the selected Sample window, or the horizontal scale in the **Profile comparison** window, whichever is selected.

Pressing the Zoom in button is equivalent to choosing **Zoom in** from the **View** menu.

Zoom out



Press the Zoom out button to decrease the magnification of the image in the selected Sample window, or the horizontal scale in the **Profile comparison** window, whichever is selected.

Pressing the Zoom out button is equivalent to choosing **Zoom out** from the **View** menu.

Zoom reset



Press the Zoom reset button to reset the size of the image in the selected Sample window, or the horizontal scale in the **Profile comparison** window, whichever is selected, to the default.

Pressing the Zoom reset button is equivalent to choosing **Zoom reset** from the **View** menu.

Calibrations toolbar



The Calibrations toolbar is displayed when a Gel window is selected.

Integration parameters



Press the Integration parameters button to set, view or change the parameters used for analyzing the image.

Pressing the Integration parameters button is equivalent to choosing **Integration parameters** from the **Edit** menu.

Quantity calibration



Press the Quantity calibration button to set, view or change the calibration method and units for quantity determinations (in the selected area of interest).

Pressing the Quantity calibration button is equivalent to choosing **Quantity calibration** from the **Edit** menu.

Assign quantity



Press the Assign quantity button to assign a quantity to the selected peak.

Pressing the Assign quantity button is equivalent to choosing **Assign quantity** from the **Peak** menu.

Molecular weight calibration



Press the Molecular weight calibration button to specify how molecular weights should be calculated from assigned molecular weights on molecular weight standard tracks (in the selected area of interest).

Pressing the Molecular weight calibration button is equivalent to choosing **Molecular weight calibration** from the **Edit** menu.

Toolbars

MW/quantity standard



Press the MW/quantity standard button to define the selected track as a molecular weight standard (for the selected area of interest) if it isn't one already, and to assign molecular weights to peaks in the track. If the track is already a molecular weight standard, pressing the MW/quantity standard button removes its status as a molecular weight standard.

Pressing the MW/quantity standard button is equivalent to choosing **MW/quantity standard** from the **Track** menu.

Profile comparison window



Press the Profile comparison window button to open the **Profile comparison** window.

Pressing the **Profile comparison** window button is equivalent to choosing **Profile comparison** from the **View** menu when a Gel window is selected.

Database toolbar

Note The Database toolbar is only available if you have purchased the GeneDirectory option.



The Database toolbar is displayed when a Gel window is selected.

Archive gel to database



Press the Archive gel to database button to archive gel data in GeneTools to the connected GeneDirectory database.

Pressing the Archive gel to database button is equivalent to choosing **Archive gel to database** from the **Database** menu.

Open GeneDirectory



Press the Open GeneDirectory button to open the connected database in GeneDirectory.

Pressing the Open GeneDirectory button is equivalent to choosing **Open GeneDirectory** from the **Database** menu.

Connect to database



Press the Connect to database button to select and connect GeneTools to a GeneDirectory database so that you can archive gene data.

Pressing the Connect to database button is equivalent to choosing **Connect to database** from the **Database** menu.

Peak matching toolbar

Note This is only available if you have purchased the GeneTools Match software option.



The Peak Matching toolbar is displayed when a Gel window is selected.

Band matching



Press the Band matching button to specify how peaks should be matched between tracks (in the selected area of interest).

Pressing the Band matching button is equivalent to choosing **Band matching** from the **Edit** menu.

Matching standard



Press the Matching standard button to define the selected track as a matching standard (for the selected area of interest) if it isn't one already. If the track is already a matching standard, pressing the Matching standard button removes its status as a matching standard.

Pressing the Matching standard button is equivalent to choosing **Matching standard** from the **Track** menu.

Spot blot toolbar



The Spot blot toolbar is displayed when a Spot blot/Manual band quantification window is selected (some tools are disabled when the window contains a Manual band quantification sample).

All spots same size



Press the All spots same size button to force all spots or boxes to be the same size as the selected spot or box.

Pressing the All spots same size button is equivalent to choosing **All spots same size** from the **Spots** menu.

Position control points



Press the Position control points button to unlock the spot frames on a gridded Spot blot image so that you can move or reshape the grid using control points. The spot frames are also unlocked so that you can change their size and, in the case of rectangular spot frames, their shape using the mouse. The button is shown as depressed when the spot frames are unlocked; press the button again to lock them.

Pressing the Position control points button is equivalent to choosing **Position control points** from the **Spots** menu.

Locate



Press the Locate button to display the **Spot Location Tool** dialog box so that you can set the spot location parameters and locate the positions of the spots on a Spot blot image automatically.

Pressing the Locate button is equivalent to choosing **Locate** from the **Spots** menu.

Position any spot



Press the Position any spot button so that you can adjust the position of individual spots on a Spot blot or Manual band quantification image.

Pressing the Position any spot button is equivalent to choosing **Position any spot** from the **Spots** menu.

Background correction



Press the Background correction button to display the **Background correction** dialog box so that you can apply or remove background correction to the raw volume measurements from the image.

Pressing the Background correction button is equivalent to choosing **Background correction** from the **Spots** menu.

Lock position



Press the Lock position button to lock the sizes and positions of the spot frames on a Spot blot or Manual band quantification image so that they cannot be adjusted with the mouse or deleted. The button is shown as depressed when the spot frames are locked; press the button again to unlock them.

Pressing the Lock position control points button is equivalent to choosing **Lock position** from the **Spots** menu.

Spot incidence parameters



Press the Spot incidence parameters button to display the **Spot incidence parameters** dialog box so that you can set the conditions used to define the Incidence matrix.

Pressing the Spot incidence parameters button is equivalent to choosing **Spot incidence parameters** from the **Spots** menu.

Toolbars

Circle



Press the Circle button to change the selected rectangular spot frame to be circular.

Pressing the Circle button is equivalent to choosing **Circle** from the **Spots** menu.

Rectangle



Press the Rectangle button to change the selected circular spot frame to be rectangular.

Pressing the Rectangle button is equivalent to choosing **Rectangle** from the **Spots** menu.

Free hand



Press the Free hand button to draw a free hand box over a band on a Manual band quantification sample

Note This command only applies to Manual band quantification samples.

Pressing the Free hand button is equivalent to choosing **Free hand** from the **Spots** menu.

Quantity calibration parameters



Press the Quantity calibration parameters button to set or view the calibration method and units for quantity determination.

Pressing the Quantity calibration parameters button is equivalent to choosing **Quantity calibration** from the **Edit** menu.

Assign quantity

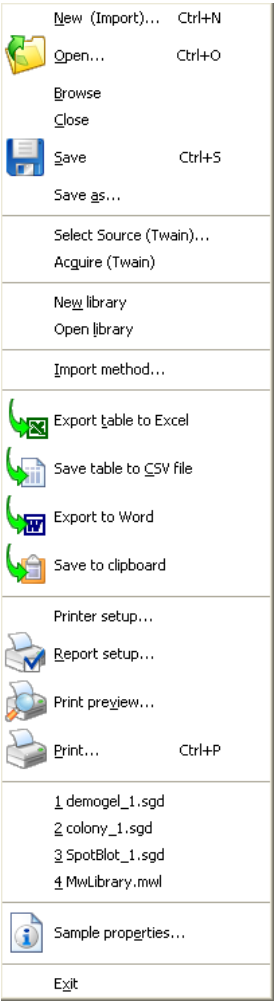


Press the Assign quantity button to assign a quantity to the selected spot frame.

Pressing the Assign quantity button is equivalent to choosing **Assign quantity** from the **Spots** menu.

Menus

File (Sample and Profile comparison windows)



Menus

This section describes all of the commands appearing on the **File** menu when a Sample window or the **Profile comparison** window is selected; the following section describes the **File** menu when a Molecular weight library window is selected (see the *Windows* chapter (chapter 6) for information about the different types of window).

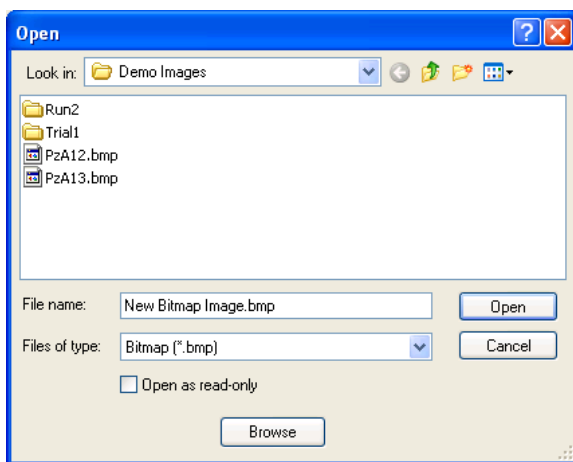
The picture shows the **File** menu when a Gel window is selected. Some commands are hidden and some are disabled when other types of Sample window or the **Profile comparison** window are selected – the entry for each command says if it is not available for all types.

New (Import)

Note This command is disabled when the **Profile comparison** window is selected.

To create a new secure sample file (for example, from a non-secure .tif or .bmp image file):

- 1 Choose **New (Import)** from the **File** menu to display a standard Windows **Open** dialog box:



- 2 Choose the type of image file from the **Files of type** drop-down list box.
- 3 Use the **Look in** drop-down list box to select the folder containing the image file.
- 4 Click on the file in the list box to select it – the name of the file will appear in the **File name** box.

- 5 Press **Open** to close the dialog box and go on to the next step in the procedure.

What happens next depends on whether you have set **Auto import methods** and you have selected a secure sample file as the source for the settings to import:

- If you have, the **Import method** dialog box will open so that you can choose which settings to import. For further details, see, for example, *Opening or creating a secure sample file with automatic import*, page 1-16.
 - Otherwise, go to Step 6.
- 6 The **Sample properties** dialog box will open so that you can set the type of image and make other settings:



- 7 Choose the type of image from the **Analysis type** box – see **Configuration** in the **Extras** menu (page 8-139) for how to set the default **Analysis type**.

8 For a **Gel** sample:

- a** The **Image type** is detected automatically, but you can change it if you want to.
- b** Click on a radio button to specify the **Electrophoresis direction**.
- c** If you just want to work with a single area of interest on the image, leave the numbers of **Columns** and **Rows** set to **1**.

If you want to define a grid of several areas of interest on the image, enter the numbers of **Columns** and **Rows** in the grid.

- d** For each of the areas of interest, click in it on the image to select it (drag handles appear at the corners and on the sides of the rectangle defining the area when it is selected):
 - i** To move the area of interest, drag it on the preview, avoiding the drag handles.
 - ii** To define the size and shape of the area of interest, drag the handles.
 - iii** To choose automatic track detection for the area, press **Locate tracks automatically**.

Note In nearly all cases the GeneTools automatic track location will be able to locate the tracks on the gel correctly and position track markers over them accurately without further assistance, and this is the recommended way of working with GeneTools. However, very occasionally you may have a gel that causes problems, and if automatic track location fails to identify the tracks correctly, you can redisplay the **Sample properties** dialog box (by repeating this complete procedure or by choosing **Sample properties** from the **File** menu), and then check **Hint** and enter the approximate number of **tracks** in the area of interest.

To choose manually how many tracks you want to place in the area of interest, press the **Create** radio button to enable the **tracks for manual positioning** spin box and enter the number of tracks you want to place in that area of interest. The tracks will be placed at default positions and you will need to position them manually later.

Note The **Leave the tracks unchanged** radio button is only enabled when the **Sample properties** dialog box is displayed for an existing analyzed sample (see the entry for **Sample properties** in the *File (Gel)* section in the *Menus* chapter (page 8-28)).

For a **Colony (pour plate)** sample:

The **Image type** is detected automatically, but you can change it if you want to – in particular, you will need to set

Light and dark colonies manually if required.

For a **Spot blot** sample:

- a** The **Image type** is detected automatically, but you can change it if you want to.
- b** Choose the shape of spot frames to apply from the **Spot type** box.
- c** Do one of:
 - Press **Locate spots automatically** if you want GeneTools to detect the positions of the spots automatically:
 - Check **Gridded** if you want GeneTools to place a grid of spot frames over the spots it detects.
 - Uncheck **Gridded** if you want GeneTools to detect the spots automatically and place an individual spot frame over each one.
 - Press **Create spots for manual positioning** to place a rectangular grid of spot frames in a default position on the image:
 - Enter the number of **Columns** and **Rows** you want to appear in the grid.
 - Press **Leave the spots unchanged** if you do not want to put any spot frames on the image yet – you will be able to add spots manually later.

For a **Manual Band Quantification** sample:

The **Image type** is detected automatically, but you can change it if you want to.

For a **High Throughput Gel** sample:

a Select the type of High Throughput Gel analysis you are using from the **Gel type** drop-down list box. You can choose:

- Madge 71.6 degree rotation
- Madge 78.7 degree rotation
- E-Gel 96

b The **Image type** is detected automatically, but you can change it if you want to.

c Click on a radio button to specify the **Electrophoresis direction**.

d If you are opening a 96-well sample, leave the **Number of columns** and **Number of rows** set to **1**.

If you are working with a 192-well sample, set the **Number of columns** to **2** and the **Number of rows** to **1** if the two sets of tracks are side-by-side; set the **Number of rows** to **2** and the **Number of columns** to **1** if the two sets of tracks are one above the other.

Note Areas of interest can overlap with each other.

e For each of the areas of interest (shown by a red box on the image), click in it on the image to select it (drag handles appear at the corners and on the sides of the rectangle defining the area when it is selected):

i To move the area of interest, drag it on the preview avoiding the drag handles.

ii To define the size and shape of the area of interest, drag the handles.

Note Each area of interest determines the initial position of a grid of 96 track frames, which should be positioned over the corresponding tracks in the gel. However, you will be able to adjust the position of the track frame grids and individual track frames later in the Gel window, so it is not essential to adjust the areas of interest with great accuracy.

9 Click on the **Analysis notes** tab and enter any notes you want to save with the secure sample file.

See **Sample properties** in the **File** menu (page 8-28) for more information on how to use the **Sample properties** dialog box.

10 Press **OK** to close the **Sample properties** dialog box.

For a Gel or High Throughput Gel, a Gel window will open containing the sample. If you have set automatic track location (the recommended way of working with GeneTools), the tracks will be locked; otherwise they will be unlocked ready for you to position them accurately on the image.

For a colony (pour plate) sample, a Colony counting window will open containing the sample.

For a Spot blot sample, a Spot blot/Manual band quantification window will open containing the sample:

- If you chose **Gridded** and left the **Number of columns** and **Number of Rows** set to **0**, the spot frames will be placed automatically on the image and the Results calculated from them will be shown in the Results pane.
- If you chose **Gridded** and entered figures for the **Number of columns** and **Number of Rows**, the specified grid will appear on the image, but you will need to position the rows and columns accurately by hand.
- If you left **Gridded** unchecked, the individual spots will be located on the image and spot frames placed on them.

For a Manual band quantification sample, a Spot blot/Manual band quantification window will open containing the sample. There will be no boxes on the image and you will have to place them by hand.

For a High Throughput Gel sample, a Gel window will open containing the sample. There will be a grid of frames in each area of interest. These frames will be unlocked so that you can position them over the tracks on the image.

Note Choose **Save as** from the **File** menu to save the new sample as an analyzed secure sample file.

Open

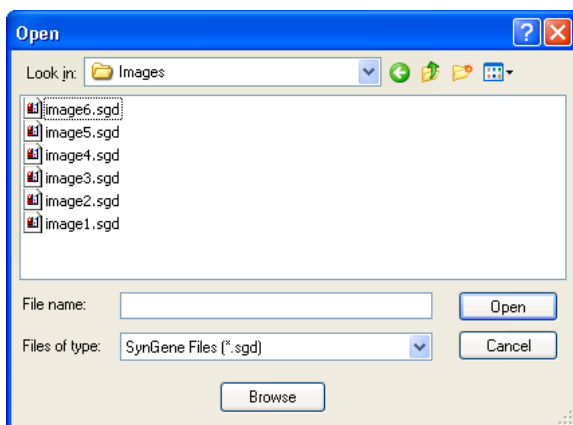
You can open the following types of secure sample files:

- analyzed files that have been previously saved in GeneTools – for a Gel, for example, these will contain information about: track positions; peaks; assigned standards; molecular weight, quantity and peak matching results; and so on.
- unanalyzed .sgd files that have been saved in the acquisition program, but have not yet been loaded into and saved in GeneTools.

To open a secure sample file:



- 1 Choose **Open** from the **File** menu to display a standard Windows **Open** dialog box:



- 2 Use the dialog box to select the required secure sample file.
- 3 Press **Open**.

What happens next depends on whether you are opening an analyzed or unanalyzed secure sample, and in the latter case on whether you have set **Auto import methods**:

- If you are opening an analyzed secure sample file:
 - Depending on the type of sample, the sample will be opened with settings as they were when the file was last saved, including: for a Gel or High Throughput Gel sample, all track and peak settings and previously analyzed results; for a

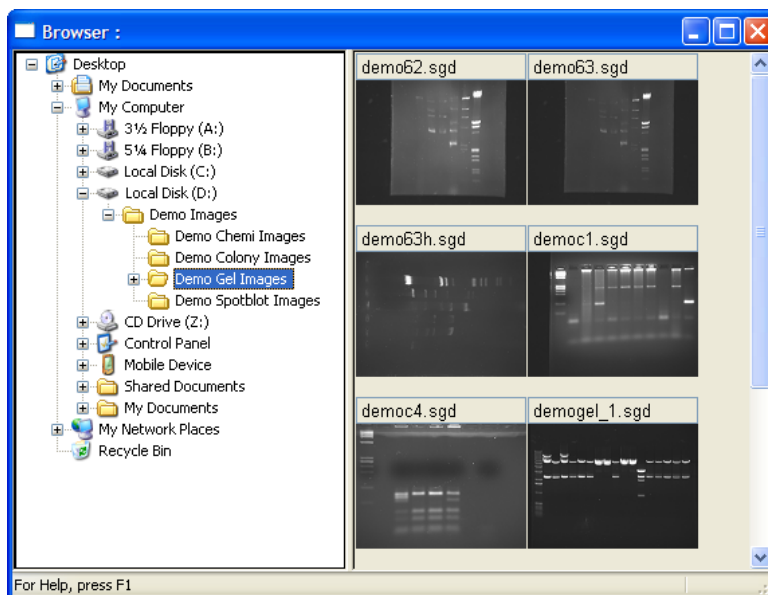
Colony counting sample, the frame and other settings; for a Spot blot/Manual band quantification window, all spot frames or boxes and results.

- If you are opening an unanalyzed secure sample file and you have set **Auto import methods** and you have selected a secure sample file as the source for the settings to import:
- The **Import method** dialog box will open so that you can choose which settings to import. For further details, see, for example, *Opening or creating a secure sample file with automatic import*, page 1-16.
- If you are opening an unanalyzed secure sample file and you have not set **Auto import methods**:
- The **Sample properties** dialog box will open so that you can set the type of image and make other settings – see Steps 6–10 in the entry for **New (Import)** in the **File** menu (on pages 8-3–8-7) for details.

Browse

To open the Browser, or if it is already open, to select and maximize it:

Choose **Browse** from the **File** menu:



Note The picture shows the Browser in a non-maximized window; it is maximized after selecting **Browse**.

The Browser allows you to locate, preview and open image files.

You use the Browser's left-hand pane in exactly the same way as you use the left-hand pane in Windows Explorer to select the folder containing the required images.

To open an image from the Browser:

Double-click on the image.

What happens next depends on whether you are opening an analyzed or unanalyzed secure sample, and in the latter case on whether you have set **Auto import methods**:

- If you are opening an analyzed secure sample file:
 - Depending on the type of sample, the sample will be opened with settings as they were when the file was last saved, including: for a Gel or High Throughput Gel sample, all track and peak settings and previously analyzed results; for a Colony counting sample, the frame and other settings; for a Spot blot/Manual band quantification window, all spot frames or boxes and results.
- If you are opening an unanalyzed secure sample file and you have set **Auto import methods** and you have selected a secure sample file as the source for the settings to import:
 - The **Import method** dialog box will open so that you can choose which settings to import. For further details, see, for example, *Opening or creating a secure sample file with automatic import*, page 1-16.
- If you are opening an unanalyzed secure sample file and you have not set **Auto import methods**:
 - The **Sample properties** dialog box will open so that you can set the type of image and make other settings – see Steps 6–10 in the entry for **New (Import)** in the **File** menu (on pages 8-3–8-7) for details.

Close

To close a secure sample file, the **Profile comparison** window or a molecular weight library:

Choose **Close** from the **File** menu.

If the sample or molecular weight library has any unsaved changes, you will be asked if you want to save the file. If you have used **New window** in the **Window** menu to open more than one window for a molecular weight library, all of the windows will be closed.

Save

Note This command is disabled when the **Profile comparison** window is selected.

To save a secure sample file or molecular weight library:

- 1 Select the Sample window showing the sample or the Molecular weight library window containing the molecular weight library.
- 2 Choose **Save** from the **File** menu.



If the file has been saved before, it will be saved with the same name, otherwise a standard Windows **Save as** dialog box will be displayed so that you can give the file a name and select a folder to save it in – see Steps 3–5 in the entry for **Save as** for details.

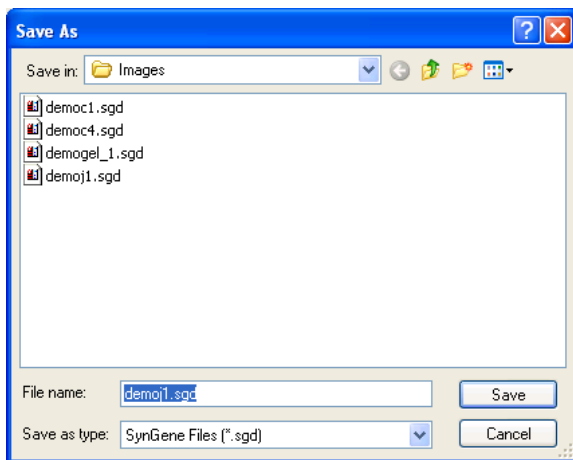
Save as

Note This command is disabled when the **Profile comparison** window is selected.

To save a secure sample file or molecular weight library with a new name:

- 1 Select the Gel, Colony counting or Spot blot/Manual band quantification window showing the sample or the Molecular weight library window containing the molecular weight library.

- 2 Choose **Save as** from the **File** menu to display a standard Windows **Save as** dialog box:



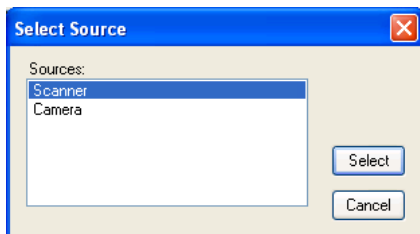
Note The **Save as type** box will show MW Standard Libraries (*.mwl) if you selected a Molecular weight library window.

- 3 Use the dialog box to select a folder in which to save the file.
- 4 Enter a **File name** for the file.
- 5 Press **Save** to save the file.

Select Source (Twain)

To select a Twain source so that you can acquire (see next section) an image from it:

- 1 Choose **Select Source (Twain)** from the **File** menu to display the **Select Source** dialog box:



- 2 Click on the required source to select it.
- 3 Press **Select** to confirm the selection and close the dialog box.

Acquire (Twain)

To acquire an image from the selected Twain source (see previous section) and create a secure sample file:

- 1 Choose **Acquire (Twain)** from the **File** menu.
A dialog box will be displayed for the selected source so that you can select acquisition options and acquire the image.
- 2 Use the dialog box to acquire the image.

What happens next depends on whether you have set **Auto import methods**:

If you have set **Auto import methods**:

- The **Import method** dialog box will open so that you can choose which settings to import. For further details, see, for example, *Opening or creating a secure sample file with automatic import*, page 1-16.

If you have not set **Auto import methods**:

- The **Sample properties** dialog box will open so that you can set the type of image and make other settings – see Steps 6–10 in the entry for **New (Import)** in the **File** menu (on pages 8-3–8-7) for details.

New library

The **New Library** command only appears on the **File** menu for Gel and High Throughput Gel sample windows.

To create a new molecular weight library:

Choose **New library** from the **File** menu.

If the Molecular weight library window is open and you have any unsaved changes, you will be asked if you want to save them before the library is closed. The Molecular weight library window will then be reopened with a new empty library for you to create new molecular weight/quantity standards – see the entry for **New standard** in the **Edit** menu, page 8-57.

Menus

You can enter some text to document the molecular weight library using **Properties** in the **File** menu.

Once you have created the new standards, you can save the new molecular weight library using **Save as** in the **File** menu.

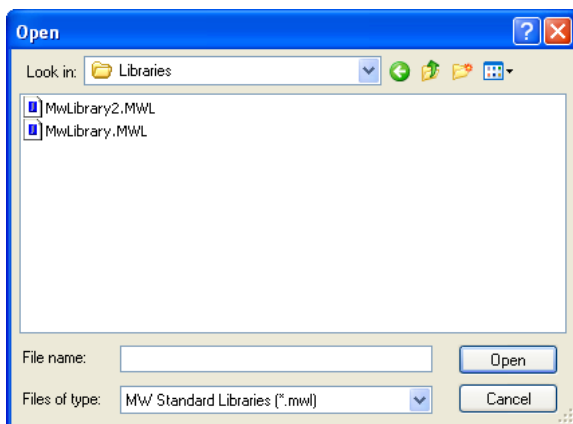
Note You can create as many different molecular weight libraries as you wish, but you can only have one open at a time.

Open library

The **Open Library** command only appears on the **File** menu for Gel and High Throughput Gel sample windows.

To open a molecular weight library for editing:

- 1 Choose **Open library** from the **File** menu to display a standard Windows **Open** dialog box:



- 2 Use the dialog box to select the required molecular weight library file.
- 3 Press **Open**.

If the Molecular weight library window is already open showing another library, that library will be closed – if it contains any unsaved changes, you will be asked if you want to save them before the library is closed.

The selected library will be opened in the Molecular weight library window.

Import method

The **Import method** command does not appear on the **File** menu for Colony sample windows or the **Profile comparison** window.

To apply:

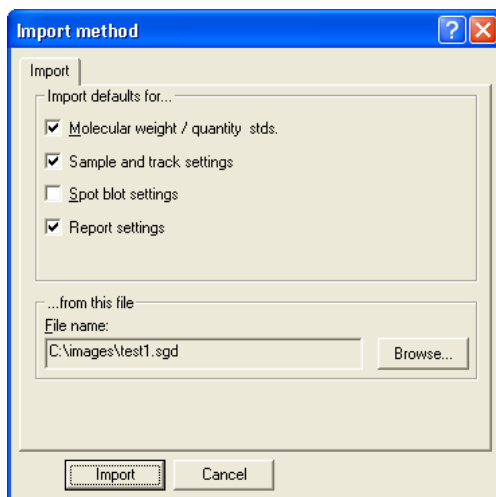
- molecular weight standards (for Gel and High Throughput Gel samples),
- Sample and track settings (for Gel and High Throughput Gel samples),
- Spot blot sample settings (for Spot blot samples),
- Manual band quantification sample settings (for Manual band quantification samples),

and/or

- report settings (for all sample types samples)

from a saved secure sample file to the sample in the selected window:

- 1 Choose **Import method** from the **File** menu to display the **Import method** dialog box:



- 2 Press **Browse** to display a standard Windows **Open** dialog box so that you can select a file from which to import settings.

- 3 Check the boxes for the settings that you want to import.
- 4 Press **Import** to import the settings.

Note This dialog box (with an additional page showing the image) is also displayed if you create a new sample from an image with automatic import set (see **Configuration** in the **Extras** menu, page 8-139, for how to set automatic import). You can also set the import methods in the **Import** page of the **Configuration** dialog box. The program displays the same import methods in all these places: changing the settings in any one of them changes the settings in all of them.

Export table to Excel

The **Export table to Excel** command does not appear on the **File** menu for Colony counting sample windows or the **Profile comparison** window.

Note This command is disabled when the **Profile comparison** window is selected.

To export results to Excel:

- 1 For a Gel window, select the results table that you want to export by clicking on its tab in the Results pane (see *The Results pane*, page 6-14, for information about the tables that can be displayed in the Results pane).

For a Spot blot/Manual band quantification window, select the Results or Incidence table that you want to export by clicking on its tab in the Results/Incidence/Calibration graph pane (see *The Results page*, page 6-31, or *The Incidence page*, page 6-32).

- 2 If you want to change the columns shown in the table, right-click on the table to display the Results context menu and choose the required parameter to add to or remove from the table.
- 3 Repeat Step 2 until the required columns are displayed.
- 4 Choose **Export table to Excel**.



Unless you have already exported a table to Excel in the current session, Excel will be opened and a new workbook created.

The first sheet in the workbook will be named **Image document data** and will contain the secure sample's file name, and data taken from the **Information** page of the **Sample properties** dialog box.

The second sheet in the workbook will contain the exported table and will be named appropriately.

If you have already exported a table to Excel in the current session:

- If the results table selected in the Results pane already exists in the workbook, the results will be updated.
- Otherwise, a new sheet will be added for the new table and named accordingly.

Note 1 GeneTools identifies sheets in the workbook by their names. If you rename a sheet and export the table again, a new sheet will be added for the table and the original sheet will not be updated.

Note 2 After you have exported a table to Excel in a session, GeneTools maintains a link to the workbook it created but does not use the name of the workbook to identify it. This means that you can save the workbook with another name if you wish. However, it also means that once you have exported a table to Excel, you should leave the workbook open in Excel until after you have closed GeneTools.

Save table to CSV file

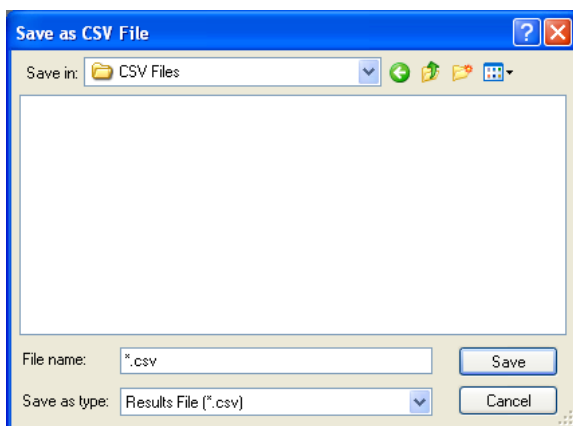
The **Save table to CSV file** command does not appear on the **File** menu for Colony counting sample windows or the **Profile comparison** window.

To save results to a comma separated values text file:

- 1 For a Gel window, select the results table that you want to export by clicking on its tab in the Results pane (see *The Results pane*, page 6-14, for information about the tables that can be displayed in the Results pane).

For a Spot blot/Manual band quantification window, select the Results or Incidence table that you want to export by clicking on its tab in the Results/Incidence/Calibration graph pane (see *The Results page*, page 6-31, or *The Incidence page*, page 6-32).

- 2 If you want to change the columns shown in the table, right-click on the table to display the Results context menu and choose the required parameter to add to or remove from the table.
- 3 Repeat Step 2 until the required columns are displayed.
- 4 Choose **Save table to CSV file** to display the **Save as CSV File** dialog box:



This is a standard Windows Save As dialog box.

- 5 Use the dialog box to select a folder in which to save the CSV file.
- 6 Enter a **File name** for the CSV file.
- 7 Press **Save** to save the results in the file.

Export to Word

To create a Word document containing a report showing analysis results:



Choose **Export to Word** from the **File** menu.

A new Word document will be created and the report created within it.

See the entry for **Report setup** in the **File** menu, page 8-20, for how to choose what to include in the report.

Save to clipboard

To copy a picture of the image in the Image pane in the current Sample window or the profiles in the Profiles pane in the **Profile comparison** window to the clipboard:

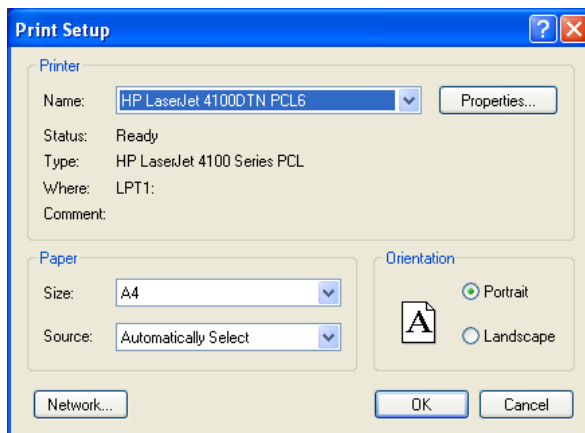


Choose **Save to clipboard** from the **File** menu.

Printer setup

To choose a new printer or change the settings for the existing one:

- 1 Choose **Printer setup** from the **File** menu to display the **Print Setup** dialog box:



- 2 To select a different printer, choose it from the **Name** drop-down list box. The fields below the **Name** box show properties of the selected printer.
- 3 Press **Properties** to display a dialog box allowing you to choose options for the selected printer.

The options available depend on the printer – see your printer documentation for details.

- 4 Choose the paper **Size** and **Source** to use from the drop-down list boxes.

The options available depend on the printer – see your printer documentation for details.

- Click on the **Landscape** or **Portrait** radio button to choose the paper orientation – the graphic in the **Orientation** box illustrates the selected orientation.
- Press **OK** to save the settings and close the dialog box.

Report setup

Note This command is disabled when the **Profile comparison** window is selected.

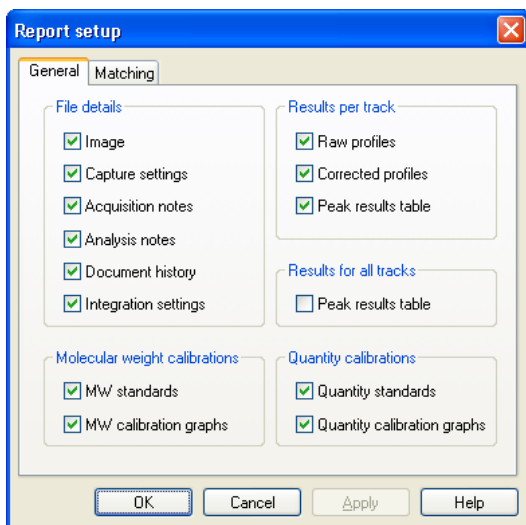
You can choose what information to include in reports.

Note If the paper selected for the currently selected printer is less than 150 mm in either dimension (for example if you are using a video printer), a simplified report containing the image and some brief identification and image information will be printed. The settings in the **Report setup** dialog box have no effect on the content of this simplified report.

To choose what data to include in a Gel or High Throughput Gel sample report:



- With the Gel window selected, choose **Report setup** from the **File** menu to display the **Report setup** dialog box:



2 In the **File details** box, check:

- **Image** to include a picture of the image in the report. The track positions and peak markers will be shown on the image, whether or not they are chosen for display in the Image pane. The match lines and Rf start and finish lines will not be shown.
- **Capture settings** to include in the report the settings used in the camera when the image was captured.
- **Acquisition notes** to include in the report any notes added by the user in the acquisition program in the camera when the image was captured – see the entry for **Sample properties** in the **File** menu, page 8-28, for how to view Acquisition notes.
- **Analysis notes** to include in the report any notes added by the user in GeneTools – see the entry for **Sample properties** in the **File** menu, page 8-28, for how to view and edit Analysis notes.
- **Document history** to include in the report a record of who has made changes to the sample file and when.
- **Integration settings** to include in the report the integration parameters used for profile generation and automatic peak location – see the entry for **Integration parameters** in the **File** menu, page 8-45, for details.

3 In the **Molecular weight calibrations** box, check:

- **MW standards** to include in the report details of:
 - the molecular weight calibration details – see the entry for **Molecular weight calibration** in the **Edit** menu, page 8-50, for details.
 - the assignment of molecular weights/quantities to peaks in the molecular weight standard tracks – see the entry for **MW/quantity standard** in the **Track** menu, page 8-94, and **Assign molecular weight** in the **Peak** menu, page 8-104, for details.
- **MW calibration graphs** to include in the report the molecular weight calibration graphs for the molecular weight standard tracks. The molecular weight calibration graph for a track is shown in the **MW calibration** page of the Graphics pane when the track is selected – see page 6-7 for details.

4 In the **Results per track** box, check:

- **Raw profiles** to include in the report the uncorrected profile for each of the enabled tracks. The raw profile shows the base line used to create the corrected profile as a red line – see the entry for **Integration parameters** in the **File** menu, page 8-45, for information about setting baseline correction.
- **Corrected profiles** to include in the report the corrected profile for each of the enabled tracks. The corrected profile shows the peak positions (by the peak number) and boundaries. You can also view the corrected profile for the selected track in the Profile pane in the Gel window.
- **Peak results table** to include in the report a separate table of results for each of the enabled tracks. You can view the individual table of results for the selected track on the **Results for selected track** tab in the Results pane in the Gel window – see *The Results pane*, page 6-14, for details.

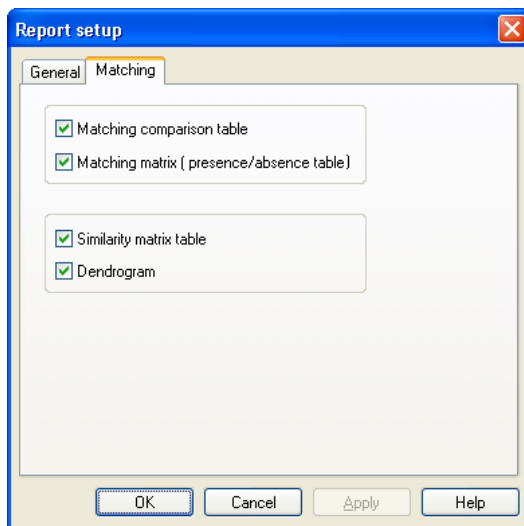
5 In the **Results for all tracks** box, check:

- **Peak results table** to include in the report a table of results for all of the enabled tracks. You can view the combined table of results for all the tracks on the **Results for all tracks** tab in the Results pane in the Gel window – see *The Results pane*, page 6-14, for details.

6 In the **Quantity calibrations** box, check:

- **Quantity standards** to include in the report details of the quantity calibration method – see the entry for **Quantity calibration** in the **Edit** menu, page 8-52, for details.
- **Quantity calibration graphs** to include quantity calibration graphs in the report. If you have chosen to calibrate **All graphs to a single curve**, only the single calibration curve will be shown. Otherwise calibration curves will be shown for all enabled tracks with a defined quantity calibration. The quantity calibration graph for a track is shown on the **Quantity calibration** page of the Graphics pane when the track is selected – see page 6-9 for details.

- 7 Click on the **Matching** tab to choose what peak matching data to include in the report. The **Matching** page will be displayed:



Check:

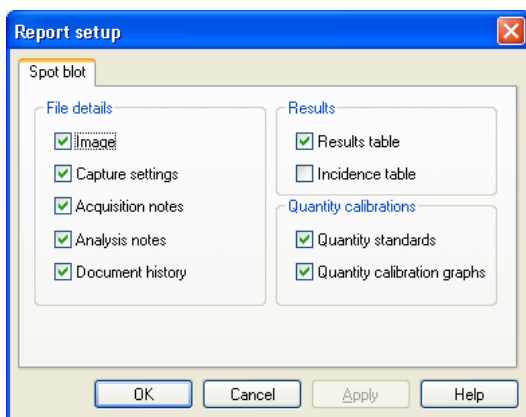
- **Matching comparison table** to include a table showing the results for those peaks in track order that match the peaks on the active matching standard. The table will exclude results for disabled tracks. You can view the Matching comparison table on the **Matching comparisons** page in the Results pane in the Gel window – see *The Results pane*, page 6-14, for details.
- **Matching matrix (presence/absence table)** to include a table showing the presence or absence of peaks matching the peaks on the active matching standard. The table will exclude results for disabled tracks. You can view the Matching presence/absence table on the **Matching matrix** page in the Results pane in the Gel window – see *The Results pane*, page 6-14, for details.
- **Matching coefficients table** to include a table showing how well pairs of tracks are matched. You can view the Matching coefficients table on the **Similarity matrix** page in the Results pane in the Gel window – see *The Results pane*, page 6-14, for details.
- Check **Dendrogram** to include the dendrogram giving a hierarchical representation of the matching between tracks. The dendrogram is shown

in the **Dendrogram** page of the Graphics pane – see *The dendrogram*, page 6-10, for details.

To choose what data to include in a Spot blot or Manual band quantification sample report:



- 1 With the Spot blot/Manual band quantification window selected, choose **Report setup** from the **File** menu to display the **Report setup** dialog box:



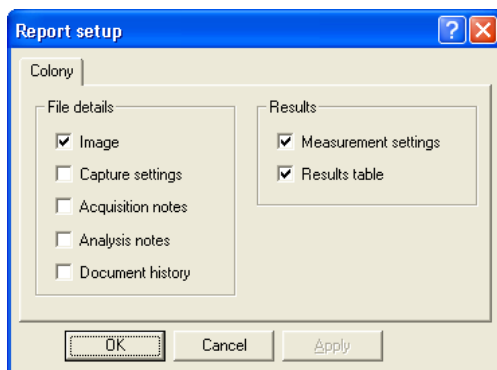
- 2 In the **File details** box, check:
 - **Image** to include a picture of the image in the report. The spot frames will be shown on the image.
 - **Capture settings** to include in the report the settings used in the camera when the image was captured.
 - **Acquisition notes** to include in the report any notes added by the user in the acquisition program in the camera when the image was captured – see the entry for **Sample properties** in the **File** menu, page 8-28, for how to view Acquisition notes.
 - **Analysis notes** to include in the report any notes added by the user in GeneTools – see the entry for **Sample properties** in the **File** menu, page 8-28, for how to view and edit Analysis notes.
 - **Document history** to include in the report a record of who has made changes to the sample file and when.

- 3 In the **Results** box, check:
 - **Results table** to include the Spot blot results table in the report. The table will include the columns selected for display on the **Spot blot results** page in the Spot blot/Manual band quantification window.
 - **Incidence table** to include the incidence matrix in the report.
- 4 In the **Quantity calibrations** box, check:
 - **Quantity standards** to include in the report details of the quantity calibration method – see the entry for **Quantity calibration** in the **Edit** menu, page 8-52, for details.
 - **Quantity calibration graphs** to include the quantity calibration graph in the report. The quantity calibration graph is shown on the **Quantity calibration** page in the Spot blot/Manual band quantification window.

To choose what data to include in a Colony counting report:



- 1 With the Colony counting window selected, choose **Report setup** from the **File** menu to display the **Report setup** dialog box:



- 2 In the **File details** box, check:
 - **Image** to include a picture of the image in the report. The frame, detected colonies, colony shapes (if displayed) and any exclude regions will be shown on the image.
 - **Capture settings** to include in the report the settings used in the camera when the image was captured.

- **Acquisition notes** to include in the report any notes added by the user in the acquisition program in the camera when the image was captured – see the entry for **Sample properties** in the **File** menu, page 8-28, for how to view Acquisition notes.
- **Analysis notes** to include in the report any notes added by the user in GeneTools – see the entry for **Sample properties** in the **File** menu, page 8-28, for how to view and edit Analysis notes.
- **Document history** to include in the report a record of who has made changes to the sample file and when.

3 In the **Results** box, check:

- **Measurement settings** to include the sensitivity and whether colony separation was used.
- **Results table** to include the colony counting results table in the report. The table will show the colony count and percentage area for each class of colony.

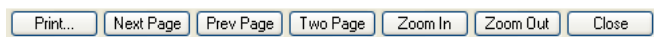
Print preview

To preview a sample results or Profile comparison report before it is printed:



Choose **Print preview** from the **File** menu to display the Sample or **Profile comparison** window in print preview mode.

A row of buttons at the top of the window allows you to control the way the window displays the preview:



- Press **Print** to print the report shown in the preview and return the Sample or **Profile comparison** window to its normal mode.
- Press **Next Page** if the printout covers more than one page and you want to see the next page. The button will be grayed if you are viewing the final page.
- Press **Prev Page** if the printout covers more than one page and you want to go back to an earlier page. The button will be grayed if you are viewing the first page.

- Press **Two Page** if the printout covers more than one page and you want to view two pages side-by-side at the same time. The button changes to **One Page** when you are in two page mode so that you can change back to viewing one page at a time.
- Press **Zoom In** for a magnified view of the previewed page. When you move the pointer over the page in the preview window, it changes to a magnifier and clicking on the page has the same effect as pressing **Zoom In**, unless the page is already at maximum magnification, when it displays the page at minimum magnification.
- Press **Zoom Out** to return to a less magnified view of the previewed page.
- Press **Close** to return the Sample or **Profile comparison** window to its normal mode without doing any printing.

Print

To print a report showing results from a Sample window or the contents of the **Profile comparison** window:



- 1 Select the Sample window or **Profile comparison** window, as required.
- 2 Choose **Print** from the **File** menu to display the **Print** dialog box so that you can select print options. This is a standard Windows dialog box.
- 3 After selecting any required options, press **OK** to close the dialog box and print the report.

See the entry for **Report setup** in the **File** menu, page 8-20, for how to choose what to print in the report.

Note If the paper selected for the currently selected printer is less than 150 mm in either dimension (for example if you are using a video printer), a simplified report containing the image and some brief identification and image information will be printed. The settings in the **Report setup** dialog box have no effect on the content of this simplified report.

Menus

Recently opened files

The **File** menu lists the names of the most recently used files.

To reopen one of these files (secure sample file or molecular weight library file):

Choose the file's name from the **File** menu.

See the entry for **Configuration** in the **Extras** menu, page 8-139, for how to choose how many files to list.

Sample properties

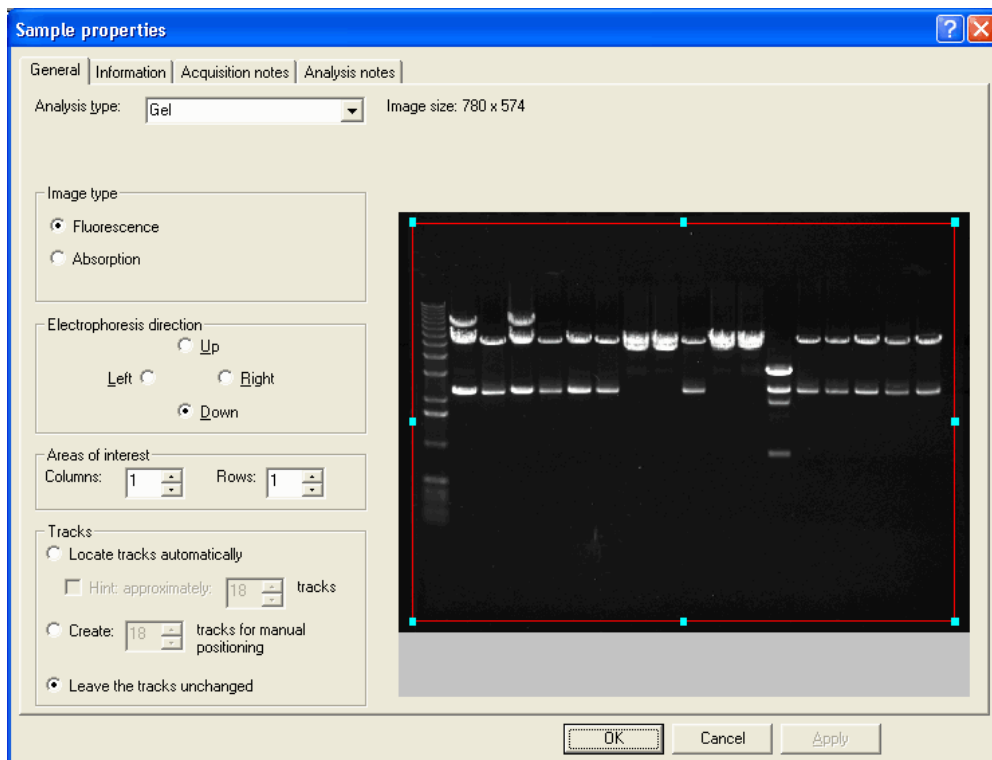
Note This command does not appear on the menu when the **Profile comparison** window is selected.

To view or edit the settings and notes for a sample:

- 1 Click in the window containing the sample to select it.



- 2 Choose **Sample properties** from the **File** menu to display the **General** page of the **Sample properties** dialog box:



The controls shown on the **General** page depend on the type of sample (in the picture shown above, the sample is an ethidium bromide DNA gel).

- 3 If required, select a different **Analysis type** from the drop-down list box – you may need to do this when the dialog box is displayed when you create a new secure sample file, but it is unlikely that you would need to do this at any other time.

The controls displayed depend on the selected **Analysis type** – the following subsections of Step 3 describe how to work with each of the different analysis types.

Gel analysis (see picture in Step 2):

- a Click on the **Fluorescence** radio button for a fluorescence image (bright bands on a dark background); click on the **Absorption** radio button for an absorption image (dark bands on a bright background). GeneTools detects the **Image type** automatically, so you shouldn't need to change this setting.
- b Click on one of the direction radio buttons to set the **Electrophoresis direction**.
- c If you just want to work with a single area of interest on the image, leave the numbers of **Columns** and **Rows** set to **1**.

If you want to define a grid of several areas of interest on the image, enter the numbers of **Columns** and **Rows** in the grid.

- d For each of the areas of interest, click in it on the image to select it (drag handles appear at the corners and on the sides of the rectangle defining the area when it is selected):
 - i To move the area of interest, drag it on the preview avoiding the drag handles.
 - ii To define the size and shape of the area of interest, drag the handles.
 - iii Do one of:
 - To choose automatic track detection for the area, press **Locate tracks automatically**.

Note In nearly all cases the GeneTools automatic track location will be able to locate the tracks on the gel correctly and position track markers over them accurately without further assistance, and this is the recommended way of working with GeneTools. However, very occasionally you may have a gel that causes problems, so if automatic track location fails to identify the tracks correctly, you can give it some help by checking **Hint** and entering the approximate number of **tracks** in the area of interest.

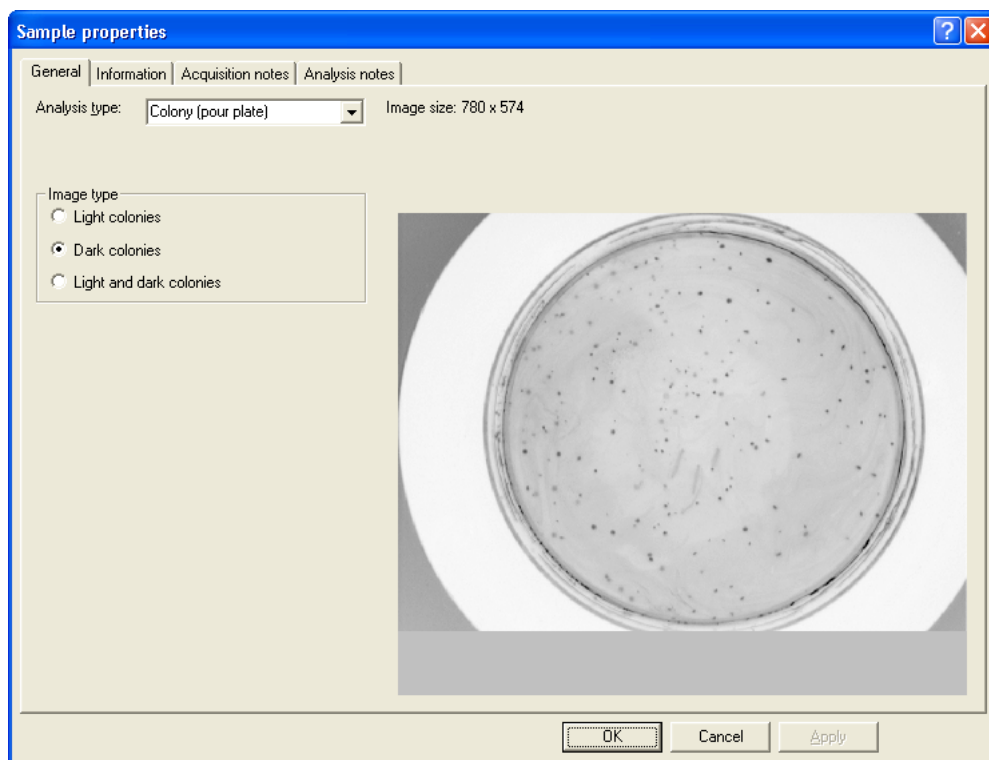
- To choose manually how many tracks you want to place in the area of interest, press the **Create** radio button to enable the **tracks for manual positioning** spin box and enter the number of tracks you want to place in that area of interest. The tracks will be placed at default positions and you will need to position them manually later.

- Leave the **Leave the tracks unchanged** radio button selected if you do not want to change the tracks on the gel either manually or automatically.

Note Changing other options in the **Sample properties** dialog box can cause the **Leave the tracks unchanged** radio button to be deselected and disabled. If this happens, and you really do want to leave the tracks unchanged, press **Cancel** to close the dialog box without making *any* changes.

e Go to Step 4 (page 8-37).

Colony (pour plate) analysis



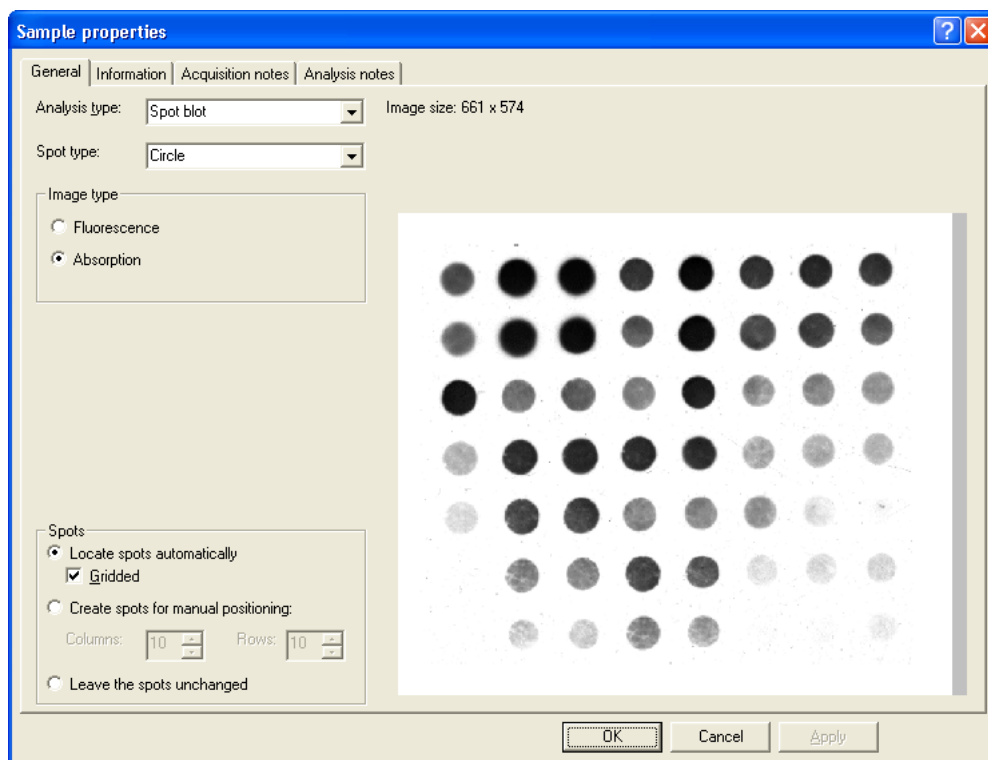
- a Click on the **Light colonies** radio button for an image showing light colonies on a dark background; click on the **Dark colonies** radio button for an image showing dark colonies on a light background; click on **Light**

and dark colonies for an image showing colonies lighter and darker than the background.

The **Image type** is detected automatically, but you can change it if you want to – in particular, you will need to set **Light and dark colonies** manually if required.

- b Go to Step 4 (page 8-37).

Spot blot analysis



- a Choose the shape of spot frame (**Circle** or **Rectangle**) that you want to use from the **Spot type** drop-down list box.
- b Click on the **Fluorescence** radio button for a fluorescence image (bright spots on a dark background); click on the **Absorption** radio button for an

absorption image (dark spots on a bright background). GeneTools detects the **Image type** automatically, so you shouldn't need to change this setting.

c Do one of:

- Press **Locate spots automatically** if you want GeneTools to detect the positions of the spots automatically:
 - Check **Gridded** if you want GeneTools to place a rectangular grid of spot frames over the spots it detects.
 - Uncheck **Gridded** if you want GeneTools to place spot frames only where it actually found spots.
- Press **Create spots for manual positioning** to place a rectangular grid of spot frames in a default position on the image:
 - Enter the number of **Columns** and **Rows** you want to appear in the grid.
- Press **Leave the spots unchanged** if you do not want to change the arrangement of spot frames on the image.

d Go to Step 4 (page 8-37).

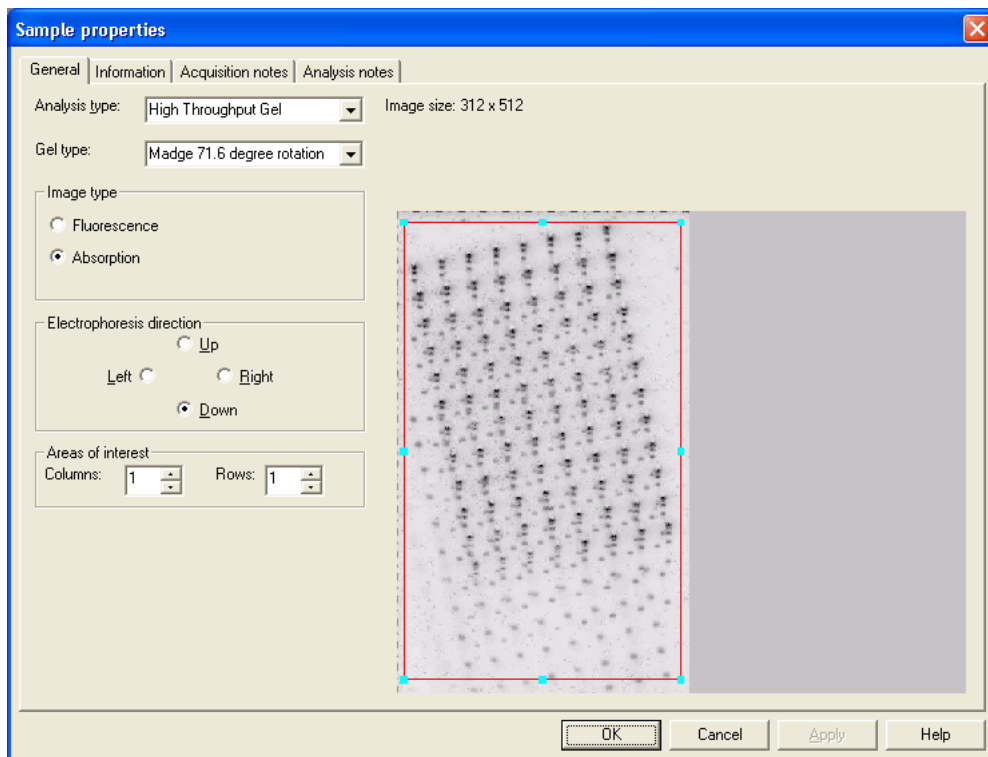
Manual Band Quantification analysis



- a Click on the **Fluorescence** radio button for a fluorescence image (bright spots on a dark background); click on the **Absorption** radio button for an absorption image (dark spots on a bright background). GeneTools detects the **Image type** automatically, so you shouldn't need to change this setting.
- b Go to Step 4.

High Throughput Gel

The controls on the **General** page are different if the **Analysis type** is **High Throughput Gel**:



- a Select the type of High Throughput Gel analysis you are using from the **Gel type** drop-down list box. You can choose:
- **Madge 71.6 degree rotation**
 - **Madge 78.7 degree rotation**
 - **E-Gel 96**

- b** The **Image type** is detected automatically, but you can change it if you want to:

Click on the **Fluorescence** radio button for a fluorescence image (bright bands on a dark background); click on the **Absorption** radio button for an absorption image (dark bands on a bright background)
- c** Click on a radio button to specify the **Electrophoresis direction**.
- d** If you are opening a 96-well sample, leave the **Number of columns** and **Number of rows** set to **1**.

If you are working with a 192-well sample, set the **Number of columns** to **2** and the **Number of rows** to **1** if the two sets of tracks are side-by-side; set the **Number of rows** to **2** and the **Number of columns** to **1** if the two sets of tracks are one above the other.

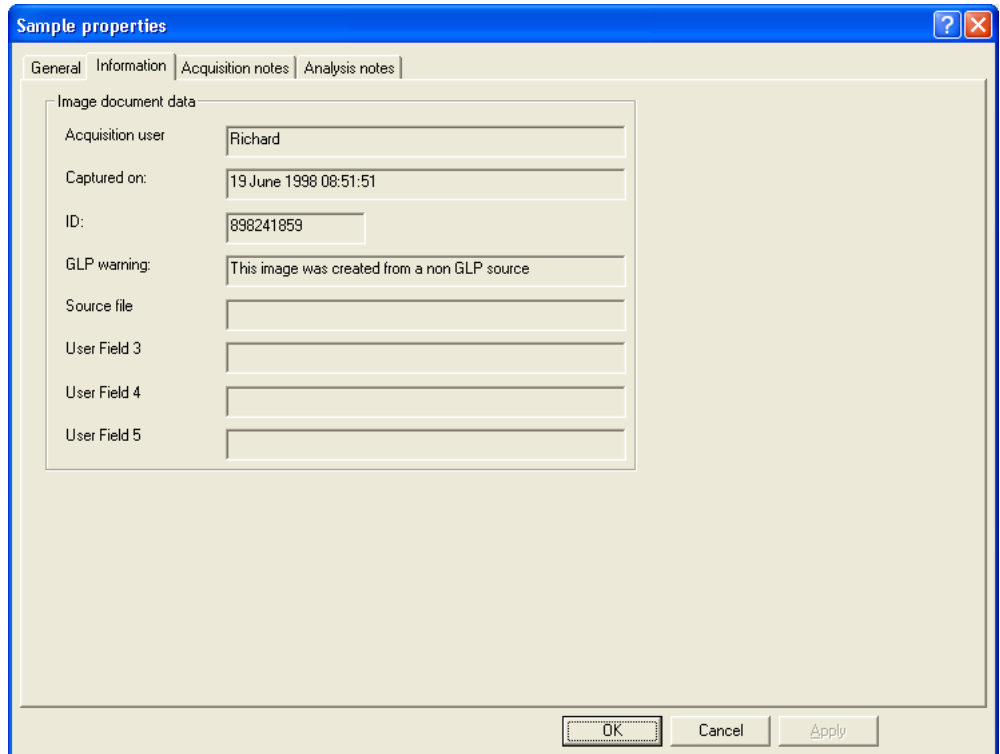
Note Areas of interest can overlap with each other.

- e** For each of the areas of interest (shown by a red box on the image), click in it on the image to select it (drag handles appear at the corners and on the sides of the rectangle defining the area when it is selected):
 - i** To move the area of interest, drag it on the preview avoiding the drag handles.
 - ii** To define the size and shape of the area of interest, drag the handles.

Note Each area of interest determines the initial position of a grid of 96 track frames, which should be positioned over the corresponding tracks in the gel. However, you will be able to adjust the position of the track frame grids and individual track frames later in the Gel window, so it is not essential to adjust the areas of interest with great accuracy.

- f** Go to Step 4.

- 4 Click on the **Information** tab to view data saved with the image when the secure sample file was created (either by the acquisition program or by using the **New (Import)** command):

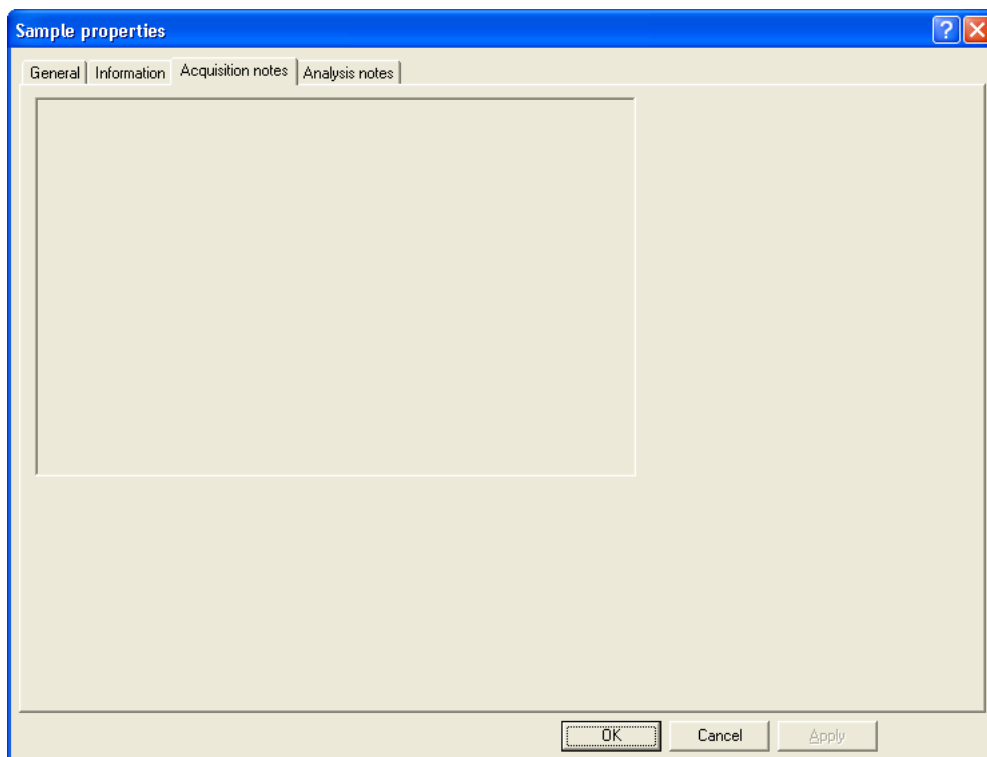


The screenshot shows a window titled "Sample properties" with a blue title bar and standard Windows window controls (minimize, maximize, close). Below the title bar are four tabs: "General", "Information", "Acquisition notes", and "Analysis notes". The "Information" tab is selected. The main area of the dialog is a light beige color. On the left side of this area, there is a section titled "Image document data" with a minus sign icon. To the right of this title are several text input fields, each with a label to its left. The fields are: "Acquisition user" (containing "Richard"), "Captured on:" (containing "19 June 1998 08:51:51"), "ID:" (containing "898241859"), "GLP warning:" (containing "This image was created from a non GLP source"), "Source file", "User Field 3", "User Field 4", and "User Field 5". At the bottom right of the dialog are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

Field Label	Value
Acquisition user	Richard
Captured on:	19 June 1998 08:51:51
ID:	898241859
GLP warning:	This image was created from a non GLP source
Source file	
User Field 3	
User Field 4	
User Field 5	

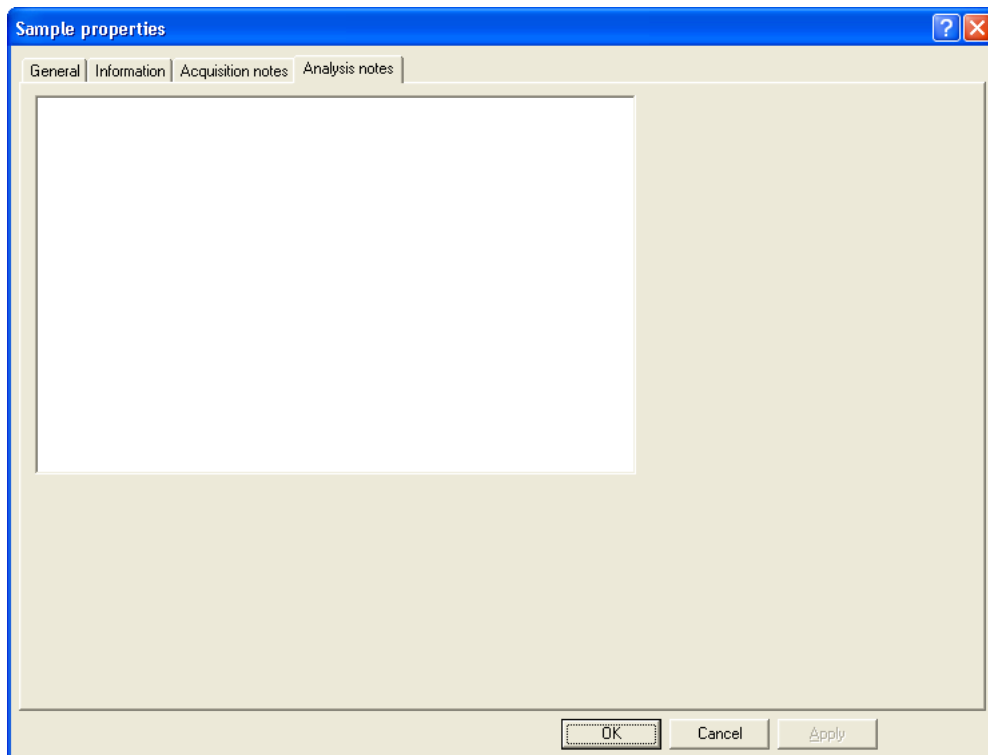
You cannot edit any of the information.

- 5 Click on the **Acquisition notes** tab to display notes saved with the image file in the image acquisition program:



You cannot edit the notes.

- Click on the **Analysis notes** tab to view or edit notes saved with the secure sample file in GeneTools:



- Press **OK** to close the dialog box and save any of the changes you have made to the settings.

For a Gel, if you have set automatic track location (the recommended way of working with GeneTools), the tracks will be locked; otherwise they will be unlocked ready for you to position them accurately on the image (see *How to place, position and work with tracks – Overview*, page 1-22, for details).

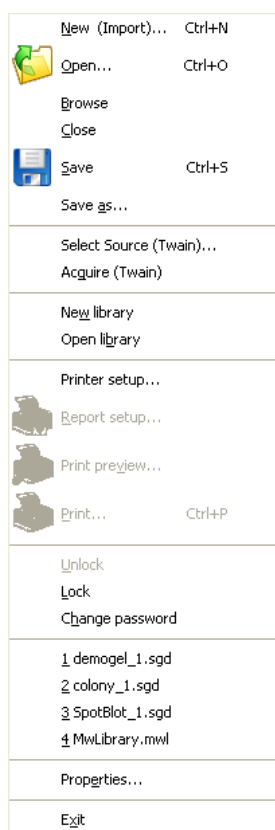
Exit

To exit the program:

Choose **Exit** from the **File** menu.

You will be asked if you want to save any open files that have unsaved changes.

File (Molecular weight library window)

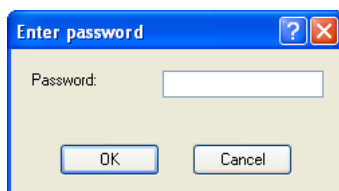


Many of the commands appearing on the **File** menu when a Molecular weight library window is selected also appear on the menu when a Gel window is selected – see the relevant entries in the *File (Sample window)* section, page 8-1, for details of these commands. This section describes the commands that only appear on the **File** menu when a Molecular weight library window is selected.

Unlock

To unlock a molecular weight library (see the next command for locking libraries):

- 1 If the library is already open, click in the Molecular weight library window or choose it from the **Window** menu to select it. Otherwise, choose **Open library** from the **File** menu to open the library.
- 2 Choose **Unlock** from the **File** menu to display the **Enter password** dialog box:



- 3 Enter the **Password** and press **OK** (just press **OK** if no password is set).
You will be told if the password is incorrect – see the entry for **Change password** in the **File** menu, page 8-42, for how to set a password.

When the library is unlocked, **Unlock** will become disabled in the menu and **Lock** will become enabled.

Lock

To lock a molecular weight library:

- 1 If the library is already open, click in the Molecular weight library window or choose it from the **Window** menu to select it. Otherwise, choose **Open library** from the **File** menu to open the library.
- 2 Choose **Lock** from the **File** menu.
(The command will become disabled in the menu and **Unlock** will become enabled.)
- 3 Choose **Save** from the **File** menu to save the locked status of the file.

While the library is locked, the commands for editing it in the **Edit** menu and the pop-up menu displayed when you right-click in the Molecular weight library window are disabled.

You can protect the library further by setting a password, which you will have to enter in order to unlock the library – see the next command for details.

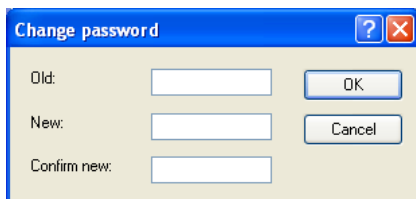
Change password

To set or change the password for a molecular weight library (see the entry for **Unlock** in the **File** menu, page 8-41, for when you will need to enter the password):

- 1 If the library is already open, click in the Molecular weight library window to select it.

Otherwise, choose **Open library** from the **File** menu to open the library.

- 2 Choose **Change password** from the **File** menu to display the **Change password** dialog box:

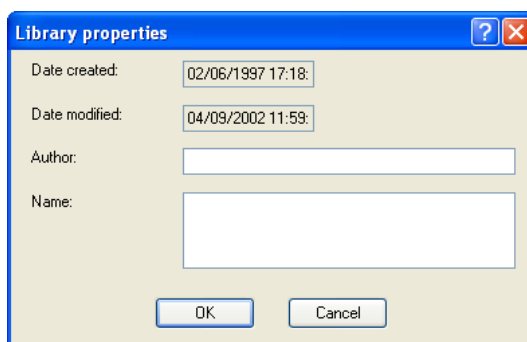


- 3 Enter the **Old** password – the characters will be shown as * for security.
- 4 Enter the **New** password – the characters will be shown as * for security.
- 5 Enter the new password again in the **Confirm new** box to check that you typed it correctly.
- 6 Press **OK** to set the new password and close the dialog box.

Properties

To set or view properties associated with a molecular weight library:

- 1 If the library is already open, click in the Molecular weight library window to select it or choose it from the list at the bottom of the **Window** menu.
Otherwise, choose **Open library** from the **File** menu to open the library.
- 2 Choose **Properties** from the **File** menu to display the **Library properties** dialog box:



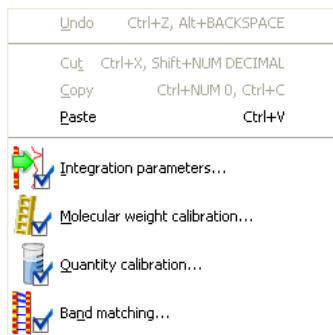
The **Date created** and **Date modified** boxes are read-only and show the dates on which the library was created and last modified.

The **Author** and **Name** boxes can be edited provided the molecular weight library is unlocked.

- 3 Enter text in the **Author** and **Name** boxes to document the molecular weight library.
- 4 Press **OK** to close the dialog box.
- 5 Choose **Save** from the **File** menu to save the properties.

Edit (Gel window)

This section describes all of the commands appearing on the **Edit** menu when a Gel window is selected; the following sections describe the **Edit** menu when other types of window are selected (see the *Windows* chapter, chapter 6, for information about the different types of window).



Undo, **Cut**, **Copy** and **Paste** are disabled for all types of window.

Integration parameters

Note If you have defined more than one area of interest on the sample, the same integration parameters will be used for all areas.

To set the parameters used for profile generation and automatic peak location:



- 1 Choose **Integration parameters** from the **Edit** menu to display the **Integration parameters** dialog box:

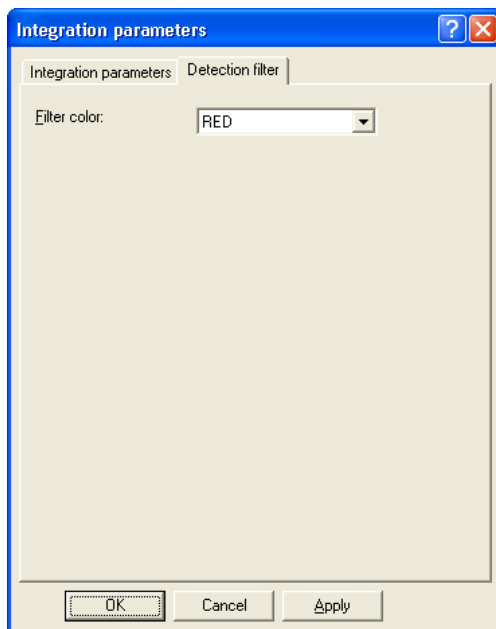
- 2 Choose how to draw the baseline from which the signal is measured to give the profile. The signal is the sum of the (spatially filtered) pixel values across the width of the track. You can use:
 - **None** – no baseline correction
 - **Track borders**
 - **Lowest slope**

- **Track borders & slope** – a combination of the last two: the signal is corrected for the track borders and then the lowest slope correction is used
- **Rolling disk.**

(See the *Baseline correction* subsections after these instructions for details, and the entry for **Edit manual baseline** in the **Track** menu, page 8-90, for how to set a manual baseline.)

- 3 If you have chosen to use **Rolling disk** background correction, enter or edit the radius of the disk to be used. Some experimentation may be required to find the best size of disk to use for each image – press **Apply** to see the effect of the correction without closing the dialog box.
- 4 Choose whether to use a baseline offset or not. See *Baseline correction* after these instructions for details.
- 5 Specify the **Minimum peak width** (in image pixels) for a peak to be detected.
- 6 Specify the **Minimum peak height** (in image pixels) for a peak to be detected.
- 7 Specify the **Minimum peak volume** (as a percentage of the total quantity) on the track for a peak to be detected.
- 8 Check **All peaks same width** to make the detected peaks all have the same width, and enter the required width in the associated edit box.
- 9 Specify the width of the Savitsky-Golay filter used in integrating the image – the greater the width, the greater the smoothing effect of the filter. See *Savitsky-Golay filter*, page 8-50, for examples.

- 10** Click on the **Detection filter** tab to display the **Detection filter** page so that you can choose a filter for filtering color images:



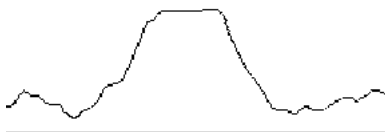
- 11** Choose the required **Filter color** from the drop-down list box.
- 12** Press **Apply** to see the effects of any changes you have made without closing the dialog box; press **OK** to save the new settings and close the dialog box.

Baseline correction – track borders

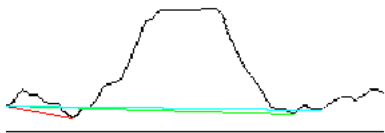
For track borders baseline correction, the signal is calculated relative to the signal at the borders.

Baseline correction – lowest slope

To understand how this method works, consider the following example, which goes through the process as if you had to do it by hand – naturally all this is done automatically by the program and all you would see is the profile in the first picture change into the profile in the last picture:

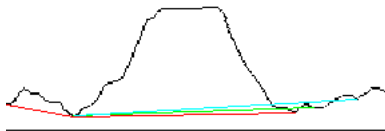


To find the first segment of the baseline, the program starts at one end of the profile and draws imaginary lines from the start point to all other points on the profile. The following example just shows three of these lines:

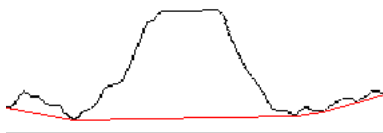


The program then chooses the line of lowest slope. This is the shortest line in this example as the other lines have larger (less negative) slopes (lines to all other points on the profile have even larger slopes).

To find the second segment of the baseline, the program moves to the end of the first segment and again draws imaginary lines from there to the remaining points on the profile. Again the following example only draws three of these lines:



The program again chooses the line of lowest slope (the shortest line again in this example) and repeats this process until it gets to the other end of the profile:



The corrected signal is then measured as the height above this baseline:



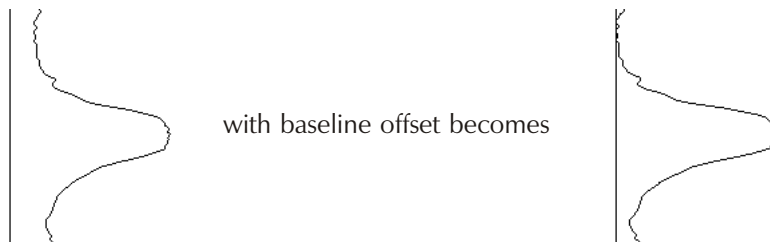
Baseline correction – rolling disk

For this method the program first calculates the position of the line formed by the center of a disk with the set radius rolled along below the profile. The baseline is then one radius length above this line, and the corrected signal is measured as the height above this baseline.

Baseline correction – offset

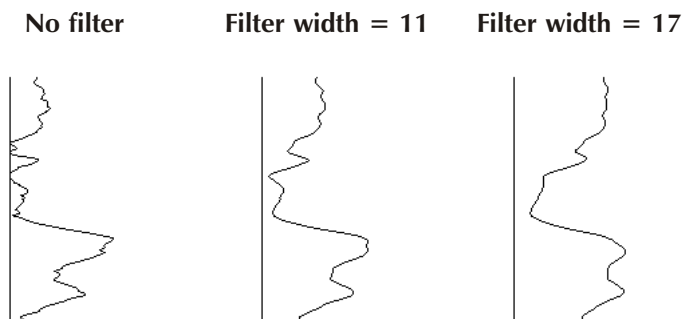
Choose whether to use a baseline offset or not. The baseline offset moves the baseline up to the lowest point in the profile.

For example:



Savitsky-Golay filter

The pictures below are examples of the effects of different degrees of spatial filtering.



Molecular weight calibration

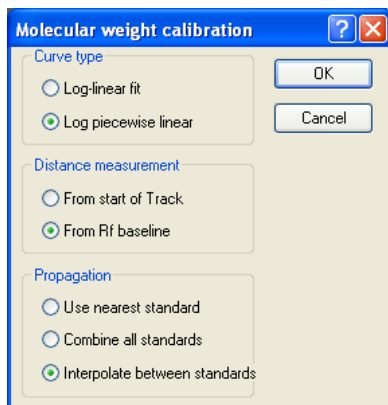
Note If you have defined more than one area of interest on the sample, you can choose different molecular weight calibration settings for each area.

To specify how molecular weights are calculated from standard tracks:

- 1 If there is more than one area of interest on the sample, click in the area on the sample for which you want to set the molecular weight calibration settings.



- 2 Choose **Molecular weight calibration** from the **Edit** menu to display the **Molecular weight calibration** dialog box:



(You can also display this dialog box by pressing **Edit calibration** in the **Assign molecular weight/quantity** dialog box.)

- 3 Click on a radio button to choose the type of calibration curve to use for calculating molecular weights for points between peaks on the standard tracks.
 - **Log-linear fit** means the best logarithmic curve fit for all points – the curve may not pass through all the calibration points.
 - **Log piecewise linear** means a logarithmic curve is drawn between adjacent points – the curve will pass through all the calibration points but may not be smooth at those points.

The selected curve will be shown in the **MW Calibration** tab in the Gel window's Graphics pane – see page 6-8 for details.

- 4 Click on a radio button to choose whether distance along the track should be measured **From start of Track** or **From Rf baseline**.
- 5 Choose how to calculate molecular weights if there is more than one standard track.

You can choose:

- **Use nearest standard** to use the nearest standard track
- **Combine all standards** to calculate a molecular weight from all the standards and then take the average

- **Interpolate between standards** to interpolate results from the two adjacent tracks.

6 Press **OK** to save the new settings and close the dialog box.

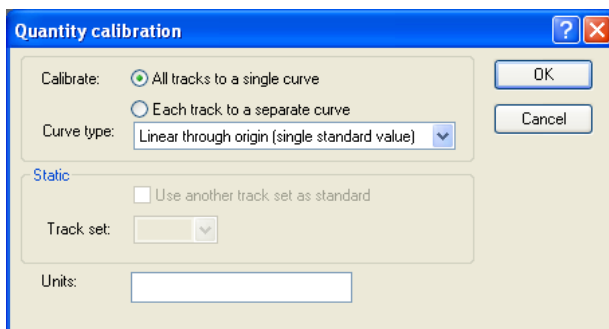
7 Repeat Steps 1–6 for the other areas of interest.

Quantity calibration

Note If you have defined more than one area of interest on the sample, you can choose different quantity calibration settings for each area, or choose to use the quantity calibration in another area of interest.

To set or view the calibration method and units for quantity determinations:

- 1 If there is more than one area of interest on the sample, click in the area on the sample for which you want to set the quantity calibration settings.
- 2 Choose **Quantity calibration** from the **Edit** menu to display the **Quantity calibration** dialog box:



(You can also display this dialog box by pressing **Edit quantity calibration** in the **Assign molecular weight/quantity** dialog box.)

- 3 For a sample with more than one area of interest, you can choose to use the quantity calibration defined in another area of interest. If you wish to do so:
 - a Check **Use another track set as standard**.
 - b Select the required **Track set** from the drop-down list box.

c Go to Step 7.

Otherwise, go to Step 4.

4 Click on a radio button to decide whether:

- the same calibration curve should be used for **All tracks**
- **Each track** should have its own calibration curve.

5 Choose the shape of calibration curve(s) from the drop-down list box from

- **Linear through origin (single standard value)**
- **Linear (multiple standard values)**
- **Linear through origin (multiple standard values)**
- **Quadratic**
- **Quadratic through origin.**

6 Enter your own quantity units in the **Units** box.

7 Press **OK** to save the new settings and close the dialog box.

8 Repeat Steps 1–7 for the other areas of interest.

Note If you select **Linear through origin (single standard value)** the calibration curve is drawn through the origin and the *last* calibration point you have added – in other words, adding a new calibration point replaces the previous one. For the other types of curve, the calibration curve is drawn as the best fit for all the (relevant) calibration points – adding a new calibration point contributes to (and does not replace) the calibration from any previous points.

Band matching

Note If you have defined more than one area of interest on the sample, you can choose different matching settings for each area.

To set or view the tolerance and method used for matching:

- 1 If there is more than one area of interest on the sample, click in the area on the sample for which you want to set the peak matching settings.



- 2 Choose **Band matching** from the **Edit** menu to display the **Matching parameters** dialog box:

Note This dialog box is also displayed when you choose **Parameters** from the **Matching** menu when the Profile comparison window is selected – the settings you make here for the selected area of interest are independent of any settings you may make for the **Profile comparison** window or for any other areas of interest.

- 3 In the **Matching** box:

- a In the **Type** box, select **Band** or **Profile** to decide whether to match tracks using the detected bands (peaks) or the intensity profiles.

Note When **Profile** is selected:

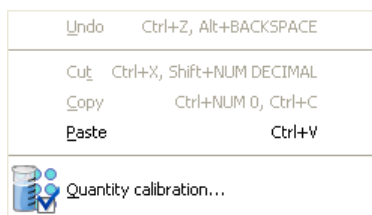
- There is no need to detect the peaks on the tracks (unless you choose to match on the basis of molecular weights – see Step c).
 - There is no need to define a matching standard.
 - The **Similarity Coefficient** controls in the **Matching parameters** dialog box are disabled.
 - The **Matching comparisons** and **Matching matrix** pages in the Results pane are blank.
-

- b** If you selected **Band** in the **Type** box, select **Dice** or **Jaccard** from the **Similarity Coefficient** box to choose how the similarity coefficients should be calculated – see *Similarity matrix*, page 1-114, for how the similarity coefficients are defined.
 - c** In the **Alignment** box, click on a radio button to choose whether matching should be carried out on the basis of:
 - **Position** – distance from start of track
 - **Rf** – relative position between Rf start and end lines on the tracks
 - **MW** – molecular weight calculated using the molecular weight calibration curve(s) for the tracks.
- 4** Enter a **Tolerance** figure to set a limit to the accuracy required when matching peaks (this does not have to be a whole number).

Note For **Profile** matching, the **Tolerance** must be set to a number less than or equal to 1.

- 5** In the **Dendrogram Drawing** box:
 - a** Choose whether to use **UPGMA** or **Neighbor Joining** as the linkage rule for the dendrogram – see *The dendrogram*, page 6-10, for a description of these linkage rules.
 - b** Check or uncheck **Include MW standard(s)** to choose whether molecular weight standard tracks should be included in the dendrogram.
- 6** Press **Apply** to see the effect of the settings without closing the dialog box; press **OK** to save the new settings and close the dialog box.
- 7** If required, repeat Steps 1–6 for the other areas of interest.

Edit (Spot blot/Manual band quantification window)



This section describes the commands appearing on the **Edit** menu when a Spot blot/Manual band quantification window is selected.

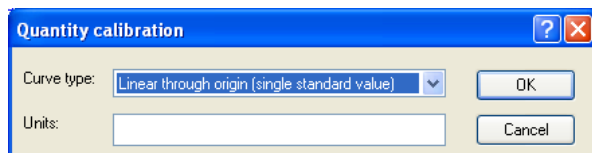
Undo, **Cut**, **Copy** and **Paste** are disabled for all types of window.

Quantity calibration

To set or view the calibration method and units for quantity determination:



- 1 Choose **Quantity calibration** from the **Edit** menu to display the **Quantity calibration** dialog box:



- 2 Choose the shape of calibration curve(s) from the drop-down list box. You can choose:
 - **Linear through origin (single standard value)**
 - **Linear (multiple standard values)**
 - **Linear through origin (multiple standard values)**
 - **Quadratic**, or
 - **Quadratic through origin.**
- 3 Enter your own quantity units in the **Units** box.
- 4 Press **OK** to save the new settings and close the dialog box.

Note If you select **Linear through origin (single standard value)** the calibration curve is drawn through the origin and the *last* calibration point you have added – in other words, adding a new calibration point replaces the previous one. For the other types of curve, the calibration curve is drawn as the best fit for all the (relevant) calibration points – adding a new calibration point contributes to (and does not replace) the calibration from any previous points.

Edit (Colony counting window)

Undo	Ctrl+Z, Alt+BACKSPACE
Cut	Ctrl+X, Shift+NUM DECIMAL
Copy	Ctrl+NUM 0, Ctrl+C
Paste	Ctrl+V

Undo, **Cut**, **Copy** and **Paste** are the only commands appearing on the **Edit** menu when a Colony counting window is selected. These commands are disabled for all types of window, including the Colony counting window.

Edit (Molecular weight library window)

Undo	Ctrl+Z, Alt+BACKSPACE
Cut	Ctrl+X, Shift+NUM DECIMAL
Copy	Ctrl+NUM 0, Ctrl+C
Paste	Ctrl+V
New standard	
Edit standard	
Delete standard	
Rename standard	

Undo, **Cut**, **Copy** and **Paste** are disabled for all types of window.

New standard

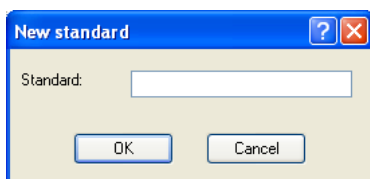
You can only edit a molecular weight/quantity standard if the library is unlocked – see the entry for **Unlock** in the **File** menu, page 8-41.

To create a new molecular weight/quantity standard in a library:

- 1 If the library is already open, click in its Molecular weight library window to select it.

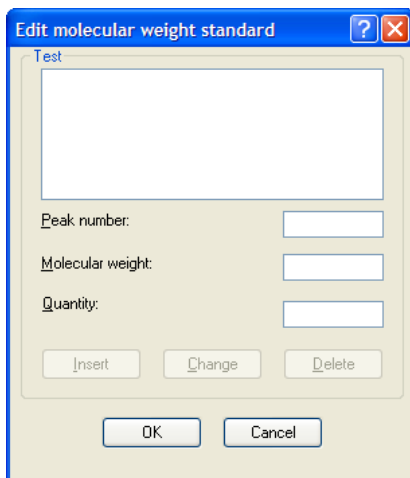
Otherwise, choose **Open library** from the **File** menu to open the library.

- 2 Click in the Molecular weight library window for the required library to select it.
- 3 Choose **New standard** from the **Edit** menu (or right-click in the window to display a pop-up menu and choose **New**) to display the **New standard** dialog box:



Note You can also display this dialog box by pressing **New standard** on the **Edit standard** page of the **Assign molecular weight/quantity** dialog box – see the entry for **Assign molecular weight** in the **Peak** menu, page 8-104.

- 4 Enter a name for the **Standard**.
- 5 Press **OK** to display the **Edit molecular weight standard** dialog box:



- 6 Enter the first **Peak number** (ie, 1).

- 7 Enter its **Molecular weight** (molecular weights must decrease as peak number increases) and/or **Quantity**.
- 8 Press **Insert**. The peak number and associated molecular weight will appear in the list box at the top of the dialog box.

The **Peak number** will be increased by one automatically, ready for you to add the next peak.
- 9 Repeat Steps 7–8 for the remaining peaks.
- 10 Press **OK** to close the dialog box. The new standard will appear in the Molecular weight library window.

Edit standard

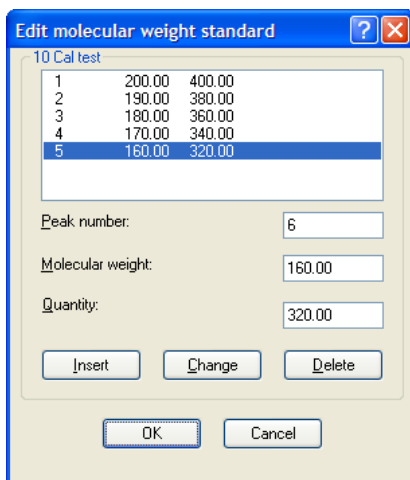
You can only edit a molecular weight/quantity standard if the library is unlocked – see the entry for **Unlock** in the **File** menu (page 8-41).

To edit a molecular weight/quantity standard in a library:

- 1 If the library is already open, click in its Molecular weight library window to select it.

Otherwise, choose **Open library** from the **File** menu to open the library.
- 2 Select the standard in the Molecular weight library window by clicking on the standard's name or any of the peaks in its list.

- 3 Choose **Edit standard** from the **Edit** menu (or right-click on the standard's name or any of the peaks in its list to display a pop-up menu and choose **Edit**) to display the **Edit molecular weight standard** dialog box:



The list in the dialog box shows the peaks and the molecular weights assigned to them in the standard.

To add a new peak to the standard:

- 1 Enter the **Peak number** (it must be different from any existing peak numbers).
- 2 Enter the **Molecular weight** (molecular weights must decrease as peak number increases) and/or **Quantity**.
- 3 Press **Insert**.

To change a peak in the standard:

- 1 Select the peak you want to change by clicking on it in the list of peaks. The peak number and molecular weight will be shown in the **Peak number** and **Molecular weight** boxes.
- 2 Change the **Peak number** and/or **Molecular weight** and/or **Quantity** as required.
- 3 Press **Change**.

To delete a peak from the standard:

- 1 Select the peak you want to delete by clicking on it in the list of peaks. The peak number, molecular weight and quantity will be shown in the **Peak number**, **Molecular weight** and **Quantity** boxes.
- 2 Press **Delete**.

Delete standard

You can only delete a molecular weight/quantity standard from a library if the library is unlocked – see the entry for **Unlock** in the **File** menu (page 8-41).

To delete a molecular weight/quantity standard from a library:

- 1 If the library is already open, click in its Molecular weight library window to select it.
Otherwise, choose **Open library** from the **File** menu to open the library.
- 2 Select the standard in the Molecular weight library window by clicking on the standard's name.
- 3 Choose **Delete standard** from the **Edit** menu (or right-click on the standard's name to display a pop-up menu, and choose **Delete**).

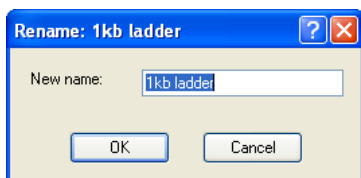
Rename standard

You can only rename a molecular weight/quantity standard if the library is unlocked – see the entry for **Unlock** in the **File** menu (page 8-41).

To rename a molecular weight/quantity standard from a library:

- 1 If the library is already open, click in its Molecular weight library window to select it.
Otherwise, choose **Open library** from the **File** menu to open the library.
- 2 Select the standard in the Molecular weight library window by clicking on the standard's name.

- 3 Choose **Rename standard** from the **Edit** menu (or right-click on the standard's name to display a pop-up menu, and choose **Rename**) to display the **Rename** dialog box:



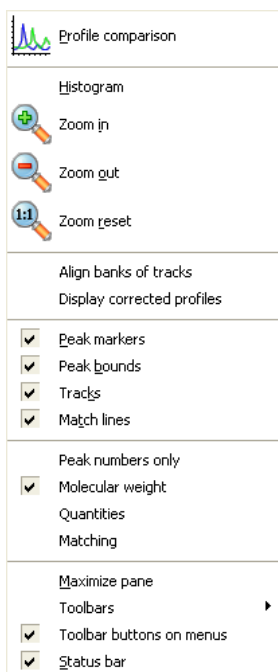
- 4 Edit the name in the **New name** box.
- 5 Press **OK** to close the dialog box.

The standard will appear with the new name in the Molecular weight library window.

Edit (Profile comparison window)

Undo, **Cut**, **Copy** and **Paste** are the only commands appearing on the **Edit** menu when the **Profile comparison** window is selected. These commands are disabled for all types of window, including the **Profile comparison** window.

View (Gel window)



The picture shows the **View** menu when a Gel window is selected. Some of these commands do not appear on the menu when other types of window are selected – see pages 8-69–8-71 for pictures. The only command that can appear on the **View** menu that does not appear when a Gel window is selected is **Spot numbers**, which appears when a Spot blot/Manual band quantification window is selected – see page 8-70 for details.

Profile comparison

To open the **Profile comparison** window if it is not already open, or to select it if it is:



Choose **Profile comparison** from the **View** menu.

The **Profile comparison** window can be used to compare the profiles for different tracks (which may be on different samples) by plotting them on the same axes.

Menus

See *The Profile comparison window* in the *Windows* chapter (page 6-18) for how to use the **Profile comparison** window.

Histogram

To show or hide the Histogram viewer:

Choose **Histogram** from the **View** menu.

You can use the Histogram to view the distribution of intensities in the image and to adjust the image display – see *The Histogram viewer* in the *Windows* chapter (page 6-34) for how to use the Histogram viewer.

Zoom in

To increase the magnification of the display of the Image pane in a Sample window, or to increase the horizontal scale of the profiles in the **Profile comparison** window:



Choose **Zoom in** from the **View** menu.

Zoom out

To reduce the magnification of the display of the Image pane in a Sample window, or to decrease the horizontal scale of the profiles in the **Profile comparison** window:



Choose **Zoom out** from the **View** menu.

Zoom reset

To remove any magnification from the display of the Image pane in a Sample window, or the horizontal scale of the profiles in the **Profile comparison** window:



Choose **Zoom reset** from the **View** menu.

Align banks of tracks

When the tracks are locked in all areas of interest, you can choose whether the Image pane should display the original gel image with tracks marked on the image or display the tracks in aligned banks (see *View modes*, page 6-4, in the *Windows* chapter for a description of the different modes).

To switch aligned banks of tracks view on or off:

Choose **Align banks of tracks** from the **View** menu.

The command is checked in the menu when the Image pane shows banks of tracks.

Viewing the tracks in aligned banks is particularly useful for High Throughput Gel samples and is automatically selected when you lock a High Throughput Gel sample, though you can deselect it if required.

When aligned banks of tracks view is on, the only way to unlock the tracks is using **Position all** in the **Track** menu or the Position all button. Unlocking the tracks in any area of interest switches aligned banks of tracks view off.

Display corrected profiles

To choose whether to display corrected profiles (profiles with the background subtracted) or uncorrected profiles in the Profile pane:

Choose **Display corrected profiles** from the **View** menu.

The command is checked in the menu when the display of corrected profiles is switched on.

Peak markers

To switch the display of peak markers on the tracks in the Image pane on or off:

Choose **Peak markers** from the **View** menu.

The command is checked in the menu when the display of peak markers is switched on.

You can use **Configuration** in the **Extras** menu to change the color of the peak markers – see page 8-143.

Peak bounds

To switch the display of peak bounds on the tracks in the Image pane on or off:

Choose **Peak bounds** from the **View** menu.

The command is checked in the menu when the display of peak bounds is switched on.

You can use **Configuration** in the **Extras** menu to change the color of the peak bounds – see page 8-143.

Tracks

To switch the display of track markers in the Image pane on or off:

Choose **Tracks** from the **View** menu.

The command is checked in the menu when the display of track markers is switched on.

You can use **Configuration** in the **Extras** menu to change the color of the track markers – see page 8-143.

Match lines

To switch the display of match lines on or off:

Choose **Match lines** from the **View** menu.

Note Match lines are only displayed if **Matching** is selected in the **View** menu.

No match lines are displayed if **Profile** is selected as the matching **Type** in the **Matching Parameters** dialog box – see *Band Matching*, page 8-53.

The match lines join peaks that have been matched on different tracks in the Image pane.

The command is checked in the menu when the display of match lines is switched on.

You can use **Configuration** in the **Extras** menu to change the color of the match lines – see page 8-143.

Peak numbers only

To display just the peak numbers in the Peak value pane (the Graphics pane will be unaffected):

Choose **Peak numbers only** from the **View** menu.

Molecular weight

To display:

- the molecular weight calibration graph in the Graphics pane, and
- molecular weights in the Peak value pane:

Choose **Molecular weight** from the **View** menu.

Quantities

To display:

- the quantity calibration graph in the Graphics pane, and
- quantities in the Peak value pane:

Choose **Quantities** from the **View** menu.

Matching

To display track matching details:

Choose **Matching** from the **View** menu.

The effect is to display:

- the dendrogram in the Graphics pane; and
- when **Band** is selected as the matching **Type** in the **Matching parameters** dialog box (see *Band matching*, page 8-53):
 - the matching standard track profile overlaid on the selected track profile in the Profile pane
 - the peak number and position of the peaks in the matching standard track in the Peak value pane

Menus

- **Matching comparisons** in the Results pane (if **Profile** is selected as the matching **Type**, the **Matching comparisons** tab is displayed but the table is always blank).

Maximize pane

To maximize the Graph or Results pane so that it fills the Gel window:

- 1 Click in the pane to select it.
- 2 Choose **Maximize pane** from the **View** menu.

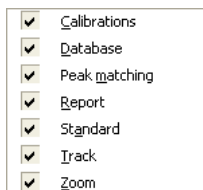
To return the pane to its normal size:

Choose **Maximize pane** from the **View** menu again.

Or

Adjust the size of the Gel window.

Toolbars submenu



The contents of the Toolbars submenu depend on the type of window selected. The picture shows the submenu when a Gel window is selected – the only toolbar not included when a Gel window is selected is the Spot blot toolbar, which is displayed when a Spot blot/Manual band quantification window is selected.

To show or hide one of the GeneTools toolbars:

Choose the toolbar from the **View** **Toolbars** submenu.

The toolbar will be checked in the submenu when it is displayed.

See the *Toolbars* chapter (chapter 7) for more information about working with toolbars.

Toolbar buttons on menus

To show or hide pictures of toolbar buttons next to the equivalent commands in menus:

Choose **Toolbar buttons on menus** from the **View** menu.

Status bar

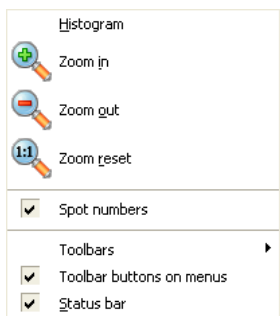
To show or hide the Status bar at the bottom of the main window:

Choose **Status bar** from the **View** menu.

The status bar shows hints for using the tool or command under the pointer and a variety of other pieces of information depending on what type of window is selected, and what is selected in the window. For example:

- if you click in the Profile pane in a Gel window, the status bar shows the height of the profile at the pointer,
- if you select a spot frame in a Spot blot/Manual band quantification window, the status bar shows the spot number.

View (Spot blot/Manual band quantification window)



All of these commands except **Spot numbers** also appear on the menu when a Gel window is selected – see the relevant entries in the *View (Gel window)* section, page 8-63, for details.

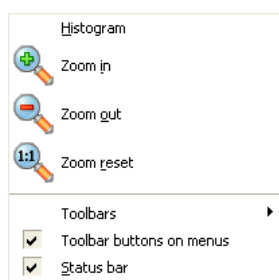
Spot numbers

To show/hide identification labels on the spot frames:

Choose **Spot numbers** from the **View** menu.

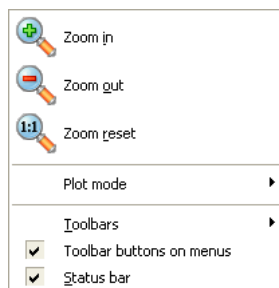
Spot numbers is checked in the **View** menu when the labels are shown.

View (Colony counting window)

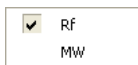


All of these commands also appear on the menu when a Gel window is selected – see the relevant entries in the *View (Gel window)* section (page 8-63) for details.

View (Profile comparison window)



All of these commands except those on the **Plot mode** submenu also appear on the menu when a Gel window is selected – see the relevant entries in the *View (Gel window)* section, page 8-63, for details.

Plot mode submenu

The **Plot mode** submenu appears in the **View** menu when a Profile window is selected.

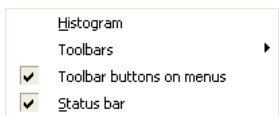
To use Rf as the horizontal axis for track profiles in the **Profile comparison** window:

Choose **Rf** from the **View Plot mode** submenu.

To use (log) molecular weight as the horizontal axis for track profiles:

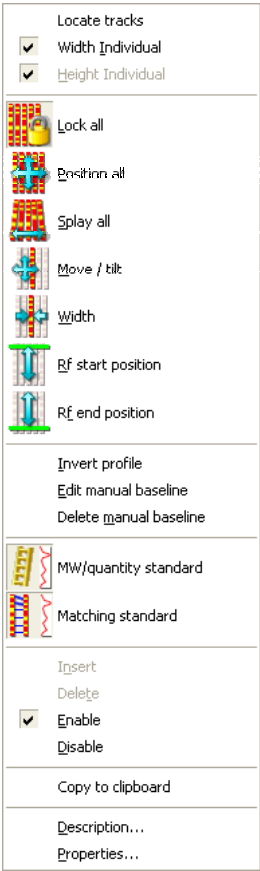
Choose **MW** from the **View Plot mode** submenu.

Note If the Match software option is installed in your system, the parameter chosen for the horizontal scale (**Rf** or **MW**) also determines the alignment used when matching tracks in the Profile comparison window.

View (Molecular weight library window)

All of these commands also appear on the menu when a Gel window is selected – see the relevant entries in the *View (Gel window)* section (page 8-63) for details.

Track



The **Track** menu is displayed when a Gel window is selected.

Note Some **Track** menu commands are always disabled when the Gel window contains a High Throughput Gel sample; **Height individual** is always disabled when it contains a Gel sample.

Locate tracks

Note The **Locate tracks** command is permanently disabled for High Throughput Gel samples.

To locate the tracks in the selected area of interest on the image in an existing secure sample file automatically:

Choose **Locate tracks** from the **Track** menu.

Width individual

To choose whether to adjust the width of all tracks (in the selected area of interest) or just the selected track when you use **Width** in the **Track** menu to adjust track width:

Choose **Width individual** from the **Track** menu.

When **Width individual** is checked in the **Track** menu, you can use **Width** in the **Track** menu to adjust the width of the selected track only; when **Width individual** is unchecked you can use **Width** in the **Track** menu to adjust the width of all tracks (in the selected area of interest) at the same time.

Height individual

Note The **Height individual** command is selected and permanently disabled for Gel samples.

To choose whether to adjust the height and tilt of all tracks (in the selected area of interest) or just the selected track on a High Throughput Gel sample when you use **Move/tilt** in the **Track** menu to adjust track height and tilt:

- 1 Click in the Gel window containing the sample to select it.
- 2 Choose **Height individual** from the **Track** menu.

When **Height individual** is checked in the **Track** menu, you can use **Move/tilt** in the **Track** menu to adjust the height and tilt of the selected track only; when **Height individual** is unchecked you can use **Move/tilt** in the **Track** menu to adjust the height and tilt of all tracks (in the selected area of interest) at the same time.

Lock all

The tracks shown on the sample in the Image pane in the Gel window can be either locked or unlocked.

You need to lock the tracks before you can perform any of the functions that require the program to analyze the image along the tracks, such as locating the peaks, and assigning and calculating molecular weights and quantities.

To lock the tracks (in the selected area of interest) on a sample in the selected Gel window:



Choose **Lock all** from the **Tracks** menu.

When the tracks (in the selected area of interest) are locked, **Lock all** is checked in the menu and the button is shown as depressed in the toolbar.

To unlock the tracks (in the selected area of interest) on a sample in the selected Gel window:

Choose any of the tools for editing the tracks. These are:

- **Position all**
- **Splay all** (not for High Throughput Gels)
- **Move/tilt**
- **Width**
- **Rf start** (not for High Throughput Gels)
- **Rf end** (not for High Throughput Gels).

Position all

To adjust the overall positioning of all the tracks (in the selected area of interest) on a sample together (see **Splay all**, page 8-76, for adjusting both the overall position and the amount of track splay):

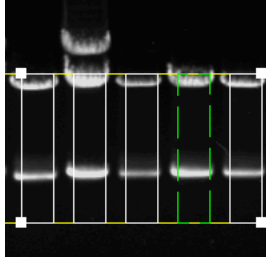
- 1 Click in the Gel window containing the sample to select it.

If there is more than one area of interest, click in the one you want to change.

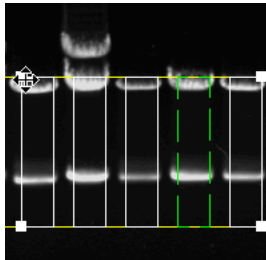


- 2 Choose **Position all** from the **Track** menu.

The tracks will be unlocked and drag boxes will appear at the outer corners of the two outside tracks.

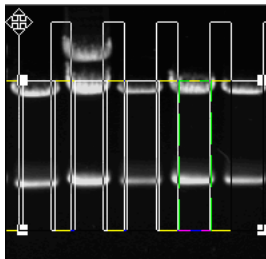


- 3 Move the pointer over the drag box at the first corner that you want to move. The pointer will change to a four-way arrow.

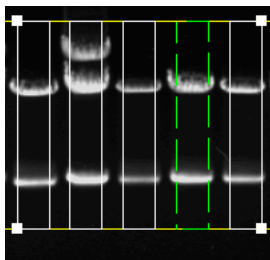


- 4 Press and drag the corner box to its new position.

The outlines of the tracks' new positions will be shown as you drag.



- 5 Drop the corner box in its new position:



- 6 Repeat Steps 3–5 for the diagonally opposite corner if required.

Splay all

Note The **Splay all** command is permanently disabled for High Throughput Gel samples.

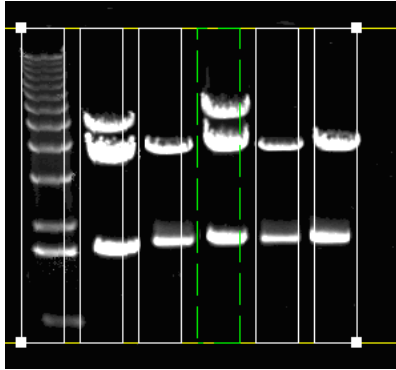
This topic describes how to adjust the amount by which the tracks on a sample are splayed apart.

To adjust the amount by which the tracks (in the selected area of interest) on a sample are splayed apart (see **Position all**, page 8-74, for adjusting the overall positioning, without changing the amount of track splay):

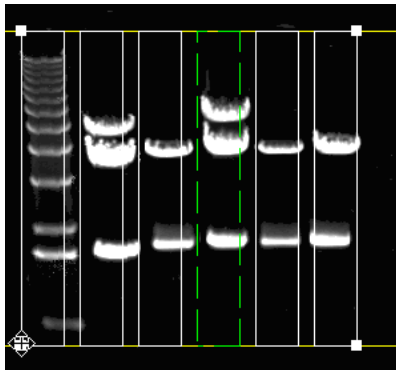
- 1 Click in the Gel window containing the sample to select it.
If there is more than one area of interest, click in the required you want to change.
- 2 Choose **Splay all** from the **Track** menu.



The tracks will be unlocked and drag boxes will appear at the outer corners of the two outside tracks:

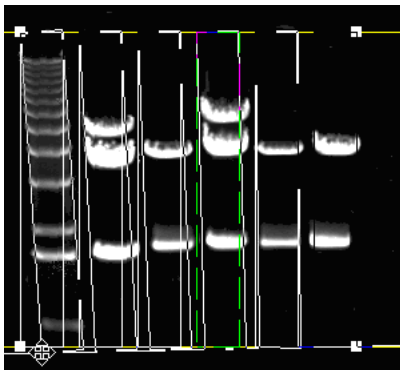


- 3 Move the pointer over the drag box at the first corner that you want to move. The pointer will change to a four-way arrow:

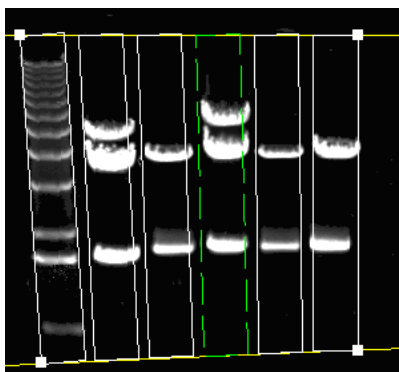


- 4 Press and drag the corner box to its new position.

The outlines of the tracks' new positions will be shown as you drag:



- 5 Drop the corner box in its new position:



- 6 Repeat Steps 3–5 for the other corners if required.

Move/tilt

The first three steps in moving, tilting or bending a track are the same.

To move, tilt or bend a track, first:

- 1 Click (in the selected area of interest) in the Gel window containing the sample to select it.



2 Choose **Move/tilt** from the **Track** menu. The tracks will be unlocked.

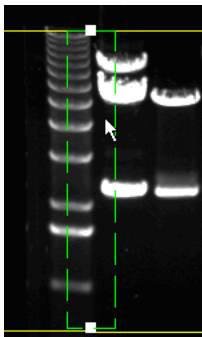
3 Click in the track that you want to adjust to select it. The track will be highlighted and will have a drag box at each end.

You can now move, tilt or bend the track.

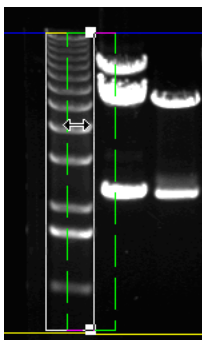
To move an individual track on a sample:

4 Perform Steps 1-3 as above.

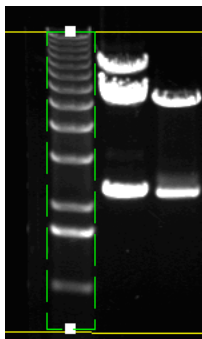
5 Move the pointer to a point anywhere within the track (not on the drag boxes):



6 Press and drag the track to its new position:

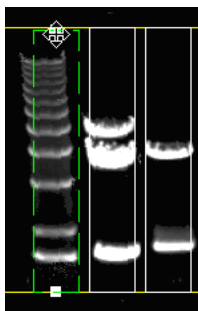


- 7 Drop the track in its new position:



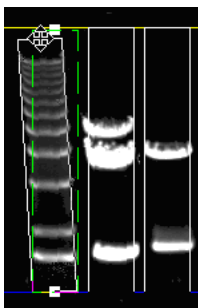
To tilt an individual track on a sample:

- 4 Perform Steps 1–3 as above.
- 5 Move the pointer over the drag box at the first end that you want to move. The pointer will change to a four-way arrow:

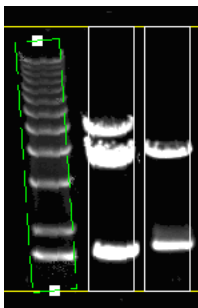


- 6 Press and drag the box to its new position. You can drag to any position provided you do not overlap other tracks or invert the electrophoresis direction.

The outline of the track's new position will be shown as you drag:



7 Drop the track in its new position:

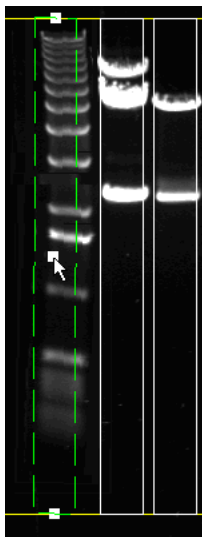


8 Repeat Steps 5–7 for the other end of the track if required.

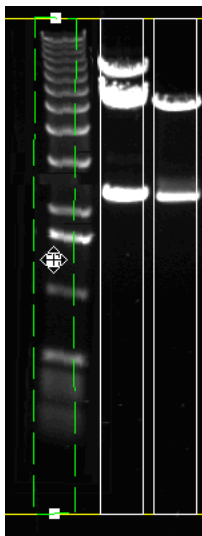
To bend an individual track on a sample:

4 Perform Steps 1–3 as above.

- 5 Double-click at the point on the track that you want to bend it. A new drag box will appear at that point:

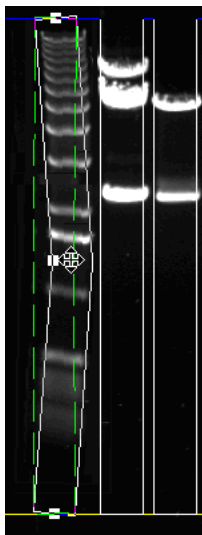


When you place the pointer over the drag box, it turns into a four-way arrow:

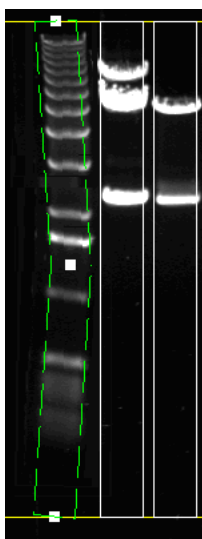


- 6 Press and drag the box to its new position. You can drag to any position provided you do not overlap other tracks or invert the electrophoresis direction.

The outline of the track's new shape will be shown as you drag.



- 7 Drop the drag box in its new position.



- 8 Repeat Steps 5–7 if you want to put any other bends in the track.

To remove a bend in an individual track on a sample:

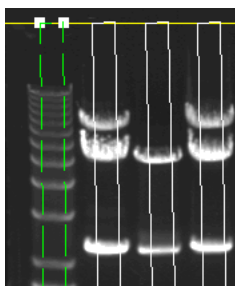
- 4 Perform Steps 1–3 as above. Drag boxes will appear at the ends of the track and at any bend points.
- 5 Double-click on the drag box at the apex of the bend that you want to remove.

Width

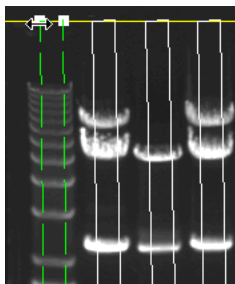
Note You can use **Width individual** in the **Track** menu to choose whether to change the width of the selected track only or of all tracks (in the selected area of interest) together: the following instructions apply in either case. When you adjust the widths of all tracks at the same time, all tracks are set to the width of the track that you are using to adjust the track width.

To adjust track width on a sample:

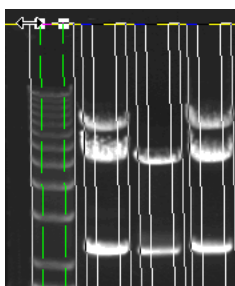
- 1 Click (in the area of interest) in the Gel window containing the sample to select it.
- 2 Choose **Width** from the **Track** menu. The tracks will be unlocked.
- 3 Click in the track that you want to adjust to select it. The track will be highlighted and will have a drag box on each corner:



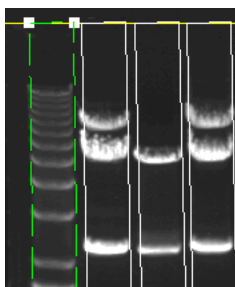
- 4 Move the pointer over one of the drag boxes (it doesn't matter which):



- 5 Press and drag at right angles to the electrophoresis direction (for example, sideways if the electrophoresis direction is up or down). As you are dragging, the new outline of the track will be shown:



- 6 Release to set the new track width:



Rf start position

and

Rf end position

Note The **Rf start position** and **Rf end position** commands are permanently disabled for High Throughput Gel samples.

When you compare profiles, the profiles (which may be taken from different secure sample files) are plotted on an Rf scale from 0 to 1 taken between the Rf start and end lines.

You can adjust the position of the Rf lines in the electrophoresis direction, the angle of the lines across the electrophoresis direction, or add bends to the lines.

The first two steps in all these procedures are the same.

Note Adjusting the overall position or splay of the tracks on the sample also adjusts the position of the Rf lines, so you should make any adjustments to the track position and splay before adjusting the Rf lines.

To adjust the Rf start or end position (in an area of interest) on a sample:

- 1 Click (in the area of interest) in the Gel window containing the sample to select it.
- 2 Choose **Rf start position** from the **Track** menu

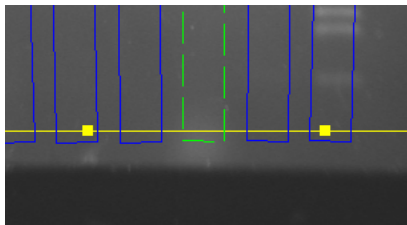


or



Choose **Rf end position** from the **Track** menu.

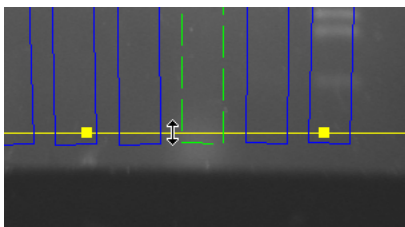
The tracks will be unlocked and two drag boxes will appear on the appropriate Rf line (the examples show the Rf end line, but the procedures are identical for both):



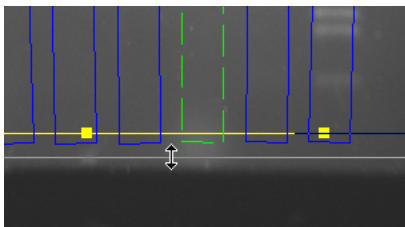
You can now either just move the whole line along the electrophoresis direction, adjust the angle of the line or add bends to the line.

To move an Rf line without changing its angle:

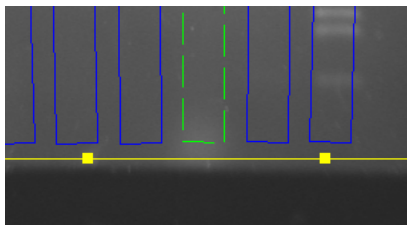
- 3 Follow Steps 1–2 above.
- 4 Move the pointer over the line, but not over either of the drag boxes. The pointer will change to a two-way arrow.



- 5 Press and drag the line to its new position.
The line's new position will be shown as you drag.

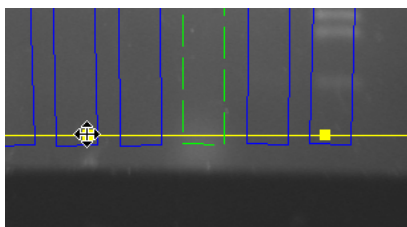


- 6 Drop the line in its new position.



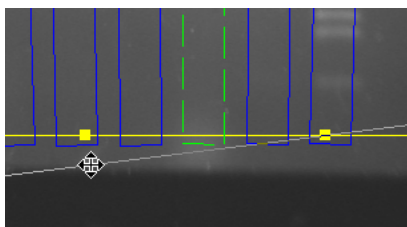
To adjust the angle of an Rf line:

- 3 Follow Steps 1-2 above.
- 4 Move the pointer over one of the drag boxes. The pointer will change to a four-way arrow:

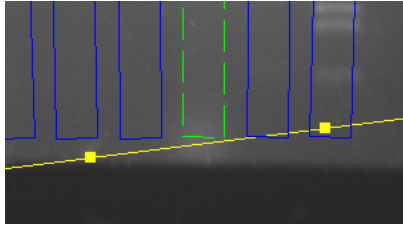


- 5 Press and drag the box to change the angle of the line.

As you drag the box, the new position of the line will be shown on the sample (the line pivots about the other drag box):

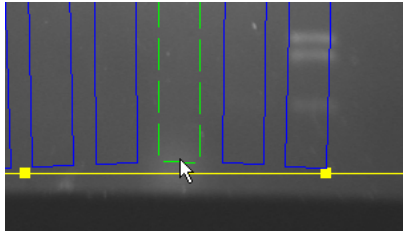


- 6 Drop the line in its new position:

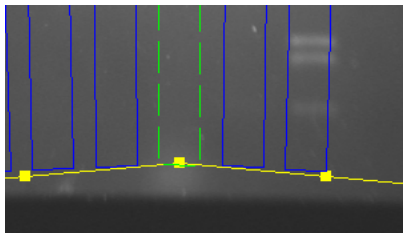


To add a bend to an Rf line:

- 3 Follow Steps 1–2 above.
- 4 Move the pointer to the point on the sample where you want the apex of the bend:



- 5 Double-click. The bend will be added to the line with a new drag box at its apex:



- 6 If you want to adjust the position of the bend, place the pointer over the drag box. The pointer will change to a four-way arrow and you can drag the box to a new position.
- 7 Repeat Steps 4–6 for any other bends you want to add.

To remove a bend from an Rf line:

- 3 Follow Steps 1–2 above.
- 4 Double-click on the drag box at the apex of the bend.

Invert profile

To invert the peak profile for a track (you would use this for a Zymer gel or a gel that has tracks with light bands and tracks with dark bands):

- 1 Click in the track to select it.
- 2 Choose **Invert profile** from the **Track** menu.

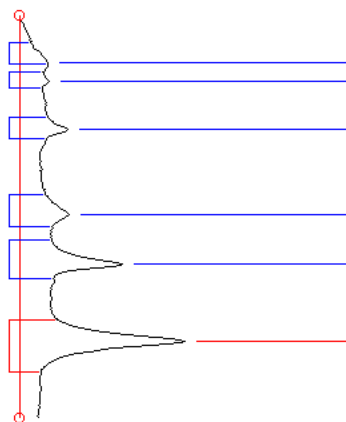
Edit manual baseline

To set a manual baseline for a track's profile:

- 1 Click on the track in the Image pane to select it.
- 2 Right-click in the Image pane (or Profile pane) to display a context menu.

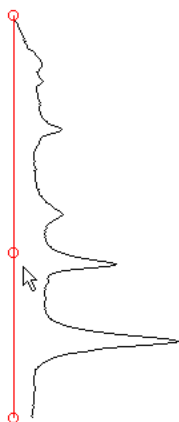
3 Choose **Edit manual baseline**.

The baseline will be displayed with circular drag handles at its ends and in the color selected for the manual baseline (you can use **Configuration** in the **Extras** menu to change the color of the manual baseline – see page 8-143).



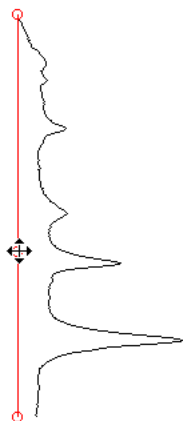
4 If required, double-click on the baseline to add additional drag handles so that you can bend the line.

Any peak markers and boundaries will be removed from the profile.

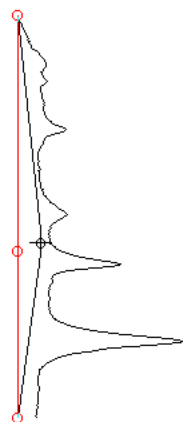


5 To reshape the baseline:

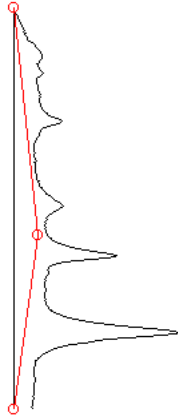
- a Position the pointer over the drag handle you want to move. The pointer will change to a four-way arrow.



- b Drag the handle to reshape the baseline.

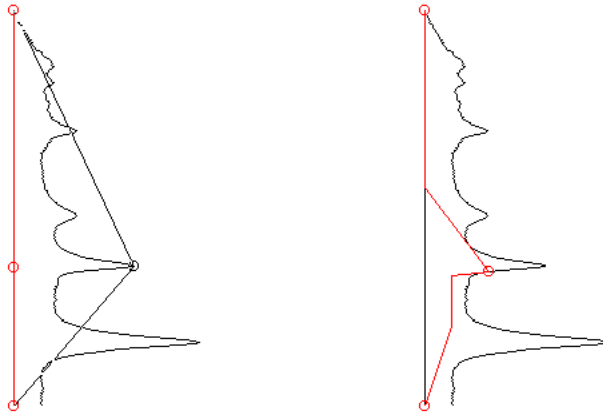


- c Drop the handle in its new position.



Note You cannot drag a handle above the profile line. While you are dragging a handle, the new baseline may be drawn above the profile, but when you release the mouse button it will be reshaped so that it always lies below it.

For example, when you release the mouse button,



will become

Delete manual baseline

To delete a manual baseline for a track:

- 1 Click on the track in the Image pane to select it.
- 2 Right-click in the Image pane (or Profile pane) to display a context menu.
- 3 Choose **Delete manual baseline**.

MW/quantity standard

To define a track as a molecular weight and/or quantity standard (for its area of interest) if it is not already defined as a standard, and to assign molecular weights and/or quantities to the peaks:

- 1 Click in the required track to select it.
- 2 Locate the peaks on the track if they haven't already been located.
- 3 If necessary, edit the peaks.
(In particular, if you want to assign a set of molecular weights from a standard, you should remove any spurious peaks to avoid any standards being assigned to them.)



- 4 Choose **MW/quantity standard** from the **Track** menu (or the pop-up menu displayed by right-clicking in the track label) to define the track as a molecular weight/quantity standard.

The track will be labeled **MwS** and the command will be checked in the menus when the track is selected.

- 5 The **Assign molecular weight/quantity** dialog box will be displayed open at the **From standard** page so that you can assign molecular weights and/or quantities to the peaks in the track.

This dialog box is also displayed when you choose **Assign molecular weight** from the **Peak** menu – see page 8-104 for details.

To remove the molecular weight/quantity standard track status from a track:

- 1 Click in the required track to select it.



- 2 Choose **MW/quantity standard** from the **Track** menu (or the pop-up menu displayed by right-clicking in the track label).

The **MwS**, **QuS** or **MQS** label will be removed from the track and the command will be unchecked in the menus when the track is selected.

Matching standard

This operation is only available if you have purchased the GeneTools Match software option.

Note This command is only relevant when the matching **Type** selected in the **Matching parameters** dialog box (See *Band matching*, page 8-53) is **Band**; you do not need to define a matching standard for **Profile** matching.

When you match peaks on the tracks in an area of interest, they are matched to the active matching standard track for that area of interest.

To make a track a matching standard (and in the process make it the active matching standard for its area of interest):

- 1 Click on the track in the Image pane to select it.



- 2 Choose **Matching standard** from the **Track** menu.

(Alternatively, right-click on the track's label in the Track label pane to select it and pop up a menu, then choose **Matching standard** from the menu.)

The track label will show **MS*** – the MS means it is a matching standard, the * means it is the active matching standard (if there was a previous active matching standard, it will now show **MS** to show that it is still a matching standard but no longer the active matching standard).

See the entry for **Active matching standard** in the *Track label context menu*, page 8-149, for how to make an existing matching standard the active matching standard.

To remove matching standard status from a track:

- 1 Click on the track in the Image pane to select it.



- 2 Choose **Matching standard** from the **Track** menu again.

(You can use the track context menu instead if you wish.)

If the track was the active matching standard, the other matching standard (if any) with the highest track number will become the active matching standard.

Insert

Before carrying out any of the procedures described in this topic for inserting tracks, you must:

- 1 Click in the Gel window containing the sample to select it; if there is more than one area of interest, click in the relevant one.
- 2 Unlock the tracks if they are locked (choose any of the track editing commands such as **Position all**, **Move/tilt** and so on).

Note In order to place a track on a sample by double-clicking, you must choose **Move/Tilt** or **Width** from the **Track** menu to unlock the tracks.

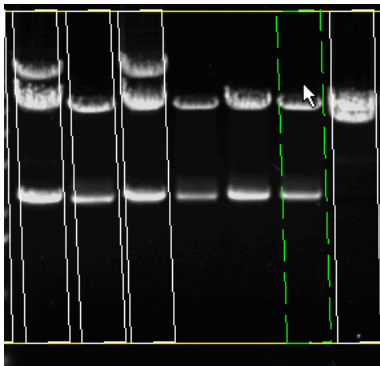
You can now place a new tracks on a sample by:

- selecting a menu command
- double-clicking
- dragging out the track.

Using a menu command

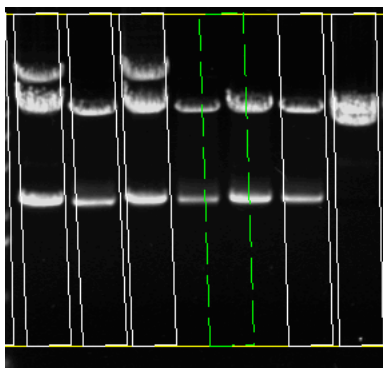
To place a new track on a sample using a menu command after following Steps 1 and 2:

- 3 Click in the track to the right of the space into which you want to insert the new track:



- 4 Choose **Insert** from the **Track** menu.

Provided there is enough space for the track (including inter-track space) the new track will be inserted. The new track will have the same size and shape as the selected track.



You may need to adjust the position or the width of the track after it has been inserted.

Double-clicking

To place a track on a sample by double-clicking after following Steps 1 and 2:

Note In order to place a track on a sample by double-clicking, you *must* choose **Move/Tilt** or **Width** from the **Track** menu to unlock the tracks at Step 2.

- 3 Click on a track with the size and shape required for the new track (you can always change these later).

Note You cannot use a track from a different area of interest as the model for the new track – you must select a track in the same area of interest.

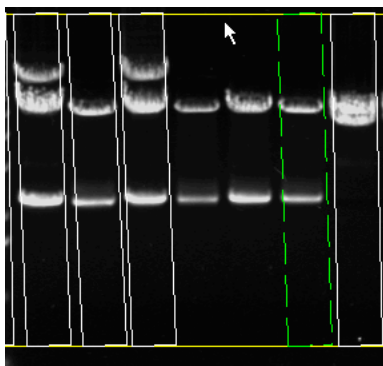
- 4 Double-click at the point where you want the track to be.

The track will be inserted centered horizontally at the point you clicked provided this would not cause the new track to overlap existing tracks. If there would be an overlap, the track is not inserted.

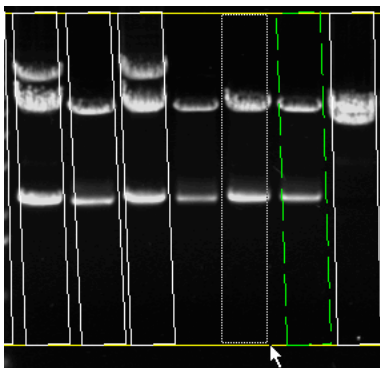
Dragging

To place a track on a sample by dragging out the track after following Steps 1 and 2:

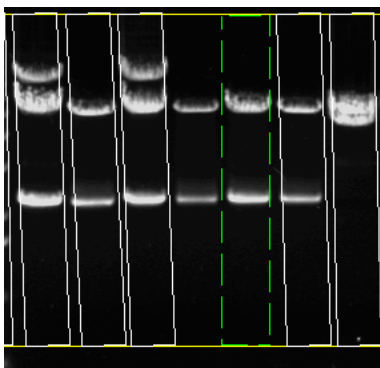
- 3 If **Width individual** is unchecked in the **Track** menu, choose it to set individual width mode.
- 4 Move the pointer to the position where you want to place one of the corners of the track (it doesn't matter which corner):



- 5 Press and drag out to the opposite corner (a rectangle will be drawn on the image as you are dragging, to show the position of the track):



- 6 Release to place the track on the sample.



Delete

To delete a track from a sample:

- 1 Click in the track in the Image or Track label pane to select it.
- 2 Unlock the tracks if they are locked.
- 3 Choose **Delete** from the **Track** menu or press **DEL** on the keyboard.

Enable

To enable a disabled track:

- 1 Lock the tracks in *all* the areas of interest in the Gel window.
- 2 Click on the track in the Image or Track label pane to select it.
- 3 Choose **Enable** from the **Track** menu or the pop-up menu displayed when you right-click in the Track label pane.

Disable

To disable a track:

- 1 Lock the tracks in *all* the areas of interest in the Gel window.
- 2 Click on the track in the Image or Track label pane to select it.
- 3 Choose **Disable** from the **Track** menu or the pop-up menu displayed when you right-click in the Track label pane.

When a track is disabled, the label in the Track label pane, the profile in the Profile pane and values in the Peak value pane are grayed. Results for disabled tracks do not appear in the Results pane or in printed reports.

Copy to clipboard

To copy a picture of the image lying within the borders of the selected track to the clipboard:

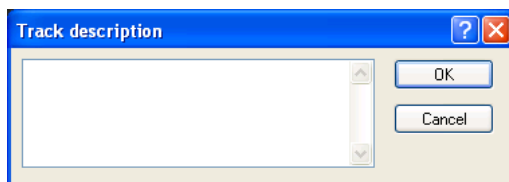
Choose **Copy to clipboard** from the **Track** menu or the context menu displayed when you right click in the Track label pane.

Description

To add a description for a track:

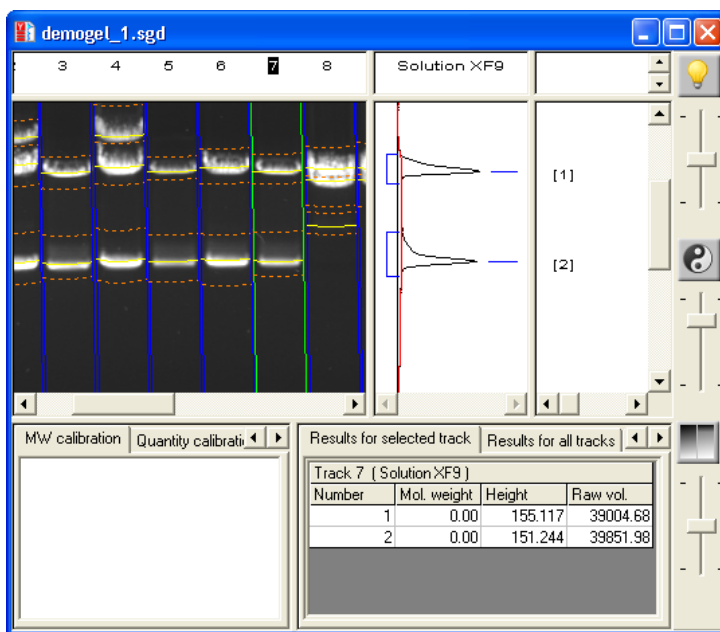
- 1 Lock the tracks in *all* the areas of interest in the Gel window.
- 2 Click on the track in the Image or Track label pane to select it.

- 3 Choose **Description** from the **Track** menu or the pop-up menu displayed when you right-click in the Track label pane, to display the **Track description** dialog box:



- 4 Type the description in the edit box.
- 5 Press **OK** to confirm the description and close the dialog box.

The description will be shown in the track Description pane in the Gel window – “Solution XF9” in the following example:

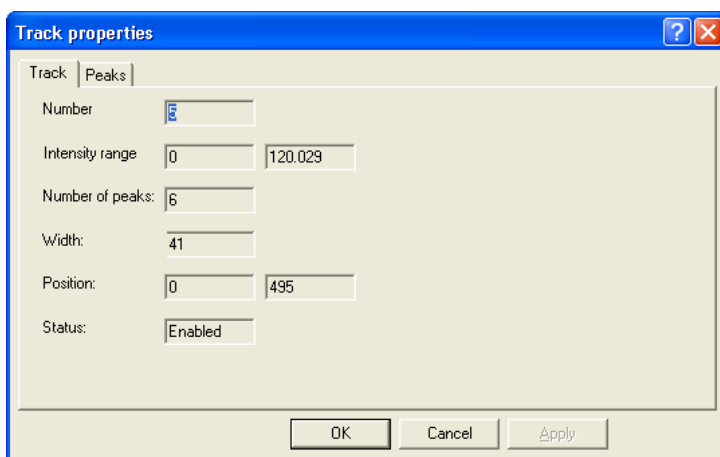


The description will also be shown with the results for individual tracks if they are included in Gel reports.

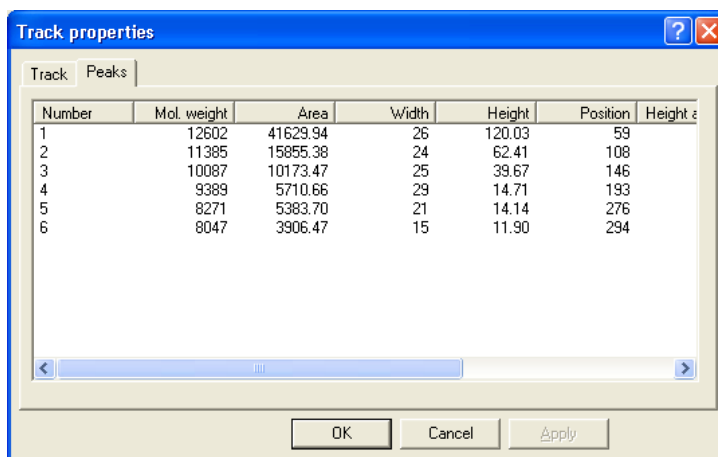
Properties

To display information about a track selected in the Image pane:

- 1 Click in the Gel window containing the sample to select it.
- 2 Click in the track in the Image or Track label pane to select it.
- 3 Choose **Properties** from the **Track** menu to display the **Track properties** dialog box:

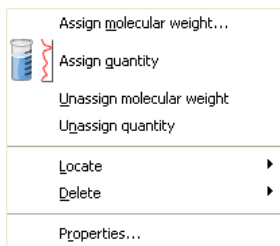


- 4 Click on the **Peaks** tab to display a table of information about the peaks in the track:



The **Track properties** dialog box can also be displayed for the track selected in the **Profile comparison** window by choosing **Properties** from the **Profile** menu.

Peak



Assign molecular weight

Notes You can only assign molecular weights/quantities when the tracks are locked – see the entry for **Lock all** in the **Track** menu (page 8-74).

You will need to define molecular weight/quantity standard tracks and assign molecular weights to them in each area of interest for which you want molecular weight results – the molecular weight calibrations in each area of interest are independent of all the others (but for quantities, you can use the quantity calibration from a different area of interest).

To assign molecular weights and/or quantities to a molecular weight/quantity standard track (see the entry for **MW/quantity standard** in the **Track** menu (page 8-94) for how to make a track a molecular weight/quantity standard track):

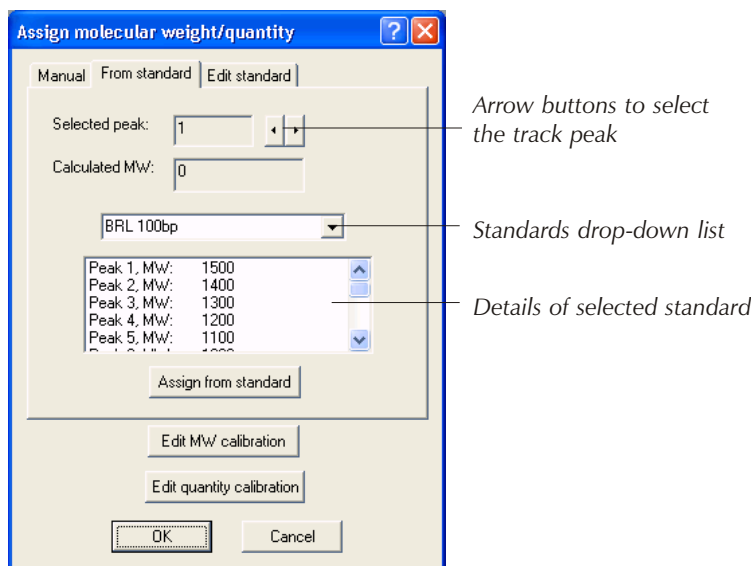
- 1 If you want to assign a molecular weight/quantity to a single peak, select it in the Image pane or Profile pane; if you want to assign a series of molecular weights/quantities, select the first (highest molecular weight) peak to which you want to assign a molecular weight/quantity. In fact this step is not essential as you can change the selected peak later.

Note When you assign molecular weights/quantities from a molecular weight standard library, the molecular weights/quantities in the standard are assigned to each peak in turn, starting from the selected peak. You should check that each peak in the track corresponds to a molecular weight/quantity in the standard, and vice versa – delete any spurious peaks (see **Delete Selected peak(s)** – page 8-113) and add any missing ones (double-click in the profile pane).



- 2 Choose **Assign molecular weight** from the **Peak** menu.

The **Assign molecular weight/quantity** dialog box will be displayed open at the **From standard** page:



The **Selected peak** box shows the number of the selected peak; you can change it using the arrow buttons, but not by typing into the box. The **Calculated MW** box is also read-only and will show the molecular weight of the selected peak calculated using any other molecular weights you have entered and the peak position – it will show 0 if you have not entered enough data to calculate a molecular weight.

This dialog box allows you to assign molecular weights and/or quantities from a standard or assign molecular weights and/or quantities to individual peaks manually. It also allows you to edit a molecular weight/quantity standard in a library and change the way molecular weights and quantities are calculated from molecular weight/quantity standard tracks.

To assign molecular weights and/or quantities from a molecular weight standard library:

- 1 If the **Selected peak** box does not show the peak corresponding to the first molecular weight/quantity in the standard, use the arrow buttons to select that peak.

- 2 Choose the required standard from the Standards drop-down list.

The list box below the Standards drop-down list will show the peak/molecular weights/quantities for the standard.

- 3 Press **Assign from standard**.

To assign molecular weights and/or quantities to individual peaks manually:

- 1 Click on the **Manual** tab to display the **Manual** page:

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Assign molecular weight/quantity" with a blue title bar and standard Windows window controls. It has three tabs: "Manual" (selected), "From standard", and "Edit standard". The "Manual" tab contains the following elements:

- "Selected peak:" label followed by a text box containing "4" and two arrow buttons (left and right).
- "Calculated MW:" label followed by a text box containing "0".
- "Assigned MW:" label followed by a text box containing "0".
- "Assign value to peak" button.
- "Assign quantity to peak" button.
- "Edit MW/ calibration" button.
- "Edit quantity calibration" button.
- "OK" and "Cancel" buttons at the bottom.

- 2 If the **Selected peak** box does not show the peak to which you want to assign a molecular weight or quantity, use the arrow buttons to select it.
- 3 To assign a molecular weight:
 - a Enter the molecular weight that you want to assign in the **Assigned MW** box.
 - b Press **Assign value to peak**.

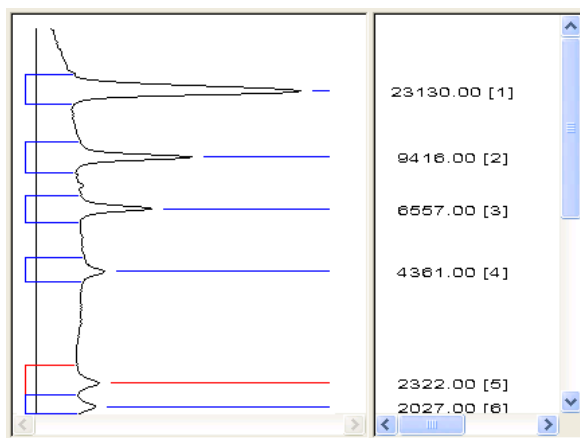
The **Selected peak** box will show the next peak ready for you to assign the next molecular weight.

To assign a quantity:

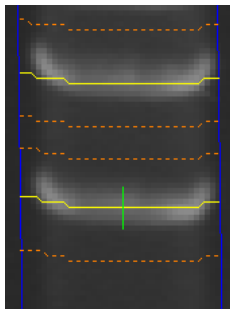
- a Press **Assign quantity to peak** to display the **Assign calibrated quantities** dialog box.
 - b This dialog box is also displayed when you choose **Assign quantity** from the **Peak** menu – see page 8-110 for details.
- 4 Repeat Steps 2 and 3 for any other molecular weights/quantities that you want to assign (you must assign at least two molecular weights).

When you press **Assign from standard** on the **From standard** page or **Assign value to peak** or **Assign quantity to peak** on the **Manual page**:

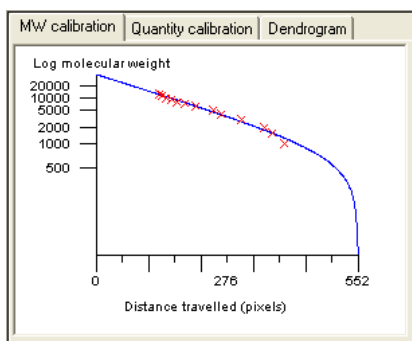
- The assigned molecular weight(s)/quantities will appear in the Peak value pane next to the relevant peak(s) in the Profile pane when **Molecular weight/Quantity** is selected in the **View** menu:



- The peak marker on the track in the Image pane will have a short line across it to show that it has been assigned a molecular weight and/or quantity:



- The **MW calibration** tab/**Quantity calibration** tab in the Gel window's Graphics pane will show (for the selected area of interest) the calibration points and the selected calibration curve joining them (see the next instructions for selecting the type of calibration curve). For example (see the next command for an example showing the **Quantity calibration** tab):



Note You can define more than one track in an area of interest as a standard, and assign molecular weights to each of them (see the next step for choosing how multiple standard tracks are used to calculate the molecular weights on other tracks).

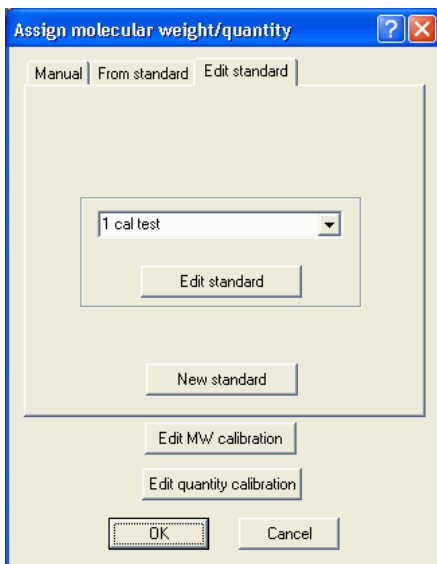
To specify how molecular weights/quantities are calculated from standard tracks:

Press **Edit calibration** or **Edit quantity calibration** in the **Assign molecular weight/quantity** dialog box to display the **Molecular weight calibration** or **Quantity calibration** dialog box.

These dialog boxes are also displayed when you choose **Molecular weight calibration** or **Quantity calibration** from the **Edit** menu – see page 8-50 and page 8-52 for details.

To edit an existing molecular weight/quantity standard or to create a new one:

Click on the **Edit standard** tab to display the **Edit standard** page:



To edit a standard:

- a Choose the standard from the drop-down list box.
- b Press **Edit standard** to display the **Edit molecular weight standard** dialog box.

This dialog box is also displayed when you choose **Edit standard** from the **Edit** menu when a Molecular weight library window is selected – see page 8-59 for details.

To create a new standard:

Press **New standard** to display the **New standard** dialog box.

This dialog box and the **Edit molecular weight standard** dialog box following it are also displayed when you choose **New standard** from the

Menus

Edit menu when a Molecular weight library window is selected – see page 8-57 for details.

Assign quantity

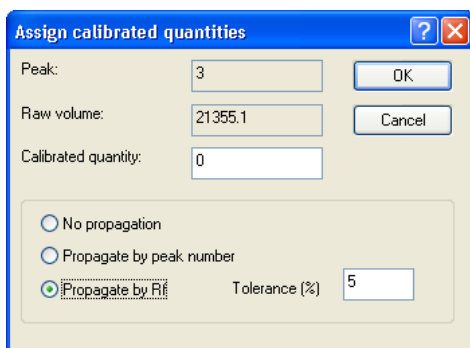
Note You can only assign quantities to peaks when the tracks are locked – see the entry for **Lock all** in the **Track** menu, page 8-74.

Note The **Assign quantity** command will be disabled if you have defined more than one area of interest and chosen to base the quantity calibration in the selected area of interest on another area of interest – see the entry for **Quantity calibration** in the **Edit** menu, page 8-52, for how to set the quantity calibration method.

Note You can also assign quantities using the **Assign molecular weight** command – see the previous command.

To assign a quantity to a peak in a track:

- 1 Click in the required track in the Image pane in the Gel window to select it.
- 2 Locate the peaks on the track if they haven't already been located.
- 3 Select the peak to which you want to assign a quantity.
- 4 Choose **Assign quantity** from the **Peak** menu (or the pop-up menu displayed when you right-click on the peak) to display the **Assign calibrated quantities** dialog box:



Assign calibrated quantities

Peak: 3 OK

Raw volume: 21355.1 Cancel

Calibrated quantity: 0

☐ No propagation

☐ Propagate by peak number

☒ Propagate by Rf Tolerance (%) 5

The **Peak** box is read-only: it shows which peak was selected when you opened the dialog box. The **Raw quantity** box is also read-only: it shows the uncalibrated quantity calculated from the area of the peak. The **Calibrated quantity** box shows the quantity calculated using the existing calibration if there is one, and 0 if there isn't.

The radio buttons are disabled if you have chosen to use a single calibration curve for all tracks – see the entry for **Quantity calibration** in the **Edit** menu, page 8-52, for how to set the quantity calibration method.

- 5 Enter a quantity in the **Calibrated quantity** for the selected peak to add a new calibration point to the calibration curve.
- 6 If you have chosen to calibrate **Each track to separate curves** (see **Quantity calibration** in the **Edit** menu – page 8-52):

Click on **No propagation** if you do not want this quantity assignment applied to any other tracks.

or

Click on **Propagate by peak number** to apply this quantity assignment to the same peak number on all other tracks.

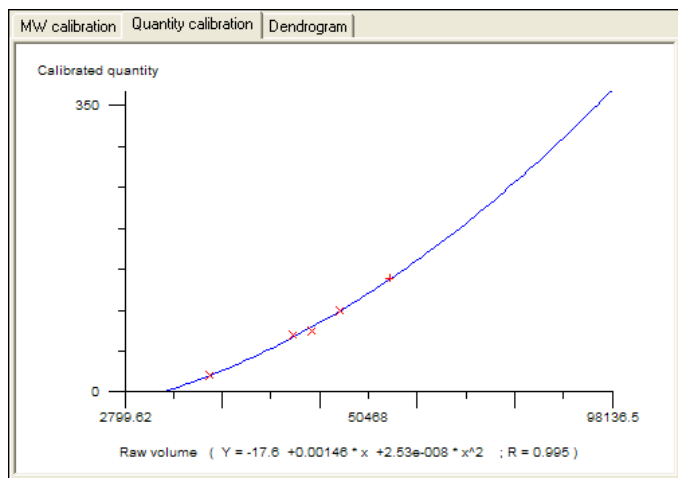
or

- a Click on **Propagate by Rf** to apply this quantity assignment to peaks with the same Rf (within the given tolerance) on all other tracks.
- b Enter a figure in the **Tolerance** box specifying how close the Rf of a peak on another track has to be to the Rf of the selected peak for it to be assigned the quantity calibration.

After you have assigned a quantity to a peak:

- The **Quantity calibration** tab in the Gel window's Graphics pane will show (for the selected area of interest) the calibration points and the selected calibration curve joining them (see **Quantity calibration** in the **Edit** menu, page 8-52, for how to

select the type of calibration curve: the example shows a quadratic calibration curve – the equation of the curve is given in the **Raw volume** axis label):



The horizontal axis shows the raw quantity measured on the gel; the vertical axis shows the calibrated quantity.

- The assigned quantity and the quantities calculated from the calibration curve will appear in the Peak value pane next to the relevant peak(s) in the Profile pane.

Unassign molecular weight

To remove a molecular weight assignment from a peak:

- 1 Select the peak by clicking on it in the Profile pane or the Image pane.
- 2 Choose **Unassign molecular weight** from the **Peak** menu.

The command is disabled if the selected peak does not have a molecular weight assignment.

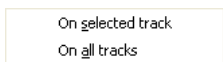
Unassign quantity

To remove a quantity assignment from a peak:

- 1 Select the peak by clicking on it in the Profile pane or the Image pane.
- 2 Choose **Unassign quantity** from the **Peak** menu.

The command is disabled if the selected peak does not have a quantity assignment.

Locate submenu



The commands on the **Locate** submenu are disabled unless the tracks are locked.

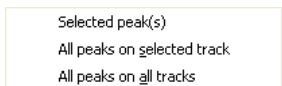
To detect the peaks on the selected track automatically:

Choose **On selected track** from the **Peak Locate** submenu.

To detect the peaks on all tracks (in the selected area of interest) automatically:

Choose **On all tracks** from the **Peak Locate** submenu.

Delete submenu



The commands on the **Delete** submenu are disabled unless the tracks are locked.

To delete one or more adjacent peaks from the selected track:

- 1 In the profile pane, move the pointer to a point *within* the first peak.
- 2 Drag to the final peak.
- 3 Choose **Selected peak(s)** from the **Peak Delete** submenu.

To delete all the peaks from the selected track:

Choose **All peaks on selected track** from the **Peak Delete** submenu.

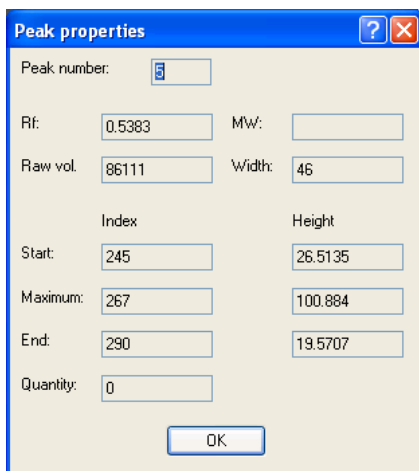
To delete all the peaks from all tracks (in the selected area of interest):

Choose **All peaks on all tracks** from the **Peak Delete** submenu.

Properties

To display a read-only dialog box showing properties of the selected peak:

Choose **Properties** from the **Peak** menu:

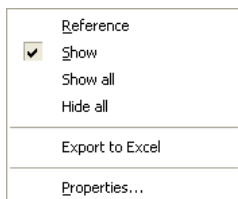


A screenshot of a Windows-style dialog box titled "Peak properties". The dialog has a blue title bar with a question mark icon and a close button. The main area is light beige and contains several input fields. At the bottom is an "OK" button.

Peak properties	
Peak number:	5
Rf:	0.5383
MW:	
Raw vol.	86111
Width:	46
Index	Height
Start:	245
	26.5135
Maximum:	267
	100.884
End:	290
	19.5707
Quantity:	0
OK	

Profile

The **Profile** menu appears in the menu bar when the **Profile comparison** window is selected: see the entry for **Profile comparison** in the **View** menu, page 8-63, for how to display the **Profile comparison** window and *Profile comparison window*, page 6-18, for more information about the **Profile comparison** window.



A screenshot of a menu titled "Profile". It contains several options, with "Show" selected (indicated by a checkmark).

Reference	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Show	
Show all	
Hide all	
Export to Excel	
Properties...	

Reference

To select a track in a Profile comparison as the reference track (if the GeneTools matching option is installed, the reference track will also be used as the matching reference for peak matching – see *Matching tracks in the Profile comparison window*, page 1-123):

- 1 Select the track by clicking on it in the left-hand pane in the **Profile comparison** window.
- 2 Choose **Reference** from the **Profile** menu (or the context menu displayed when you right-click in a profile window).

If the track selected as the reference track is shown (see next command), it will be plotted in the selected highlight color in the Profiles pane. (The highlight color is red by default, but you can set another color using the **Configuration** dialog box – see page 8-143 for details)

If you repeat the procedure for:

- another track, the new track will become the reference track
- a track that is already the reference track, it will be deselected and there will be no reference track.

Show

To include a track in the **Profile comparison** window in a comparison if it is not already included (or to remove it if it is):

- 1 Select the track by clicking on it in the left-hand pane in the **Profile comparison** window.
- 2 Choose **Show** from the **Profile** menu (or the pop-up menu displayed when you right-click on a track in the **Profile comparison** window).

The command is checked in the menu when the selected track is included in the comparison.

Menus

Show all

To include all the tracks in the **Profile comparison** window in a comparison:

Choose **Show all** from the **Profile** menu.

Hide all

To remove all the tracks from a comparison in the **Profile comparison** window:

Choose **Hide all** from the **Profile** menu.

Export to Excel

To export to Excel the data points (Rf and height values) for a profile displayed in the **Profile comparison** window:

- 1 Select the track by clicking on it in the left-hand pane in the **Profile comparison** window.
- 2 If the track is not already included in the comparison, choose **Show** from the **Profile** menu (or the pop-up menu displayed when you right-click on a track in the **Profile comparison** window).
- 3 Choose **Export to Excel** from the **Profile** menu (or the pop-up menu displayed when you right-click on a track in the **Profile comparison** window).

Note **Export to Excel** is only enabled for tracks that are currently shown in the **Profile comparison** window.

The data will be exported to a new worksheet in Excel, which will be opened if it is not already open. One data point will be exported for each pixel along the track.

Properties

To display information about a track selected in the **Profile comparison** window:

- 1 Click on the track in the left-hand pane of the **Profile comparison** window to select it.
- 2 Choose **Properties** from the **Profile** menu (or the pop-up menu displayed when you right-click on a track in the **Profile comparison** window) to display the **Track properties** dialog box.

This dialog box is also displayed when you select **Properties** from the **Track** menu for a track selected in an Image window – see page 8-102 for details of the information shown in this dialog box.

Matching

Note The commands in the **Matching** menu are only available if the GeneTools matching option is installed.

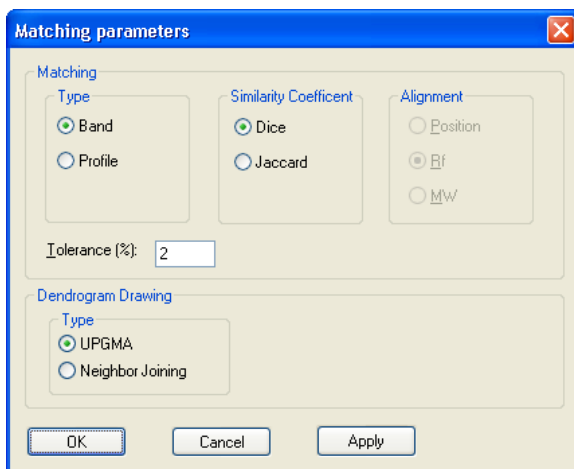
The menu appears in the menu bar when the **Profile comparison** window is selected: see the entry for **Profile comparison** in the **View** menu, page 8-63, for how to display the **Profile comparison** window; and *Profile comparison window*, page 6-18, for more information about the **Profile comparison** window; and *Matching tracks in the Profile comparison window*, page 1-123, for detailed instructions on how to carry out matching in the **Profile comparison** window.

Parameters
Include all
Exclude all
Include selected in matching

Parameters

To set or view the tolerance and method used for matching in the **Profile comparison** window:

- 1 Choose **Parameters** from the **Matching** menu to display the **Matching parameters** dialog box:



Note This dialog box is also displayed when you choose **Band matching** from the **Edit** menu when an area of interest is selected in a Gel sample window – the settings you make here for the **Profile comparison** window are independent of any settings you may have made for any areas of interest.

- 2 In the **Matching** box:
 - a In the **Type** box, select **Band** or **Profile** to decide whether to match tracks using the detected bands (peaks) or the intensity profiles.

Note When **Profile** is selected:

- There is no need to detect the peaks on the tracks (unless you choose to match on the basis of molecular weights by choosing **MW** from the **View Plot mode** submenu).
- There is no need to define a matching reference track.
- The **Similarity Coefficient** controls in the **Matching parameters** dialog box are disabled.

b If you selected **Band** in the **Type** box, select **Dice** or **Jaccard** from the **Similarity Coefficient** box to choose how the similarity coefficients should be calculated – see *Similarity matrix*, page 1-114, for how the similarity coefficients are defined.

Note The **Alignment** radio buttons are permanently disabled when you display the dialog box for the **Profile comparison** window – the setting (**Rf** or **MW**) is controlled by the commands in the **View Plot mode** submenu, which also set the horizontal axis of the graphs in the Profiles pane.

3 Enter a **Tolerance** figure to set a limit to the accuracy required when matching peaks (this does not have to be a whole number).

Note For **Profile** matching, the **Tolerance** must be set to a number less than or equal to 1.

4 In the **Dendrogram Drawing** box choose whether to use **UPGMA** or **Neighbor Joining** as the linkage rule for the dendrogram – see *The dendrogram*, page 6-10, for a description of these linkage rules.

5 Press **Apply** to see the effect of the settings without closing the dialog box; press **OK** to save the new settings and then close the dialog box.

Include all

To include all the tracks in the **Profile comparison** window in the matching:

Choose **Include all** from the **Matching** menu.

Menus

Exclude all

To exclude all the tracks in the **Profile comparison** window from the matching:

Choose **Exclude all** from the **Matching** menu.

Include selected in matching

Note This command is only available if the GeneTools matching option is installed.

To include a track in the **Profile comparison** window in a matching if it is not already included (or to remove it if it is):

- 1 Select the track by clicking on it in the left-hand pane in the **Profile comparison** window.
- 2 Choose **Include selected in matching** from the **Matching** menu (or the pop-up menu displayed when you right-click on a track in the **Profile comparison** window).

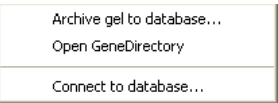
The command is checked in the menu when the selected track is included in the matching.

You must include at least three tracks in the matching to produce matching results.

Note You can choose **Include all** from the **Matching** menu to include all tracks in the matching or **Exclude all** from the **Matching** menu to remove all tracks from the matching.

See *Matching tracks in the Profile comparison window*, page 1-123, for detailed instructions on how to carry out matching in the **Profile comparison** window.

Database menu



Note The **Database** menu and toolbar are only available if you have purchased the GeneDirectory option.

Archive gel to database

Note The **Archive gel to database** command is disabled unless GeneTools is already connected to a GeneDirectory database (see the entry for **Connect to database**, page 8-126). However, GeneDirectory does not need to be running for the command to be available, and if it is running, it does not matter which, if any, database is open.

The **Archive gel to database** command enables you to transfer gel data from GeneTools to GeneDirectory. GeneDirectory works with the gel analysis data calculated in GeneTools, so it is important to ensure that this data is as accurate and complete as possible before transferring it to GeneDirectory. In particular, you should check that the Rf start and finish lines are correct and that, where relevant, you have assigned any molecular weight ladders to enable GeneDirectory to carry out any required normalization.

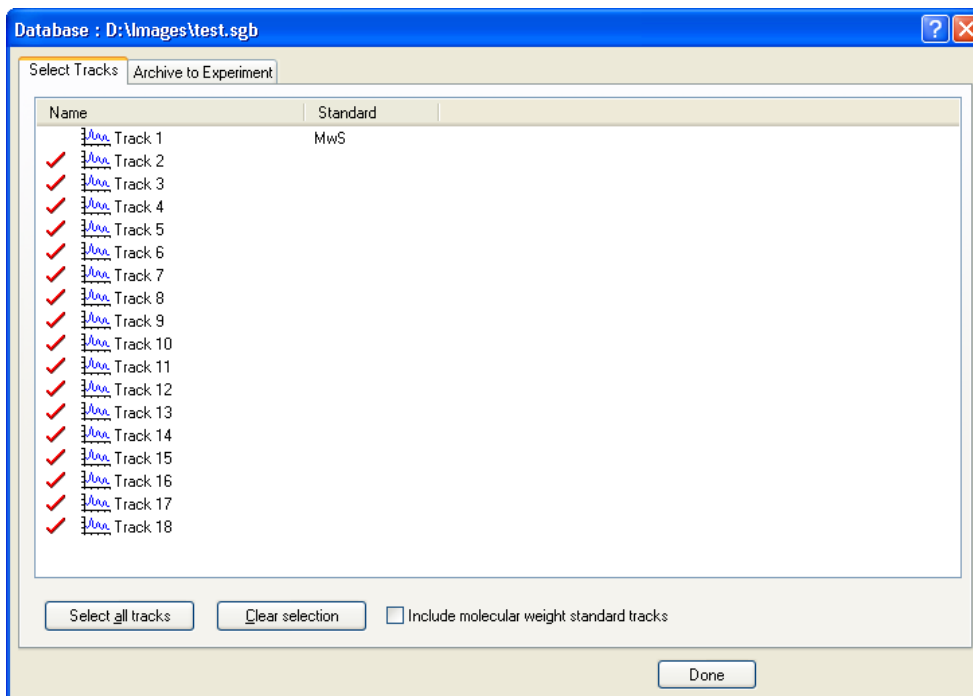
Note Because of the difficulty of maintaining consistency across gels, you are recommended not to use Rf values alone.

To archive gel data to the connected database:

- 1 Use GeneTools to analyze the gel as required.

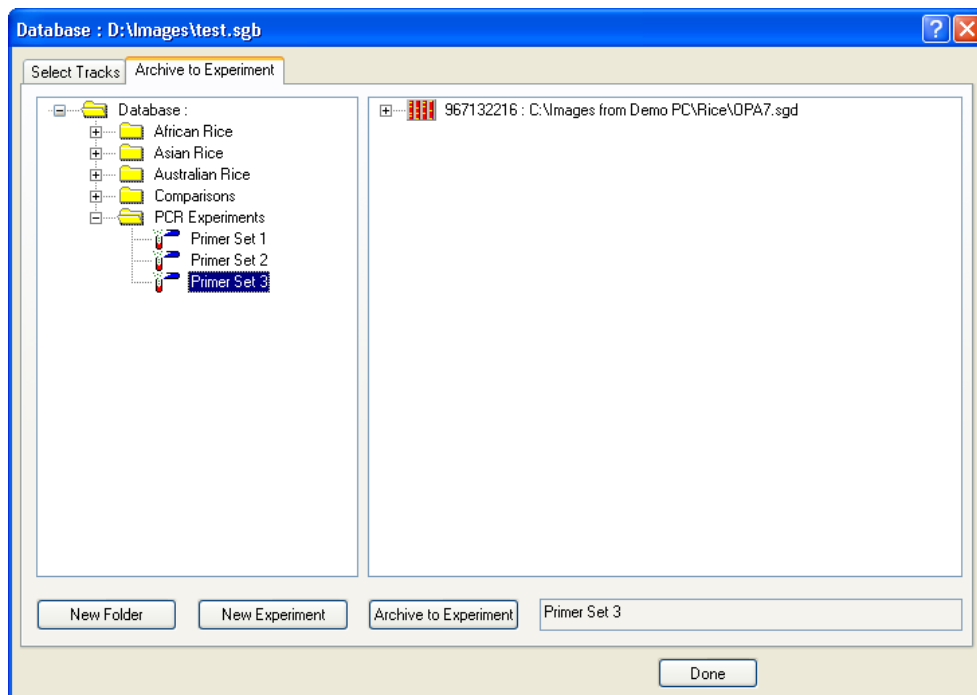


- 2 Choose **Archive gel to database** from the GeneTools **Database** menu to display the **Database** dialog box:



- 3 On the **Select Tracks** page, to select the tracks for which you want to transfer data to the GeneDirectory database:
 - a Click on a track to select or deselect it – selected tracks are shown by a check.
 - b Check or uncheck **Include molecular weight standard tracks** if you want to select or deselect any molecular weight standard tracks.
 - c Press **Select all tracks** to select all tracks (except molecular weight standard tracks unless **Include molecular weight standard tracks** is checked).

- 4 Click on the **Archive to experiment** tab to display the **Archive to Experiment** page:



The left-hand pane shows the folders and experiments in the database structure – you can open a folder to display any subfolders and experiments in a folder by clicking on its + icon or hide them by clicking on its - icon.

When you select an experiment in the left-hand pane, the right-hand pane shows the gels it contains. You can open a gel in the right-hand pane to display the tracks it contains by clicking on its + icon or hide them by clicking on its - icon.

You use the **Archive to experiment** page to select the experiment to contain the gel data. You can create a new experiment or export the data to an existing one. You can also create a new folder to hold the new experiment, and edit the names of folders and experiments.

- 5 To create a new folder in a folder:
 - a Click on the parent folder in the left-hand pane to select it.

- b** Press **New Folder** to create the new folder with the default name 'New Folder'.
- c** Click on the 'New folder' label to select the folder and click again to select the name text.
- d** Edit the folder name.

Note Folder names must be unique within folders – you will not be able to create a second new folder in a folder until you have edited the name of the first new folder.

- 6** To create a new experiment in a folder:
 - a** Click on the folder in the left-hand pane to select it.
 - b** Press **New Experiment** to create the new experiment with the default name 'New experiment'.
 - c** Click on the 'New experiment' label to select the experiment and click again to select the name text.
 - d** Edit the experiment name.

Note Experiment names must be unique within the database – you will not be able to create a new experiment if the database already contains an experiment called 'New experiment'.

- 7** To add gel data to an experiment:
 - a** Click on the experiment in the left-hand pane to select it.
 - b** Press **Archive to Experiment** to add the gel to the experiment – the gel will appear in the right-hand pane.

Note GeneTools assigns a unique identifier to each gel, so it will be able to detect whether you have previously exported data from the current gel to the database. If you have, you will be asked if you want to create a copy of the data, and if you do, the gel will be labeled accordingly. However, since you can reanalyze the data in GeneTools between exports and select different tracks for each export, the data contained in a copy may not be the same as the data originally exported, or the same as in other copies.

8 Press **Done** to close the **Database** dialog box.

Open GeneDirectory

Note The **Open GeneDirectory** command is disabled unless GeneTools is already connected to a GeneDirectory database (see the entry for **Connect to database**, page 8-121).

To open the connected database in GeneDirectory.



Choose **Open GeneDirectory** from the GeneTools **Database** menu.

GeneDirectory will be started up if it is not already running. If GeneDirectory is already running with a database open in it, that database will be closed. The connected database will then be opened in GeneDirectory.

Notes If the connected database is already open in GeneDirectory, choosing **Open GeneDirectory** will close it and any open View windows.

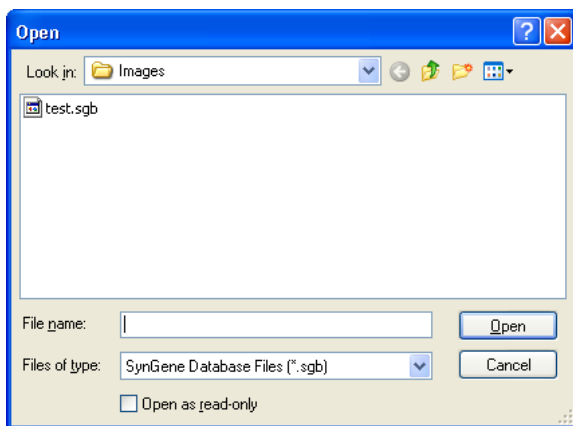
Choosing **Open GeneDirectory** will have no effect if GeneDirectory is already running and is displaying a dialog box.

Connect to database

To connect GeneTools to a GeneDirectory database:



- 1 Choose **Connect to database** from the GeneTools **Database** menu to display a standard Windows Open dialog box:

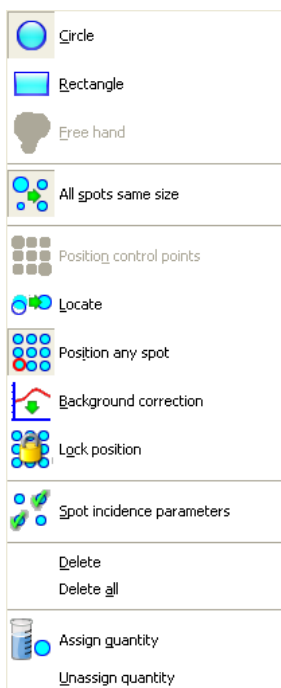


- 2 Select the folder holding the database file from the **Look in** drop-down list.
- 3 Click on the database file in the file list box to select it.
- 4 Press **Open** to connect GeneTools to the database.

The database connection is saved when you close GeneTools, so it will be reconnected automatically to the same database when you reopen it.

Note You can only use the **Archive gel to database** (see page 8-121) and **Open GeneDirectory** (see page 8-125) commands if GeneTools is connected to a database.

Spots



Circle

To make the selected rectangular frame circular or all frames circular if **All spots same size** is set:



Choose **Circle** from the **Spots** menu.

Rectangle

For a Spot blot sample, to make the selected circular frame rectangular or all frames rectangular if **All spots same size** is set:



Choose **Rectangle** from the **Spots** menu.

Menus

For a Manual band quantification sample, to place a rectangular box over a band on the sample:



- 1 If it isn't already selected, choose **Position any spot** from the **Spots** menu to unlock the sample for changing boxes.



- 2 If it isn't already selected, choose **Rectangle** from the **Spots** menu

- 3 Use the mouse to drag out the shape of the box you want to add.

When you release the mouse button the box will be drawn in the color for selected spot frames (you can use **Configuration** in the **Extras** menu to set the color) and labeled with a number showing the order in which the box was added. The measurement taken from the box will be shown in the Manual band quantification results table.

See *How to adjust the size and shape of spot frames*, page 4-21, for how to change the shape of rectangular frames/boxes on the image.

Free hand

Note This command only applies to Manual band quantification samples.

To draw a free hand box over a band on a Manual band quantification sample:

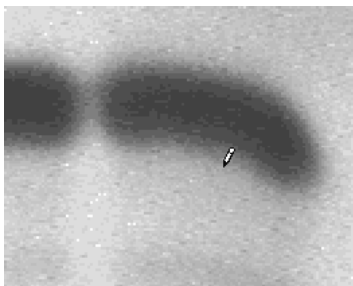


- 1 If it isn't already selected, choose **Position any spot** from the **Spots** menu to unlock the sample for changing boxes.

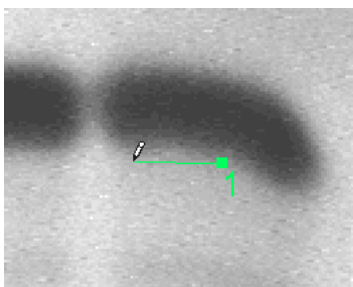


- 2 If it isn't already selected, choose **Free hand** from the **Spots** menu.

- 3 Move the pointer to the position where you want to start drawing the free hand box:

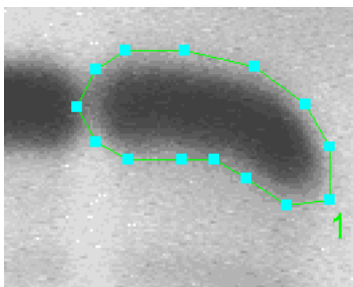


- 4 Press the left-hand mouse button, and keeping it pressed, move the mouse to draw the outline of the box:



The outline will be labeled with a number showing the order in which it has been added.

- 5 When you have completed the outline, release the mouse button. The outline will be closed and drag boxes placed where the outline changes direction:



After it has been added, you can adjust the overall position of the box by dragging a point inside the box, or reshape it by dragging the handles on its outline.

All spots same size

To set all the spot frames to the same size and shape as the selected spot frame:



Choose **All spots same size** from the **Spots** menu.

The shape and size of all the spot frames will be adjusted to match the selected spot frame.

While **All spots same size is set**, if you adjust the size or shape of an individual spot frame, all the spot frames will be adjusted to match them.

If **All spots same size** is set when you locate spots automatically, the spot frames placed on the detected spots will all have the same size; if it is not set, the spot frames will be sized individually for each spot detected.

Position control points

To unlock the spot frames on a gridded Spot blot image so that you can move or reshape the grid using control points:



Choose **Position control points** from the **Spots** menu.

The spot frames are also unlocked so that you can change their size and (in the case of rectangular spot frames) shape using the mouse.

The command is checked in the menu and the button is shown as depressed when the spot frames are unlocked; choose the command or press the button again to lock them.

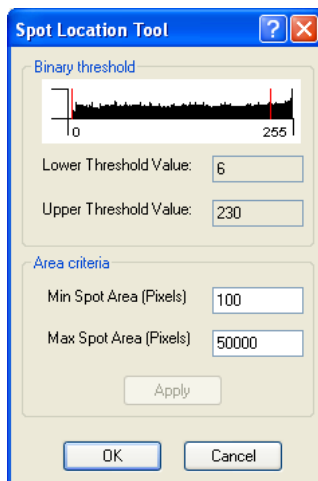
See *Adjusting the positions of all the spot frames in a grid*, page 4-26, for how to use the control points to adjust the grid.

Locate

To locate spots automatically on a non-gridded Spot blot image or to fine-adjust the size and position of the spot frames on a gridded sample:



- 1 Choose **Locate** from the **Spots** menu to display the **Spot Location Tool** dialog box:



The dialog box allows you to set the criteria used for detecting spots:

- The **Area criteria** controls set the minimum and maximum size of spots – spot frames will appear on areas in the image satisfying both the **Binary threshold** and **Area criteria**.
 - The red vertical lines in the **Binary threshold** control set the lower and upper boundaries of the range of intensities corresponding to spots in the image – areas in the image within this range will be marked in blue while the **Spot Location Tool** dialog box is open.
- 2 Set the minimum and maximum areas for spots in the **Min Spot Area** and **Max Spot Area** boxes.
 - 3 Press **Apply** to set the area criteria without closing the dialog box – spot frames will appear on areas in the image satisfying both the **Binary threshold** and the new **Area criteria**.

- 4 Drag the red boundary markers in the **Binary threshold** control until the spots, but not the background, in the image are colored blue – as you adjust the boundaries, the spot frames on the image will show where the spots are detected.
- 5 If necessary, repeat Steps 2–5 until the spot frames are accurately positioned on the spots in the image.

Notes If **All spots same size** is not set, the spot frames will be sized optimally for each spot; if it is set, they will all be set to the size of the largest spot.

For a gridded sample, this procedure allows fine adjustment of the size and position of the existing spot frames, which must substantially overlap the actual spots on the image.

Position any spot

To unlock the spot frames on a Spot blot or Manual band quantification image so that you can adjust their size and position (and the shape of rectangular spots) individually, or delete them all together or individually:



Choose **Position any spot** from the **Spots** menu.

When the spot frames are unlocked, the command is checked in the menu and the button is shown depressed in the toolbar. To lock the spot frames, choose the command or press the button again.

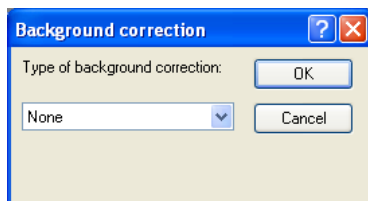
See *How to adjust the spot frame positions*, page 4-26, for how to move the spot frames on the image.

Background correction

To apply or remove background correction to the raw volume measurements from the image:



- 1 Choose **Background correction** from the **Spots** menu to display the **Background correction** dialog box:



- 2 Choose **None**, for no background correction, or **Automatic** or **Manual** background correction.
- 3 If you have selected **None** or **Automatic**, press **OK** to close the dialog box and set the background correction method.

For **Manual** background correction, you need to specify areas in the image from which the background readings should be taken – each spot result is then corrected by the reading from the background area nearest to it. See *How to apply background correction to results*, page 4-35, for details of how to apply **Manual** background correction.

Lock position

To lock the spot frames on a sample so that they cannot be moved or resized with the mouse or, in the case of non-gridded samples, deleted:



Choose **Lock position** from the **Spots** menu.

Lock position is checked in the **Spots** menu and the button is shown as depressed in the toolbar when the frames are locked.

When the spot frames are locked, you cannot adjust their size, shape or position using the mouse. However, you can change them between circular and rectangular shapes, set all to the same size as the selected spot frame using **All spots same size**, and use automatic spot location.

To unlock the spot frames:



Choose **Lock position** from the **Spots** menu.

If the sample is gridded, either **Position control points** or **Position any spot** will become selected, depending on which was selected before the spot frames were locked. For non-gridded samples, **Position any spot** will become selected.

The Spot frames are also unlocked if you choose **Position control points** or **Position any spot** from the **Spots** menu.

Spot incidence parameters

To define an incidence condition for a Spot blot or Manual band quantification sample:



- 1 Choose **Spot incidence parameters** to display the **Spot incidence parameters** dialog box:

The dialog box titled "Spot incidence parameters" has a blue header bar with a question mark and a close button. The main area is light beige. It contains three rows of controls:

- Row 1: "Incidence type:" followed by a dropdown menu showing "Raw vol." and an "OK" button.
- Row 2: "Incidence value range:" followed by a dropdown menu showing "Greater than" and a "Cancel" button.
- Row 3: "Incidence value" followed by a text box containing "0", a "Get spot value" button, and an "Apply" button.

- 2 Choose the parameter for which you want to set the incidence condition from the **Incidence type** drop-down list box – you can choose **Raw vol**, **% Total raw vol**, **Pixel area** or **Quantity**.
- 3 Choose the comparison operation to be used from the **Incidence value range** drop-down list box – you can choose **Greater than**, **Less than** or **Two-value range**.

If you choose **Two-value range**, an additional box will appear in the dialog box so that you can enter two values:

- 4 Enter the value(s) to be used for the comparison in the **Incidence value** (**Upper incidence value** and **Lower incidence value**) box(es).

Or:

- a Click in a spot/box on the image to select it.
 - b Press **Get spot value** to transfer the **Incidence type** value for the selected spot/box to the incidence value box.
- 5 Press **Apply** to set the incidence condition without closing the **Spot incidence parameters** dialog box (you will be able to view the effect if the **Incidence** page is shown in the Results/Incidence/Calibration Graph pane).

Press **OK** to set the incidence condition and close the **Spot incidence parameters** dialog box.

You can view the incidence matrix in the **Incidence** page in the Results/Incidence/Calibration Graph pane at the bottom of the Spot blot/Manual band quantification window – see page 6-32.

Delete

To remove a spot/box from a non-gridded Spot blot or Manual band quantification sample:



- 1 If it isn't already selected, choose **Position any spot** from the **Spots** menu to unlock the sample for changing boxes.

- 2 Click in the box to select it.

- 3 Either:

Choose **Delete** from the **Spots** menu.

or

Press **DEL**.

After the box has been removed, the numbers labeling the remaining spots/boxes will be changed so that they are still consecutive.

Delete all

To remove all the spots/boxes from a non-gridded Spot blot or Manual band quantification sample:



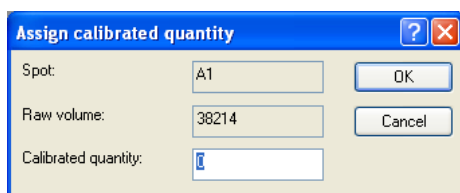
- 1 If it isn't already selected, choose **Position any spot** from the **Spots** menu to unlock the sample for changing boxes.

- 2 Choose **Delete all** from the **Spots** menu.

Assign quantity

To assign a quantity to a spot or box to calibrate quantity measurements from other spots or boxes:

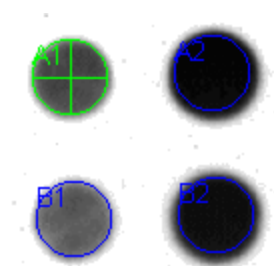
- 1 Click on the spot frame or box for the spot or band to which you want to assign a quantity.
- 2 Choose **Assign quantity** from the **Spots** menu to display the **Assign calibrated quantity** dialog box:

A screenshot of the 'Assign calibrated quantity' dialog box. It has a blue title bar with a question mark and a close button. The dialog contains three input fields: 'Spot:' with the value 'A1', 'Raw volume:' with the value '38214', and 'Calibrated quantity:' with a small blue icon. There are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons on the right.

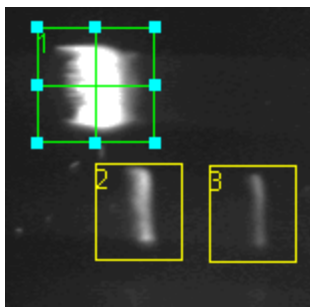
- 3 Enter the known quantity for the spot or band in the **Calibrated quantity** box.
- 4 Press **OK** to close the dialog box and set the calibration.

After you have assigned a quantity to a spot frame or box:

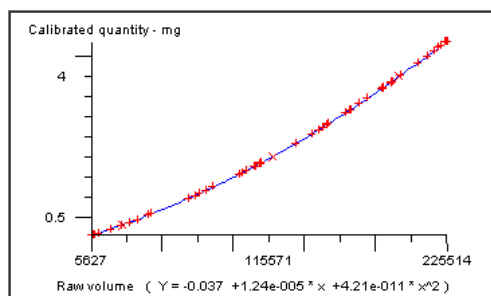
- The calibrated spot or box will be marked with a cross:



or



- The **Quantity calibration** page in the Spot blot/Manual band quantification window's Graphics pane will show the calibration points and the selected calibration curve joining them (see the entry for **Quantity calibration** in the **Edit (Spot blot)** menu, page 8-56, for how to select the units and shape of calibration curve: the example shows a quadratic calibration curve – the equation of the curve is given in the **Raw volume** axis label):

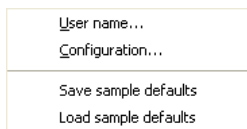


Unassign quantity

To remove a quantity calibration from a spot frame or box:

- 1 Click on the spot frame or box from which you want to remove a quantity assignment.
- 2 Choose **Unassign quantity** from the **Spots** menu.

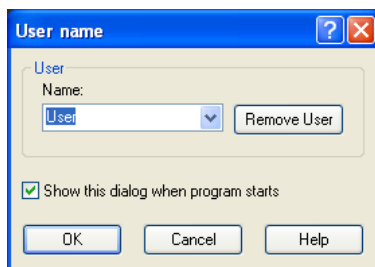
Extras



User name

To enter, view or change the program user's name, or to delete a user's name from the list of users:

- 1 Choose **User name** from the **Extras** menu to display the **User name** dialog box:



- 2 Select a user name from the drop-down list box or enter a new name.
- 3 To remove the selected user's name from the list of users, press **Remove User** and repeat Step 2; otherwise go on to Step 4.
- 4 Check **Show this dialog when program starts** to display the program when it starts up so that you can select the user.

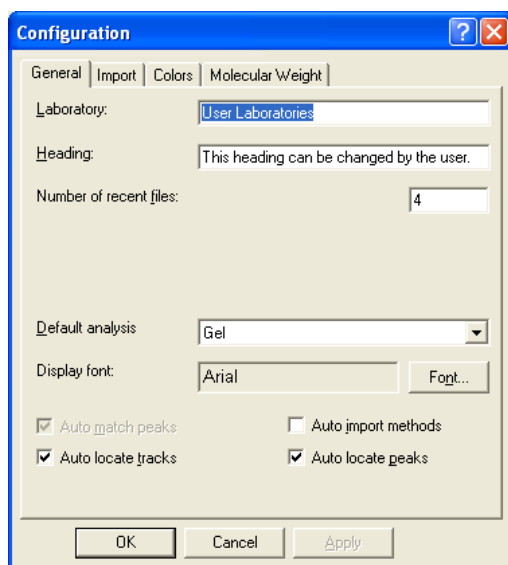
The user name appears in printed reports.

Configuration

To edit or view configuration settings for the program:

Choose **Configuration** from the **Extras** menu to display the **General** page of the **Configuration** dialog box.

On the **General** page:



- Enter the name of your **Laboratory**. This will appear at the top of each page in printed reports.
- Enter a **Heading** to appear on the top of each page in printed reports.
- Enter the **Number of recent files** that you want to appear listed on the **File** menu so that you can open them without using the **Open** command.
- Choose whether to set the **Default analysis type** to be **Gel**, **Colony (pour plate)**, **Spot blot**, **Manual Band Quantification** or **High Throughput Gel** (you can always override the default in the **Sample properties** dialog box if required). This will be the type selected in the **Sample properties** dialog box when you:
 - open an unanalyzed image (a secure sample file that has been saved in the capture program but has not yet been saved in GeneTools).
 - create a new secure sample file (for example, from a non-secure .tif or .bmp image file).
- The **Display font** box shows the font currently selected for presenting data in the Gel window's Track label and Peak value panes. Press **Font** to display a standard Windows Font dialog box to select another font.

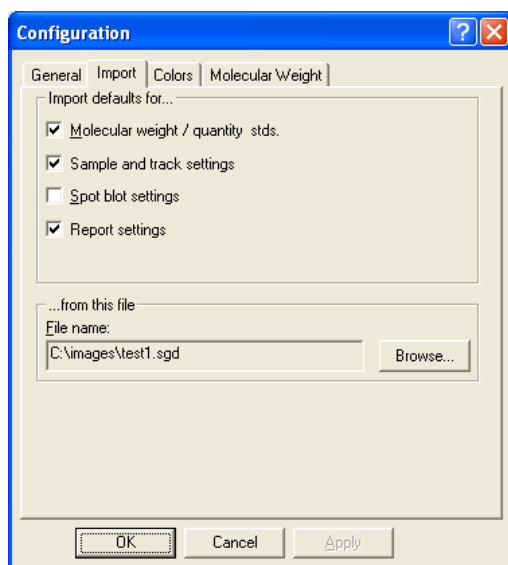
- **Auto match peaks** is permanently selected in this version of GeneTools – if the GeneTools matching feature is installed, matching is always carried out automatically when appropriate.
- Check **Auto locate tracks** if you want automatic track detection to be selected by default when unanalyzed images are opened.
- Check **Auto import methods** if you want to import the settings selected on the **Import** tab from the file selected on the **Import** tab when you:
 - open an unanalyzed image (a secure sample file that has been saved in the capture program but has not yet been saved in GeneTools).
 - create a new secure sample file (for example, from a non-secure .tif or .bmp image file).

See the instructions for the **Import** page later in this section for how to choose what settings are imported.

Note You can also import methods to an existing secure sample file – see the entry for **Import method** in the **File** menu (page 8-15).

- Check **Auto locate peaks** if you want to automatically detect the peaks on a track when its geometry is changed. This happens, for example, when you change the number of tracks (for example when you first assign a number of tracks to a sample) or change a track's position or width. It is recommended that this option is kept turned on in normal usage.

On the **Import** page:



When you open an unanalyzed secure sample file or create a new secure sample (for example, from a non-secure .tif or .bmp image file), you can choose to import settings automatically from another sample file – this page allows you to choose which settings to import and the default file from which to import the settings.

- Press **Browse** to display a standard Windows **Open** dialog box so that you can select a file from which to import settings. The **File name** box shows the currently selected file.

Note The check boxes are disabled if no file is selected.

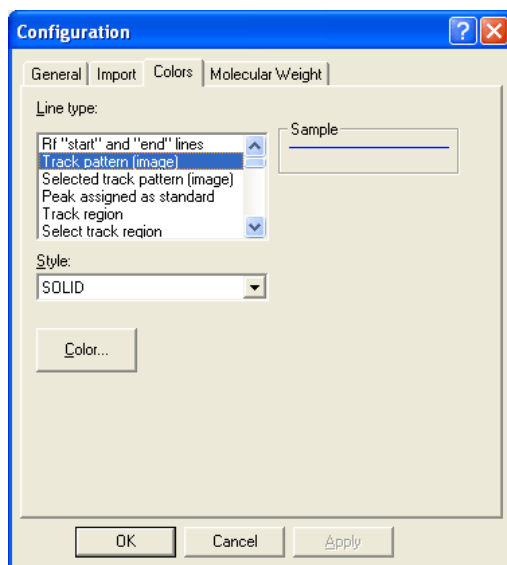
- Check **Molecular weight stds.** to import the molecular weight standard tracks and molecular weight assignments from a saved sample file.
For example, if tracks 1 and 5 in the saved file are molecular weight standards, any previous molecular weight assignments will be removed from the selected sample and tracks 1 and 5 will become molecular weight standards.
If peaks 3, 5 and 7 in track 1 of the saved file have assigned molecular weights, peaks 3, 5 and 7 in track 1 of the selected sample will be assigned the same molecular weights.

- Check **Sample and track settings** to import the electrophoresis direction, image type, number of tracks and track positions from a saved sample file.
- Check **Spot blot settings** to import the number, shape and positions of the spot frames from a saved spot blot sample file.
- Check **Report settings** to import the report setup from a saved sample file.

Note The controls on this dialog box are also displayed with their current settings in the dialog boxes that are displayed (a) when you choose **Import method** from the **File** menu to import settings from a file to the sample in the currently selected Gel window, and (b) if **Auto import methods** on the **General** page is checked, when you open an unanalyzed file or create a new secure sample file (for example, from a non-secure .tif or .bmp image file).

Changing the settings in any of these dialog boxes changes them in all of them.

On the **Colors** page:



- 1 Select the program component for which you want to change the color or style from the **Line type** scroll box.

The current color and style setting of the selected component will be illustrated in the **Sample** box.

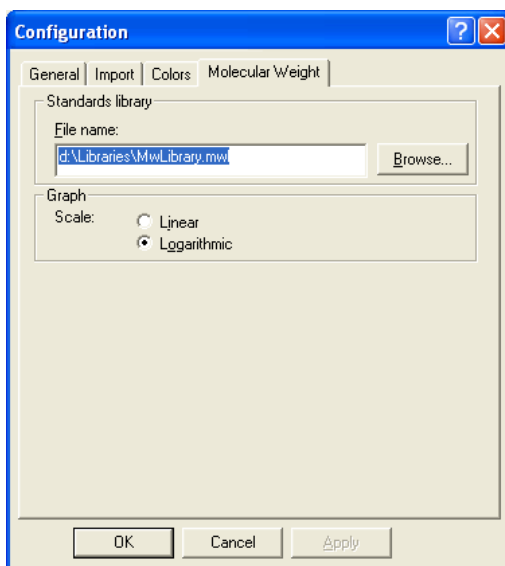
- 2 Press **Color** to display a dialog box allowing you to select a new color for the selected program component.
- 3 Choose a new line style for the program component selected in the **Line type** scroll box from the **Style** drop-down list box.

You can set the color of the following components in the program using the **Colors** page in the **Configuration** dialog box:

Rf start and end lines	in the Image pane
Track pattern (image)	the track boundary lines in the Image pane
Selected track pattern (image)	the selected track's boundary lines in the Image pane
Peak assigned as standard	peaks in the Image pane used for molecular weight or quantity calibration
Track region	area of interest in the Image pane
Select track region	selected area of interest in the Image pane
Peak bounds (profile)	in the Profile pane
Selected peak bounds (profile)	in the Profile pane
Peak markers (image)	in the Image pane
Peak bounds (image)	in the Image pane
Selected peak (image)	in the Image pane
MW graph	in the Graphics pane
MW standard markers	in the Graphics pane when a molecular weight standard track is selected
Quantity calibration graph	in the Graphics pane
Quantity calibration markers	in the Graphics pane
Selected peak match line	the match line shown in the Image pane for the match peak selected in the Peak value pane
Match peak line	in the Image pane
Matching profile	in the Profile pane
Dendrogram leaf	in the Graphics pane
Dendrogram node	in the Graphics pane

Spot blot	on the Spot blot image
Selected Spot blot	on the Spot blot image
Spot blot positioning point	on the Spot blot image
Colony frame	in the colony counting window
Colony shapes	in the colony counting window
Colony class 1 markers	in the colony counting window
Colony class 2 markers	in the colony counting window
Colony manual markers	in the colony counting window
Colony exclude outline	in the colony counting window
Colony exclude fill	in the colony counting window
Manual baseline	in the Profile pane
Profile comparison reference	in the Profile comparison window
Profile tracks 1–12	in the Profile comparison window

On the **Molecular Weight** page:



Menus

- 1 Enter a new path and name in the **File name** box or press **Browse** to display a standard Windows **Open** dialog box to choose a new default molecular weight library.
- 2 Click on the **Linear** or **Logarithmic** radio button to choose the type of scale to be used for the calibration graph shown in the **MW calibration** tab in the Graphics pane.

Save sample defaults

To save the settings you have selected for the selected Sample window as the defaults to be used for new samples of the same type (fluorescence or absorption):

Choose **Save sample defaults** from the **Extras** menu.

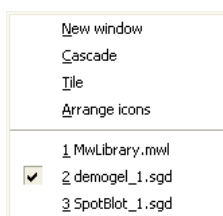
See the next command for how to apply the sample defaults to the sample in a Sample window. Separate sample defaults are saved for each user.

Load sample defaults

To load your default settings for the type of sample in the selected Sample window (see the previous command for how to save sample defaults):

Choose **Load sample defaults** from the **Extras** menu.

Window



New window

To open a new window with the same contents as the currently selected window:

Choose **New window** from the **Window** menu.

You can use **New window** to create a new **Profile comparison** window or a new Molecular weight library window.

Cascade

To resize and arrange the open (non-minimized) windows so that they are overlapping with their title bars visible:

Choose **Cascade** from the **Window** menu.

Tile

To resize the open (non-minimized) windows so that they are non-overlapping and fill the main window space:

Choose **Tile** from the **Window** menu.

Arrange icons

To tidy up the icons representing minimized windows:

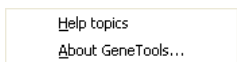
Choose **Arrange Icons** from the **Window** menu.

Windows open in GeneTools

To select one of the open windows:

Choose the window's name from the list at the bottom of the **Window** menu.

Help



Help topics

To open the contents window for the on-line Help system:

Choose **Help topics** from the **Help** menu.

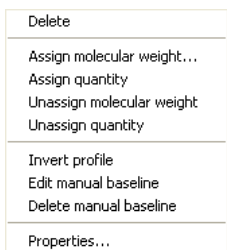
About GeneTools

To display information about the version of GeneTools that you are using:

Choose **About GeneTools** from the **Help** menu to display the **About GeneTools** dialog box.

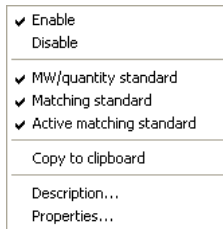
This dialog box also shows the serial number of your copy of the program.

Image pane and Profile context menus



The commands in the menu displayed when you right-click on a peak in the Image pane or the Profile pane in a Gel window are equivalent to the similarly named commands in the **Peak** menu (**Delete** is equivalent to **Delete Selected peak(s)**) or **Track** menu (**Properties** gives the properties of the selected peak, not the track properties) – see the entries in the **Peak** menu (page 8-104) and **Track** menu (page 8-72) sections for details.

Track label context menu



Apart from **Active matching standard**, the commands in the menu displayed when you right-click on a label in the Track label pane are equivalent to the similarly named commands in the **Track** menu.

Active matching standard

Notes **Active matching standard** has no effect if there is only one matching standard track.

This command is only relevant when the matching **Type** selected in the **Matching parameters** dialog box (See *Band matching*, page 8-53) is **Band**; you do not need to define an active matching standard for **Profile** matching.

To make a matching standard track the active matching standard for the selected area of interest:

- 1 Right-click on the track's label in the Track label pane to select it and pop up a menu.
- 2 Choose **Active matching standard** from the menu.

The track label will show **MS*** – the MS means it is a matching standard, the * means it is the active matching standard (the previous active matching standard will now show **MS** to show that it is still a matching standard but no longer the active matching standard).

If you choose **Active matching standard** again, the other matching standard with the highest track number is made the active matching standard.

Peak value pane context menu



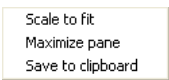
Delete

Delete

To remove a molecular weight assignment from a peak on a molecular weight standard track:

- 1 Choose **Molecular weight** from the **View** menu or click on the **MW calibration** tab in the Graphics pane.
- 2 Select the required molecular weight standard track – the molecular weight assignments will be shown in the Peak value pane.
- 3 Right-click on the molecular weight assignment in the Peak value pane that you want to remove to select the peak and display the Peak value pane context menu.
- 4 Choose **Delete**.

Graphics pane context menu



Scale to fit
Maximize pane
Save to clipboard

Maximize pane on the menu displayed when you right-click in the Graphics pane is equivalent to the same command in the **View** menu if the Graphics pane is selected. **Scale to fit** only appears on the menu if the **Dendrogram** page is selected in the Graphics pane.

Scale to fit

To scale the dendrogram so that it all fits within the Graphics pane:

- 1 Right-click on the dendrogram in the Graphics pane to pop up the Graphics pane context menu.
- 2 Choose **Scale to fit**.

Save to clipboard

To copy the currently displayed contents of the Graphics pane to the clipboard:

- 1 Right-click in the Graphics pane to pop up the Graphics pane context menu.
- 2 Choose **Save to clipboard**.

The contents of the Graphics pane will be copied as an enhanced metafile.

Gel window Results pane context menu

RF
✓ Molecular weight Base pairs
✓ Raw volume Raw volume percentage
✓ Calibrated quantity Calibration standard
Peak width
✓ Peak height Height at peak start Height at peak end
Peak start position Peak position Peak end position
Maximize pane

The Gel window Results pane context menu is displayed when you right-click on the Results pane if it is showing **Results for selected track**, **Results for all tracks** or **Matching comparisons**.

Maximize pane on the Gel window Results pane context menu is equivalent to the same command in the **View** menu if the Results pane is selected.

Result table commands

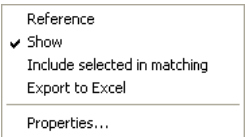
To decide whether or not to include a column for a quantity in a results table:

- 1 Click on the tab for the table to display it.
- 2 Right-click in the table to display the Gel window Results pane context menu.
- 3 Choose the command corresponding to the quantity.

- 4 Repeat for any other quantities.

The commands are checked in the menu when the columns are displayed.

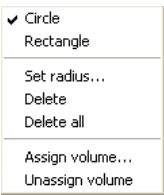
Profile comparison window context menu



The **Profile comparison** window context menu is displayed when you right-click on a track in the Track browser pane in the **Profile comparison** window: all the commands in the menu are equivalent to the similarly named commands in the **Profile** or **Matching** menus.

See *Profile comparison window*, page 6-18, for more information about the **Profile comparison** window.

Spot blot/Manual band quantification window Image pane context menu



The Spot blot/Manual band quantification window Image pane context menu is displayed when you right-click on the image pane in a Spot blot/Manual band quantification window. **Set radius** is described below; the other commands in the menu are equivalent to the similarly named commands in the **Spots** menu.

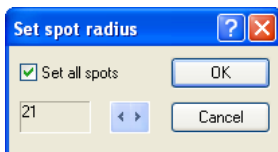
Set radius

To change the radius of one or all of the spot frames on a Spot blot image:



- 1 If the sample is locked, choose **Lock position** from the **Spots** menu to unlock the sample.

- 2 Click on the spot frame that you want to adjust to select it – click on any circular frame if you want to adjust them all.
- 3 Right-click in the image pane and choose **Set radius** from the context menu displayed to display the **Set spot radius** dialog box:



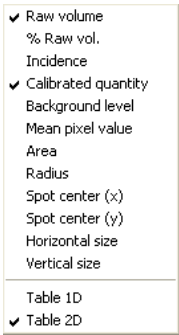
- 4 Check **Set all spots** if you want to change the radius of all the (circular) spot frames; uncheck it if you just want to change the radius of the selected spot frame.

Note The initial **Set all spots** setting is fixed by the setting of the **All spots same size** command in the **Spots** menu. If you change the setting of **Set all spots** in the dialog box, **All spots same size** will be set or unset accordingly when you close it.

- 5 Use the arrow buttons to set the new radius.
- 6 Press **OK** to close the dialog box and set the new radius.

See *Adjusting the size of circular spot frames*, page 4-22, for how to change the spot radius using the mouse.

Spot blot/Manual band quantification window Results pane context menu



The Spot blot/Manual band quantification window Results pane context menu is displayed when you right-click on the Results pane.

Result table commands

You use the commands at the top of the menu to choose what to display in the results table.

To decide whether or not to include a column for a quantity in the results table:

- 1 Click on the Spot blot results tab.
- 2 Right-click in the table to display the Spot blot/Manual band quantification window Results pane context menu.
- 3 Choose the command corresponding to the quantity.
- 4 Repeat for any other quantities.

The commands are checked in the menu when the columns are displayed.

Table 1D/Table 2D

If the sample is gridded (see Step 3 on page 4-4), you can choose whether to display the results in a one- or two-dimensional table.

To choose whether to display Spot blot results in a one- or two-dimensional table:

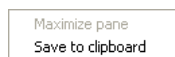
- 1 Click on the Spot blot results tab.
- 2 Right-click in the table to display the Spot blot/Manual band quantification window Results pane context menu.
- 3 Choose **Table 1D** or **Table 2D**.

The selected command will become checked in the menu.

In a one-dimensional table, the results for the first row of spots are given first, then the second row and so on.

Note If the sample is non-gridded, the spots are numbered in the order you added the spots and the results are always displayed in this order in a one-dimensional table – selecting **Table 2D** has no effect.

Spot blot/Manual band quantification window Quantity calibration context menu



The Spot blot/Manual band quantification window Quantity calibration page context menu is displayed when you right-click on the Quantity calibration page.

Note **Maximize pane** is permanently disabled in this menu.

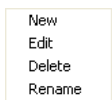
Save to clipboard

To copy a picture of the Spot blot/manual band quantification quantity calibration graph to the clipboard:

- 1 Right click in the **Quantity calibration** page in the Spot blot/Manual band quantification window to display a context menu.

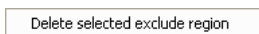
- 2 Choose **Save to clipboard**.

Molecular weight library context menu



The commands in the menu displayed when you right-click on a standard in a Molecular weight library window are equivalent to the similarly named commands in the **Edit** menu (in the **Edit** menu the command names have '**Standard**' appended: for example, **New** is equivalent to **New Standard** in the **Edit** menu).

Colony counting exclude region



The Colony counting exclude region context menu is displayed when you right-click in an exclude region on a colony counting image when the **Adjust exclude region(s)** radio button is selected in the Define frame box at the top left-hand corner of the Colony counting window.

To delete one or more existing exclude regions on a Colony counting image:

- 1 Click on the **Adjust exclude region(s)** radio button in the **Define frame** box at the top left-hand corner of the Colony counting window.
- 2 Click in the first exclude region that you want to delete. Drag handles will appear on the boundary of the exclude region to show it is selected.
- 3 SHIFT-click on any other exclude regions that you want to delete.

Note You can also select several exclude regions by dragging a rectangle on the image – any exclude regions with areas within the rectangle will be selected.

- 4 Right-click in any of the selected exclude regions to pop up a menu.
- 5 Choose **Delete selected exclude region**.

All the selected exclude regions will be deleted.

Index

!

.bmp 1-11, 4-6-4-8, 8-2-8-7
.sgd 1-1-1-2
.tif 1-11, 4-6-4-8, 8-2-8-7

A

About GeneTools 8-148
Absorption 8-30, 8-32, 8-34
Acquire (Twain) 1-13-1-14, 4-8-4-9, 8-13
Acquisition notes 8-38
Active matching standard 1-109, 6-4, 8-149
Adding peaks 1-61-1-64
Adding tracks 1-26-1-30
Align banks of tracks 8-65
All peaks same width 1-52, 8-46
All spots same size 4-21-4-22, 8-127-8-128, 8-130, 8-132
 button 7-10
All tracks to a single curve 8-53
Analysis notes 8-39
Analysis type 8-29-8-35
Analyzed files 1-1-1-2, 8-8, 8-10
Archive gel to database 8-121-8-125
 button 7-8
Area criteria 8-131
Area of interest 1-5-1-134, 8-4, 8-6, 8-36, 8-52
Arrange Icons 8-147
Assign from standard 1-82, 8-106-8-107
Assign molecular weight 8-104-8-110
Assign quantity 1-77-1-78, 4-34-4-35, 8-110-8-112, 8-137-8-138
 button 7-7, 7-12

Assign value to peak 1-82, 8-106–8-107
Assigning molecular weights and quantities 1-79–1-83
Auto import methods 1-14, 4-9, 8-141
Auto locate peaks 1-60, 8-141
Auto locate tracks 1-24–1-25, 8-141
Auto match peaks 8-141
Automatic import 1-16–1-18, 4-11–4-13

B

Background correction (Spots) 4-35–4-37, 8-133
 button 7-11
Background correction (tracks) 1-51–1-59, 8-45–8-50, 8-90–8-94
Band matching 1-105–1-106, 1-117, 1-123–1-127, 1-129, 6-23–6-25, 8-53–8-55,
8-95–8-96
 button 7-9
 editing matches 1-110–1-111
 setting method and tolerance 8-53–8-55
 viewing results 1-112–1-114, 1-117
Baseline correction 1-51–1-58, 8-45–8-50, 8-90–8-94
Baseline offset 1-55, 8-49
Binary threshold 8-131–8-132
bmp images 1-11–1-13, 4-6–4-8, 8-2–8-7
Box
 removing 8-136
Browser 1-12–1-13, 4-7–8-10

C

Calibrations toolbar 7-7–7-8
Cascade 8-147
Change password 1-100, 8-42
Circle 4-18, 4-22, 8-127
 button 7-12
Circular spot frames 4-18–4-19
 adjusting size 4-22, 4-24
 changing to rectangular 4-22
Close 8-11
Colony counting sample file

- creating 8-5, 8-7
- Sample properties 8-31–8-32
- Colony counting window 6-26–6-27
- Colors 8-143–8-145
- Combine all standards 1-76, 8-51
- Configuration 8-139–8-146
- Connect to database 8-126
 - button 7-9
- Context-sensitive Help button 7-2
- Copy 8-44
- Copy to clipboard 8-100
- Copying a picture of an image to the clipboard 1-133–1-134, 4-44
- Cut 8-44

D

- Dark colonies 8-31
- Database menu 8-120–8-126
- Database toolbar 7-8–7-9
- Default analysis type 8-140
- Default molecular weight library 1-98–1-104, 8-146
- Delete 4-21, 8-136, 8-150
 - All peaks on all tracks 8-113
 - All peaks on selected track 8-113
 - Selected peak(s) 8-113
- Delete (track) 1-30, 8-99
- Delete all 4-21, 8-136
- Delete manual baseline 1-59, 8-94
- Delete selected exclude region 8-156–8-157
- Delete standard 1-104–1-105, 8-61
- Deleting peaks 1-67–1-68
- Dendrogram 1-115–1-117, 1-127, 6-10–6-13, 6-25, 8-67–8-68
 - description 6-10–6-13
 - references 6-10
- Description (track) 1-47–1-48, 8-100–8-101
- Description pane 6-4
- Detection filter 1-53, 8-47
- Dice 1-108, 1-114, 8-55, 8-119
- Disable (track) 1-47, 8-100

Display corrected profiles 8-65
Display font 8-140

E

Each track to separate curves 8-53
Edit calibration 8-108
Edit manual baseline 1-56–1-59, 8-90–8-93
Edit molecular weight standard 1-101–1-102, 8-58–8-59, 8-109
Edit standard 1-102–1-103, 8-59–8-61, 8-109
Electrophoresis direction 8-30
Enable (track) 1-47, 8-100
Enter password dialog box 8-41
Excel 1-130–1-131, 4-42–4-43, 8-16–8-17
Exclude all 1-125, 6-24, 8-120
Exit 8-40
Experiment
 creating new 8-124
Export table to Excel 1-130, 4-42, 8-16–8-17
 button 7-3
Export To Excel 8-116
Export to Word 1-132–1-133, 8-18
 button 7-3
Exporting data to a GeneDirectory database 8-121–8-125

F

File formats 1-1–1-2
Fluorescence 8-30, 8-32, 8-34
Folder
 creating new 8-124
Free hand
 button 7-12

G

Gamma correction 6-33
Gel
 archiving 8-121–8-125

- Gel analysis
 - copying a picture of an image to the clipboard 1-133–1-134
 - creating a report in Word 1-132–1-133
 - exporting results to Excel 1-130–1-131
 - printing results 1-127–1-129
 - Sample properties 8-30–8-31
 - saving results to CSV 1-131–1-132
- Gel sample file
 - creating 8-4–8-5, 8-7
 - import settings 1-14–1-20
 - opening 1-2–1-10, 1-12–1-13
 - saving 1-20–1-21
- Gel window 6-2–6-16
- GeneDirectory
 - opening 8-125
- GeneSnap 1-1
- Graphics pane 1-89, 1-115–1-117, 6-7–6-13
- Gridded Spot blot sample 4-4, 8-33
 - changing the shape of the grid 4-29, 4-31
 - creating 8-7
 - moving the grid 4-27
 - positioning point 4-26–4-31
 - scaling and rotating the grid 4-27–4-29

H

- Heading 8-140
- Height individual 8-73
- Help topics 8-148
- Hide all (profile) 1-120, 6-21, 8-116
- High Throughput Gel Sample file
 - creating 8-6
- High Throughput Gel
 - Align banks of tracks 6-5, 8-65
 - automatic track and peak location 6-6
 - Gel windows 6-2–6-16
 - manual matching 6-16
 - Sample properties 8-35–8-39
- Histogram 6-34–6-35, 8-64

I

Image brightness 6-33
Image contrast 6-33
Image controls 6-33–6-36
Image pane 6-4–6-6, 6-29–6-30
Import method 1-17–1-20, 4-11–8-16
Incidence 4-39–4-40, 6-32, 8-134–8-135
Include all 1-125, 6-24, 8-119
Include selected in matching 1-125, 6-24, 8-120
Information 8-37
Insert (track) 1-27–1-28, 8-96–8-99
Integration parameters 1-51–1-55, 8-45–8-50
 button 7-7
Intensity range 1-49
Interpolate between standards 1-76, 8-52
Invert profile 8-90

J

Jaccard 1-108, 1-114, 8-55, 8-119

L

Laboratory 8-140
Library properties 1-95
Light colonies 8-31
Linear 1-74, 8-53, 8-56
Linear through origin 1-74, 8-53, 8-56
Load Sample defaults 8-146
Locate (peaks)
 On all tracks 8-113
 On selected track 8-113
Locate (spots) 4-16–4-17, 8-131–8-132
 button 7-11
Locate tracks 1-25, 8-73
 button 7-4
Locating peaks 1-59–1-64
Locating peaks automatically 1-60–1-61

Lock 1-99, 8-41–8-42
Lock all 1-25–1-26, 8-74
 button 7-4
Lock position 4-32, 8-133–8-134
 button 7-11
Log piecewise linear 1-75, 8-51
Log-linear fit 1-75, 8-51
Lowest slope 1-53–1-55, 8-48–8-49

M

Madge Sample file
 creating 8-7
Manual band quantification 6-28–6-33
Manual band quantification results 6-31–6-33
Manual band quantification sample file
 Sample properties dialog box 8-5, 8-7, 8-34
Manual baseline 1-56–1-59, 8-90–8-94
Match lines 1-110, 8-66
Matching matrix 1-113–1-114, 6-14–6-16
Matching comparisons 1-112–1-113, 6-14–6-16
Matching parameters 1-107–1-109, 8-53–8-55
 Profile comparison window 1-124
Matching peaks 8-53–8-55
Matching reference track
 Profile comparison window 1-126
Matching results
 Profile comparison window 1-126–1-127
Matching standard 1-109–1-110, 6-3, 8-95–8-96
 button 7-10
Matching tracks
 editing matches 1-110–1-111
 Gel sample window 1-105–1-106, 1-117, 8-95–8-96
 Profile comparison window 1-123–1-127, 6-23–6-25
 selecting which tracks to include 1-125
 viewing results 1-112–1-114, 1-117
Matching 8-67–8-68
Max Spot Area 8-131
Maximize pane 1-91, 1-112, 6-3, 8-68, 8-150–8-151

- Min Spot Area 8-131
- Minimum peak height 1-52, 8-46
- Minimum peak volume 1-52, 8-46
- Minimum peak width 1-52, 8-46
- Molecular weight 1-90, 8-67
- Molecular weight calibration 1-75–1-76, 8-50–8-52
 - button 7-7
- Molecular weight calibration graph 1-88, 6-8
 - scale 1-98–1-104, 8-146
- Molecular weight configuration settings 1-98–1-104
- Molecular weight libraries 1-92–1-97, 1-105
 - creating 1-94
 - locking/unlocking 1-99–1-100, 8-41–8-42
 - opening 1-97
 - passwords 1-100, 8-42
 - saving 1-96–1-97
- Molecular weight library
 - default 1-98–1-104
- Molecular weight library window 1-93–1-94, 6-17–6-18
 - closing 1-94
- Molecular weight standard tracks 8-122
- Molecular weight standards
 - creating 8-57–8-59
 - deleting 8-61
 - editing 8-59–8-61
 - renaming 8-61–8-62
- Molecular weight stds. 8-142
- Molecular weight/quantity standard tracks 1-79–1-83
- Molecular weight/quantity standards
 - creating 1-100–1-102
 - deleting 1-104–1-105
 - editing 1-102–1-103
 - renaming 1-104
- Molecular weights
 - assigning 1-79–1-83, 8-94–8-95, 8-104–8-110
 - calibration 1-72–1-116
 - propagation 1-76, 8-51–8-52
 - reassigning molecular weights 1-85–1-87
 - removing assignments 1-84–1-85, 8-112, 8-150
 - viewing 1-87–1-92, 8-107–8-108

Move/tilt 1-35–1-39, 8-78–8-84
 button 7-5
Moving peak bounds 1-70–1-71
Moving peaks 1-68–1-70
MW 8-71
MW calibration page 8-108–8-109
MW/quantity standard 1-79–1-83, 6-3, 7-8, 8-94–8-95
 button 7-8

N

Neighbor Joining 1-108, 1-115–1-117, 6-12, 8-55, 8-119
New (Import) 1-11, 8-2–8-7
New Experiment 8-124
New Folder 8-124
New library 1-94, 8-13–8-14
New standard 1-100–1-102, 8-57–8-59, 8-109–8-142
New window 8-147
No propagation 8-111
Non-secure image
 creating secure Sample file from 1-11–1-13, 4-6–4-8
Number of recent files 8-140

O

Offset 1-55, 8-49
Open 1-2–1-10, 4-2–4-5, 8-8–8-9
 button 7-1
Open GeneDirectory 8-125
 button 7-9
Open library 1-97, 8-14

P

Panes
 changing the size of 6-3
Parameters 8-118–8-119
Paste 8-44
Peak bounds 8-66

- moving peak bounds 1-70–1-71
- Peak markers 8-65
- Peak matching toolbar 7-9–7-10
- Peak matching 1-105–1-106, 1-117, 1-123–1-127, 6-23–6-25, 8-95–8-96
 - editing matches 1-110–1-111
 - setting method and tolerance 1-107–1-109, 8-53–8-55
 - viewing results 1-112–1-117
- Peak numbers only 8-67
- Peak properties 1-71–1-72, 8-114
- Peak value pane 1-90, 6-6–6-7
- Peaks
 - adding manually 1-63–1-64
 - adding semi-automatically 1-61–1-62
 - deleting 1-67–1-68
 - locating 1-59–1-64
 - locating automatically 1-60–1-61
 - moving 1-68–1-70
 - selecting 1-64–1-67
 - working with 1-59–1-72
- Plot mode 8-71
- Position all 1-30–1-32, 8-74–8-76
 - button 7-4
- Position any spot 8-132
 - button 7-11
- Position control points 8-130
 - button 7-10
- Positioning point 4-26–4-31, 6-30
- Print 8-27
 - button 7-3
- Print preview 1-129, 8-26–8-27
 - button 7-2
- Printer Setup 8-19–8-20
- Printing 1-127–1-130, 4-41–4-42
- Profile comparison 1-117–1-127, 1-130, 8-63–8-64
 - button 7-8
 - printing 1-129–1-130
- Profile comparison window 1-117–1-127, 1-129–1-130, 6-18–6-26
 - changing scale 1-123
 - Exclude all 8-120
 - Export to Excel 1-131, 8-116

- Hide all 8-116
- Include all 8-119
- Include selected in matching 8-120
- Matching parameters 8-118–8-119
 - matching results 6-25
 - matching tracks 1-123–1-127, 6-23–6-25
- MW 8-71
- RF 8-71
- selecting tracks 6-20–6-21
- setting a reference track 6-22–6-23, 8-115
- Show 8-115
- Show all 8-116
- viewing profiles 6-21–6-22
- viewing tracks 6-20
- Profile matching 1-105–1-106, 1-123–1-127, 6-23–6-25
 - setting method and tolerance 8-53–8-55
 - viewing results 1-112–1-114, 1-117
- Profile pane 6-6
- Propagate by peak number 8-111
- Propagate by Rf 8-111
- Properties (molecular weight library) 1-95, 8-43
- Properties (peaks) 1-50, 1-71–1-72, 8-103
- Properties (track) 1-49–1-50, 6-25–6-26, 8-102–8-103, 8-116–8-117

Q

- Quadratic 1-74, 8-53, 8-56
- Quantities 1-90, 8-67
- Quantity calibration 4-33, 8-52–8-53, 8-56–8-57
 - button 7-7, 7-12
 - method 1-73–1-74
 - units 1-73–1-74
- Quantity calibration graph 1-89–1-90, 6-9–6-10
- Quantity calibration page 4-34, 6-32–6-33, 8-111–8-112, 8-138
- Quantity measurements
 - Gel analysis 1-76–1-83, 8-110–8-112
 - calibration 1-72–1-116
 - reassigning assignments 1-85–1-87
 - removing assignments 1-84–1-85
 - units 1-73–1-74

viewing results 1-87–1-92
Spot blot analysis 4-33–4-35

R

Reassigning molecular weights 1-85–1-87
Reassigning quantities 1-85–1-87
Recently used files 8-28
Rectangle 4-19, 4-22, 8-127–8-128
 button 7-12
Rectangular spot frames 4-19–4-20
 adjusting size and shape 4-24–4-26
 changing to circular 4-22
Reference (profile) 1-122, 1-126, 6-23, 8-115
Rename standard 1-104, 8-61–8-62
Report settings 1-20, 8-143
Report setup 1-127–1-129, 4-41, 8-20–8-26
 button 7-2
Report toolbar 7-2–7-3
Reset brightness 6-33
Reset contrast 6-33
Reset gamma correction 6-34
Result table commands 8-151–8-152, 8-154
Results for all tracks 1-91, 6-14–6-16
Results for selected track 1-92, 6-14–6-16
Results pane 1-91–1-92, 1-112–1-115, 6-14–6-16
Rf 8-71
Rf end position 1-43, 8-86–8-90
 button 7-5
Rf start position 1-43, 8-86–8-90
 button 7-5
Rolling disk 1-55, 8-49

S

Sample and track settings 1-18, 1-20, 4-12, 8-143
Sample properties 8-3–8-7, 8-28–8-39
 button 7-2
Save 1-21, 1-96, 4-15, 8-11

- button 7-1
- Save as 1-21, 1-96, 4-15–4-16, 8-11–8-12
- Save results to CSV file 1-131–1-132, 4-43–4-44, 8-17–8-18
 - button 7-3
- Save sample defaults 8-146
- Save to clipboard 1-133–1-134, 4-44, 8-19
 - button 7-3
- Savitsky-Golay filter 1-52, 1-56, 8-46, 8-50
- Scale to fit 1-116, 6-12, 8-150
- Secure sample file 1-1–1-2
 - opening 1-2–1-10, 1-12–1-13, 4-2–4-5, 4-7–4-8
 - saving 1-20–1-21, 4-15–4-16
- Select Source (Twain) 1-13–1-14, 4-8–4-9, 8-12–8-13
- Selecting peaks 1-64–1-67
- Set all spots 4-24, 8-153
- Set radius 4-24, 8-152–8-153
- Show (profile) 1-120, 6-21, 8-115
- Show all (profile) 1-120, 6-21, 8-116
- Similarity Coefficient 1-108, 8-54, 8-119
- Similarity matrix 1-114–1-115, 1-126, 6-14–6-16, 6-25
- Splay all 1-32–1-34, 8-76–8-78
 - button 7-5
- Spot
 - removing 8-136
- Spot blot analysis 4-1–4-22, 4-24–4-44, 6-28–6-33
 - copying a picture of an image to the clipboard 4-44
 - Sample properties 8-32–8-33
- Spot blot results 6-31–6-33
 - exporting to Excel 4-42–4-43
 - printing 4-41–4-42
 - saving to CSV 4-43–4-44
 - viewing 4-34, 4-37–4-39
- Spot blot Sample file
 - creating 8-5, 8-7
 - import settings 4-9–4-14
 - opening 4-2–4-5, 4-7–4-8
 - saving 4-15–4-16
- Spot blot settings 8-143
- Spot blot toolbar 7-10–7-12
- Spot blot/Manual Band Quantification window 6-28–6-33

Spot frame labels 6-29
Spot frames
 adding 4-18–4-21
 adding a copy 4-20–4-21
 adjusting positions 4-26–4-31
 adjusting size and shape 4-21–4-22, 4-24–4-26
 all spots same size 4-21–4-22
 removing 4-21
 selecting 6-29
Spot incidence parameters 4-39–4-40, 8-134–8-135
 button 7-11
Spot numbers 4-32, 8-70
Standard toolbar 7-1–7-2
Status bar 8-69
SynGene Gel document 1-1–1-2

T

Table 1D 4-38, 6-31, 8-155
Table 2D 4-38, 6-31, 8-155
tiff images 1-11–1-13, 4-6–4-8, 8-2–8-7
Tile 8-147
Tolerance 8-55, 8-111, 8-119
Toolbar buttons on menus 8-69
Toolbars 7-1–7-12
 hiding 7-1
 showing 7-1
Toolbars submenu 8-68
Track borders 1-53, 8-47
Track label pane 6-3–6-4
Track properties 1-49–1-50
Track toolbar 7-4–7-5
Tracks 8-66
 adjusting height 8-73
 adjusting the Rf start and end lines 1-43–1-47, 8-86–8-90
 adjusting track splay 1-32–1-34, 8-76–8-78
 adjusting width 1-40–1-42, 8-73, 8-84–8-85
 bending an individual track 1-35, 1-38–1-40, 8-78–8-79, 8-81–8-84
 deleting 1-30, 8-99
 enabling and disabling 1-47

- locating automatically 1-24–1-25
- locking/unlocking 1-25–1-26, 8-74
- moving an individual track 1-35–1-36, 8-78–8-80
- overall positioning 1-30–1-32, 8-74–8-76
- overview of placing and positioning 1-22–1-23
- placing individual tracks on a Sample 1-26–1-30, 8-96–8-99
- tilting an individual track 1-35, 1-37–1-38, 8-78–8-81
- Twain 1-13–1-14, 4-8–4-9

U

- Unanalyzed files 1-1–1-2, 8-9–8-10
- Unassign molecular weight 1-84–1-85, 8-112
- Unassign quantity 1-84–1-85, 8-112–8-113, 8-138
- Undo 8-44
- Units 1-73–1-74
- Unlock 1-99, 8-41
- UPGMA 1-108, 1-115–1-116, 6-11, 8-55, 8-119
- Use another track set as standard 1-74, 8-52
- Use nearest standard 1-76, 8-51
- User name 8-139

W

- Width 1-40–1-42, 8-84–8-85
 - button 7-5
- Width individual 1-41, 8-73
- Windows open in GeneTools 8-147
- Word 1-132–1-133

Z

- Zoom in 1-123, 8-64
 - button 7-6
- Zoom out 1-123, 8-64
 - button 7-6
- Zoom reset 1-123, 8-64
 - button 7-6
- Zoom toolbar 7-6

Zymer Gel	8-90
-----------	------